



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

St.

Augustine's Confessions

Saint Augustine
(Bishop of Hippo.)





THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY
EDITED BY
T. E. PAGE, M.A., AND W. H. D. ROUSE, LITT.D.

**ST. AUGUSTINE'S
CONFESSIONS**

I

/ - 6

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS

WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION BY
WILLIAM WATTS

1681

IN TWO VOLUMES

I



LONDON : WILLIAM HEINEMANN
NEW YORK : THE MACMILLAN CO.

MCMXII

1924C9

WILLIAM H. GILMORE

PREFACE

AURELIUS AUGUSTINUS was born at Tagaste, in Numidia, November 13, A.D. 354, and died August 30, 430. It was in 373 that he joined the Manichaeans, and in 386 he was converted to Catholicism. He returned to Africa in 388, was ordained presbyter in 391, and in 395 became Bishop of Hippo, where he lived until his death. His first book, *De Pulchro et Apto*, is lost. Besides the *Confessions*, he wrote *De Doctrina Christiana*, *Encheiridion*, *De Trinitate*, *De Civitate Dei*, *Retractationes*, and a number of controversial and other pamphlets.

There is no need to say much of the contents of this book. Some it will attract by its devotion, some by its philosophy perhaps; but all it will charm by its complete sincerity. The scenes of Augustine's early life stand out like pictures; and his mother lives before our mind's eye as if we had seen her in the flesh. The psychologist will notice how acutely the author traces the workings of his own mind, particularly in childhood.

This is a reprint of William Watts's translation (with Scripture references), corrected according to Knöll's text, with the help of the translations of Pusey (1838) and C. Bigg (Books I. to IX.; Methuen, 1897-1909) and the annotated text of J. Gibb and W. Montgomery (Cambridge Patristic Texts, 1908).

William Watts, Rector of St. Alban's, Wood Street, London (1590?-1649), published his translation in 1631. "This translation I began," he says, "for

PREFACE

the exercise of my Lenten Devotions ; but I quickly found it to exercise more than my Devotions : it exercised my skill, (all I had) ; it exercised my Patience, it exercised my Friends too (for it is incomparably the hardest task that ever I yet undertook)." The present editor is inclined to echo this remark. For the first two books especially, and partly later, he used an earlier translation by Sir Tobie Matthew (London, 1624 ; second edition Paris, 1638), to whom he alludes in his notes with often upbraiding as "the Papist."

Pusey based his translation on Watts, but it is really rewritten. In the present edition I have kept Watts's text as far as possible, and where it had to be corrected I have tried to keep his style. The style of Augustine, both condensed in phrase and formless in structure, could not possibly be reproduced : and I am much mistaken if readers will not enjoy the leisurely flow of Watts's rhythms, and forgive him heartily for using more words than he need have used.

The Latin text is Knöll's (Teubner, 1909), with rather simpler spelling, fuller punctuation, and a very few changes which are noted at the foot of the page.

W. H. D. ROUSE

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Editio Princeps :

Collected Works : Amerbach, Basle, 1506; reprinted Paris, 1515.

Confessions : Mediolani, 1475.

Latest Critical Edition :

Confessions : P. Knöll, Teubner, 1909.

Translations (of the Confessions) :

Sir Tobie Matthew, 1624.

William Watts, London, 1631.

E. B. Pusey (with Latin text and notes), Rivington, 1838, 2 vols.

C. Bigg, Books I.-IX., Methuen, 1897-1909.

Illustrative Works :

Opera emendata studio monachorum ordinis S. Benedicti. Paris, 1679-1700; reprinted Gaume, Paris, 1836-39; with life.

Schröckh : Kirchengeschichte, vol. xv.

Neander : Geschichte der Christlichen Religion und Kirche, vol. ii.

Cunningham : St. Austin and his place in the History of Christian Thought, London, 1886.

Gwatkin : The Knowledge of God, 1908, vol. ii.

BOOK I

I

A

LIBER PRIMVS

I

CAP. MAGNUS es, domine, et laudabilis valde: magna
^I virtus tua, et sapientiae tuae non est numerus. et laudare te vult homo, aliqua portio creaturae tuae, et homo circumferens mortalitatem suam, circumferens testimonium peccati sui et testimonium, quia superbis resistis: et tamen laudare te vult homo, aliqua portio creaturae tuae. tu excitas, ut laudare te delectet, quia fecisti nos ad te et inquietum est cor nostrum, donec requiescat in te. da mihi, domine, scire et intellegere, utrum sit prius invocare te an laudare te, et scire te prius sit an invocare te. sed quis te invocat nesciens te? aliud enim pro alio potest invocare nesciens. an potius invocaris, ut sciaris? quomodo autem invocabunt, in quem non crediderunt? aut quomodo credent sine praedicante? et laudabunt dominum qui requirunt eum. quaerentes enim inveniunt eum et invenientes laudabunt eum. quaeram te, domine, invocans te, et invocem te credens in te: praedicatus enim es nobis.
2

THE FIRST BOOK

I

*He admires God's Majesty, and is inflamed with
a deep desire of praising him*

GREAT art thou, O Lord, and greatly to be praised : CHAP.
great is thy power, and thy wisdom is infinite. And I .
man, who being a part of what thou hast created, is Ps. cxlvii. 5
desirous to praise thee ; this man, bearing about his
own mortality with him, carrying about him a testi-
mony of his own sin, (even this testimony, that
God resisteth the proud;) yet this man, this part James
of what thou hast created, is desirous to praise thee ; iv. 6
thou so provokest him, that he even delighteth to
praise thee. For thou hast created us for thyself,
and our heart cannot be quieted till it may find
repose in thee. Grant me, Lord, to know and under-
stand what I ought first to do, whether call upon
thee, or praise thee ? and which ought to be first,
to know thee, or to call upon thee ? But who can
rightly call upon thee, that is yet ignorant of thee ?
for such an one may instead of thee call upon
another. Or art thou rather first called upon,
that thou mayest so come to be known ? But how
then shall they call on him, in whom they have Rom. x. 14
not believed ? and how shall they believe with-
out a preacher ? And again, they shall praise the
Lord that seek after him : for, they that seek shall Matt.
find ; and finding they shall praise him. Thee will vii. 7
I seek, O Lord, calling upon thee ; and I will call
upon thee, believing in thee : for thou hast been

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. invocat te, domine, fides mea, quam dedisti mihi,
^I quam inspirasti mihi per humanitatem filii tui, per
ministerium p̄aedicatoris tui.

II

CAP. ET quomodo invocabo deum meum, deum et
^{II} dominum meum, quoniam utique in me ipsum eum
invocabo, cum invocabo eum? et quis locus est in
me, quo veniat in me deus meus? quo deus veniat
in me, deus, qui fecit caelum et terram? itane,
domine deus meus, est quicquam in me, quod capiat
te? an vero caelum et terra, quae fecisti et in
quibus me fecisti, capiunt te? an quia sine te non
esset quidquid est, fit, ut quidquid est capiat te?
quoniam itaque et ego sum, quid peto, ut venias in
me, qui non essem, nisi essem in me? non enim ego
iam in inferis,¹ et tamen etiam ibi es. nam etsi
descendero in infernum, ades. non ergo essem, deus
meus, non omnino essem, nisi essem in me. an potius
non essem, nisi essem in te, ex quo omnia, per quem
omnia, in quo omnia? etiam sic, domine, etiam sic.
quo te invoco, cum in te sim? aut unde venias in
me? quo enim recedam extra caelum et terram, ut

¹ In inferis : most MSS. inferi.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

declared unto us. My faith, O Lord, calls upon CHAP.
thee, which thou hast given me, which thou hast ^I
inspired into me; even by the humanity of thy Son,
and by the ministry of thy preacher.

II

*Man hath his being from God; and that God is
in man, and man in God*

AND how shall I call upon my God, my Lord and CHAP.
God? because that when I invoke him, I call him ^{II}
into myself: and what place is there in me fit for
my God to come into me by, whither God may come
into me; even that God which made heaven and
earth? Is it so, my Lord God? Is there anything
in me which can contain thee? Nay, can both
heaven and earth which thou hast made, and in
which thou hast made me, in any wise contain thee?
Or else because whatsoever is, could not subsist
without thee, must it follow thereupon, that what-
soever hath being, is endued with a capacity of
thee? Since therefore I also am, how do I entreat
thee to come into me, who could not be, unless
thou wert first in me? For I am not after all
in hell, and yet thou art there: For if I go Ps. xliii. 28
down into hell, thou art there also. I should
therefore not be, O God, yea I should have no being
at all, unless thou wert in me: or rather, I should
not be, unless I had my being in thee; of whom,
and through whom, and to whom are all things.
Even so it is, Lord, even so. Wherefore, then, do
I invoke thee, seeing I am already in thee? Or
whence canst thou come into me? For whither

Rom. xi. 36

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. inde in me veniat deus meus, qui dixit: caelum et
II terram ego impleo?

III

CAP. CAPIUNT ergone te caelum et terra, quoniam tu
III imples ea? an imples et restat, quoniam non te
capiunt? et quo refundis quidquid impleto caelo et
terra restat ex te? an non opus habes, ut quoquam
continearis, qui contines omnia, quoniam quae imples
continendo imples? non enim vasa, quae te plena
sunt, stabilem te faciunt, quia etsi frangantur non
effunderis. et cum effunderis super nos, non tu iaces,
sed erigis nos, nec tu dissiparis, sed colligis nos. sed
quae imples omnia, te toto imples omnia. an quia
non possunt te totum capere omnia, partem tui
capiunt et eandem partem simul omnia capiunt? an
singulas singula et maiores maiora, minores minora
capiunt? ergo est aliqua pars tua maior, aliqua minor?
an ubique totus es et res nulla te totum capit?

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

shall I go, beyond heaven and earth, that from CHAP.
thence my God may come unto me? who hath said, ^{II}
The heaven and earth do I fill.

Jer. xxiii.
24

III

*God is wholly everywhere, and is not by parts
contained by the Creature*

Do therefore the heaven and earth contain thee, CHAP.
seeing thou fillest them? Or dost thou fill them, ^{III}
and there yet remains an overplus of thee, because
they are not able to comprehend thee? If so, into
what dost thou pour whatsoever remaineth of thee
after heaven and earth are filled? Is it not that
thou hast no need to be contained by something,
thou who containest all things; seeing that what
thou fillest, by containing them thou fillest. For
those vessels which are full of thee, add no stability
to thee; for were they broken, thou art not shed
out: and when thou art shed upon us, thou art not
spilt, but thou raisest us up; nor art thou scattered,
but thou gatherest up us: but thou who fillest
all, with thy whole self dost thou fill them all. Or
because these things cannot contain all of thee,
do they receive a part of thee; and do all at
once receive the same part of thee? or, several
capacities, several parts; and greater things, greater
parts; and less, lesser? Is therefore one part of
thee greater, or another lesser? Or art thou all
everywhere, and nothing contains thee wholly?

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER. I

IV

CAP. QUID est ergo deus meus? quid, rogo, nisi dominus deus? quis enim dominus praeter dominum? aut quis deus praeter deum nostrum? summe, optime, potentissime, omnipotentissime, misericordissime et iustissime, secretissime et praesentissime, pulcherrime et fortissime, stabilis et incomprehensibilis, immutabilis, mutans omnia, numquam novus, numquam vetus, innovans omnia; in vetustatem perducens superbos et nesciunt; semper agens, semper quietus, colligens et non egens, portans et implens et protegens, creans et nutriendis, perficiens, quaerens, cum nihil desit tibi. amas nec aestuas, zelas et securus es; paenitet te et non doles, irasceris et tranquillus es, opera mutas nec mutas consilium; recipis quod invenis et numquam amisisti; numquam inops et gaudes lucris, numquam avarus et usuras exigis. supererogatur tibi, ut debeas, et quis habet quicquam non tuum? reddens debita nulli debens, donans debita nihil perdens. et quid diximus, deus meus, vita mea, dulcedo mea sancta, aut quid dicit aliquis, cum de te dicit? et vae tacentibus de te, quoniam loquaces muti sunt.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

IV

An admirable description of God's Attributes

WHAT is therefore my God? What, I ask, but the CHAP.
Lord God? For who is Lord but the Lord? Or ^{IV} who is God besides our God? O thou supreme, most excellent, most mighty, most omnipotent, most merciful and most just; most secret and most present; most beautiful and most strong; constant and incomprehensible; immutable, yet changing all things; never new, and never old; renewing all things, and insensibly bringing proud men into de- ^{Job ix. 5}cay; ever active, and ever quiet; gathering together, yet never wanting; upholding, filling, and protecting; creating, nourishing and perfecting all things; still seeking, although thou standest in need of nothing. Thou lovest, yet art not transported; art jealous, but without fear; thou dost repent, but not grieve; art angry, but cool still. Thy works thou changest, but not thy counsel; takest what thou findest, never losest aught. Thou art never needy, yet glad of gain; never covetous, yet exactest advantage. Men pay thee in superabundance of all things, that thou mayest be the debtor: and who hath anything which is not thine? Thou payest debts, yet owest nothing; forgivest debts, yet losest nothing. And shall we say, my God, my Life, my holy Delight: or what can any man say when he speaks of thee? And woe to them that speak nothing in thy praise, seeing those that speak most, are dumb.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

V

CAP. QUIS mihi dabit adquiescere in te? quis dabit
mihi, ut venias in cor meum et inebries illud, ut ob-
liviscar mala mea et unum bonum meum amplectar,
te? quid mihi es? miserere, ut loquar. quid tibi sum
ipse, ut amari te iubeas a me et, nisi faciam, irascaris
mihi et mineris ingentes miserias? parvane ipsa est,
si non amem te? ei mihi! dic mihi per miserations
tuas, domine deus meus, quid sis mihi. dic animae
meae: salus tua ego sum. sic dic, ut audiam. ecce
aures cordis mei ante te, domine; aperi eas et dic
animae meae: salus tua ego sum. curram post vocem
hanc et adprehendam te. noli abscondere a me
faciem tuam: moriar, ne moriar, ut eam videam.

Angusta est domus animae meae, quo venias ad
eam: dilatetur abs te. ruinosa est: refice eam. habet
quae offendant oculos tuos: fateor et scio. sed quis
mundabit eam? aut cui alteri praeter te clamabo:
ab occultis meis munda me, domine, et ab alienis
parce servo tuo? credo, propter quod et loquor.
domine, tu scis. nonne tibi prolocutus sum adversum
me delicta mea, deus meus, et tu dimisisti inpietatem
cordis mei? non iudicio contendo tecum, qui veritas
es; et ego nolo fallere me ipsum, ne mentiatur
10

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

V

*He prays for forgiveness of sins, and the
Love of God*

Who shall procure for me, that I may repose in CHAP.
thee? Who shall procure thee to enter into my ^V heart; and so to inebriate it, that I may forget my own evils, and embrace thee, my only good? What art thou to me? let me find grace to speak to thee. What am I to thee, that thou shouldest command me to love thee, and be angry with me, yea and threaten me with great mischiefs, unless I do love thee? Is it to be thought a small misery in itself, not to love thee? Woe is me! Answer me for thy mercy's sake, O Lord my God, what thou art unto me: Say unto my soul, I am thy Salvation. Speak it out, Ps. xxxv. 5 that I may hear thee. Behold, the ears of my heart are before thee, O Lord, open them, and say unto my soul, I am thy salvation. I will run after that voice, and take hold of thee. Hide not thy face from me: let me die lest I die, that I may see it.

My soul's house is too strait for thee to come into: let it be enlarged by thee: 'tis ruinous, but do thou repair it. There be many things in it, I both confess and know, which may offend thine eyes; but who can cleanse it? or to whom but thee shall I cry, Cleanse me, O Lord, from my secret sins, and Ps. xix. 12 from strange sins deliver thy servant; I believe, and Ps. cxvi. 10 therefore do I speak. Thou knowest, O Lord, that I have confessed my sins against mine own self, O my God; and thou forgavest me the iniquity of my heart. I will not plead with thee, who art Truth: Jer. ii. 29 and I will not deceive myself, lest my iniquity be a false witness to itself. I will not therefore plead

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. iniquitas mea sibi. non ergo iudicio contendo tecum,
^V quia, si iniquitates observaveris, domine, domine, quis
sustinebit?

VI

CAP. SED tamen sine me loqui apud misericordiam
^{VI} tuam, me terram et cinerem, sine tamen loqui, quo-
niam ecce misericordia tua est, non homo, inrisor
meus, cui loquor. et tu fortasse inrides me, sed con-
versus misereberis mei. quid enim est quod volo
dicere, domine, nisi quia nescio, unde venerim huc,
in istam, dico vitam mortalem, an mortem vitalem?
nescio. et suscepserunt me consolationes misera-
tionum tuarum, sicut audivi a parentibus carnis meae,
ex quo et in qua me formasti in tempore; non enim
ego memini. exceperunt ergo me consolationes
lactis humani, nec mater mea vel nutrices meae sibi
ubera implebant, sed tu mihi per eas dabas alimentum
infantiae, secundum institutionem tuam, et dixitias
usque ad fundum rerum dispositas. tu etiam mihi
dabas nolle amplius, quam dabas, et nutrientibus me
dare mihi velle quod eis dabas: dare enim mihi per
ordinatum affectum volebant quo abundabant ex te.
nam bonum erat eis bonum meum ex eis, quod ex

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

with thee : for if thou, Lord, shouldest be extreme CHAP.
to mark what is done amiss, O Lord, O Lord, who ^V
may abide it ?

Pa. cxxx. 8

VI

*That he hath received all blessings from God :
and how he hath been preserved by him*

YET suffer me to plead before thy Mercy, even CHAP.
me, who am but dust and ashes: once again let ^{VI}
me speak, seeing 'tis thy mercy to which I address
my speech, and not man who is my mocker. Yet
even thou perhaps dost smile at me; but turning,
thou wilt pity me. What is it that I would say,
O Lord my God, but even this: that I know not
whence I came hither; into this, a dying life (shall
I call it) or a living death rather? I know not. And
the comforts of thy mercies did take me up, as I
have heard it of the parents of my flesh, out of
whom, and in whom thou sometimes did form me,
for I myself cannot remember it. The comfort
therefore of a woman's milk did then entertain me:
yet did neither my mother nor nurses fill their own
breasts; but thou, O Lord, didst by them afford a
nourishment fit for my infancy, even according to
thine own institution, and those riches of thine,
reaching to the root of all things. Thou also in-
graftedst in me a desire to suck no more than thou
suppliedst them withal; and in my nurses to afford
me what thou gavest them: for they were willing
to dispense unto me with proportion, what thou
suppliedst them with in abundance. For it was a
blessing to them, that I received this blessing from

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. VI eis non, sed per eas erat: ex te quippe bona omnia,
deus, et ex deo meo salus mihi universa, quod anim-
advertei postmodum clamante te mihi per haec ipsa,
quae tribuis intus et foris. nam tunc sugere noram
et adquiescere delectationibus, flere autem offendentes
carnis meae, nihil amplius.

Post et ridere coepi, dormiens primo, deinde vigi-
lans. hoc enim de me mihi indicatum est et credidi,
quoniam sic videmus alios infantes; nam ista mea
non memini. et ecce paulatim sentiebam, ubi essem,
et voluntates meas volebam ostendere eis, per quos
implerentur, et non poteram, quia illae intus erant,
foris autem illi, nec ullo suo sensu valebant introire
in animam meam. itaque iactabam et membra et
voces, signa similia voluntatibus meis, pauca quae
poteram, qualia poteram: non enim erant veri
similia. et cum mihi non obtemperabatur, vel non
intellecto vel ne obesset, indignabar non subditis
maioribus, et liberis non servientibus, et me de illis
flendo vindicabam. tales esse infantes didici, quos
discere potui, et me talem fuisse magis mihi ipsi in-
dicaverunt nescientes quam scientes nutritores mei.

Et ecce infantia mea olim mortua est et ego vivo.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

them : which yet was rather by them, than from them. For all good things proceed from thee, O God, and from my God cometh all my healthfulness. And so much I observed afterwards, when thou didst cry unto me by those instincts of nature which thou induedst me withal, both inwardly and outwardly. For then first I knew how to suck ; and to be contented with what did please me, and to cry at what offended my flesh, nothing more.

Afterwards I began also to laugh ; first sleeping, and then waking : for thus much was told me of myself, and I easily believed it, for that we see other infants do so too. For these things of myself I remember not. And behold, by little and little I came on to perceive where I was ; and I had the will to signify what I would have, to those that should help me to it : but I could not yet clearly enough express my desires to them ; for these were within me, and they without me ; nor could the guess of their senses dive into my meaning. Thereupon would I flutter with my limbs, and sputter out some words, making some other few signs, like to my wishes, as well as I could ; but could not get myself to be understood by them : and when people obeyed me not, either for that they understood me not, or lest what I desired should hurt me ; then how would I wrangle at those elder servants that would not submit to me, and the children that did not aptly humour me, and I thought to revenge myself upon them all, with crying. And this is, as I have learned, the fashion of all children, that I could hear of : and such an one was I, as those taught me, not knowing, better than my nurses who knew.

And now behold, my infancy is dead long ago, yet I live still. But thou, O Lord, who both livest for

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. VI tu autem, domine, qui et semper vivis et nihil mori-
tur in te, quoniam ante primordia saeculorum et ante
omne, quod vel ante dici potest, tu es et deus es
dominusque omnium, quae creasti, et apud te rerum
omnium instabilium stant causae, et rerum omnium
mutabilium immutabiles manent origines, et omnium
in rationalium et temporalium sempiternae vivunt
rationes, dic mihi supplici tuo, deus, et misericors
misero tuo, dic mihi, utrum alicui iam aetati meae
mortuae successerit infantia mea. an illa est, quam
egi intra viscera matris meae? nam et de illa mihi
non nihil indicatum est et praegnantes ipse vidi
feminas. quid ante hanc etiam, dulcedo mea, deus
meus? fuine alicubi aut aliquis? nam quis mihi
dicat ista, non habeo; nec pater nec mater potue-
runt, nec aliorum experimentum, nec memoria mea.
an irrides me ista quaerentem, teque de hoc,
quod novi, laudari a me iubes, et confiteri me tibi?
confiteor tibi, domine caeli et terrae, laudem di-
cens tibi de primordiis et infantia mea, quae non
memini; et dedisti ea homini ex aliis de se conicere
et auctoritatibus etiam muliercularum multa de se
credere. eram enim et vivebam etiam tunc, et signa,
quibus sensa mea nota aliis facereim, iam in fine
infantiae quaerebam. unde hoc tale animal nisi abs
te, domine? an quisquam se faciendi erit artifex?
aut ulla vena trahitur aliunde, qua esse et vivere

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

ever, and in whom nothing dies, (because that before CHAP.
the foundations of the world, and before everything VI
else, that can be said to be before, thou art both
God and Lord of all which thyself hath created ;
and in whose presence are the causes of all uncer-
tain things, and the immutable patterns of all
things mutable, with whom do live the eternal
reasons of all these contingent chance-medleys, for
which we can give no reason) tell, I pray thee, O
God, unto me thy suppliant : thou who art merciful,
tell me who am miserable, did my infancy succeed
to any other age of mine that was dead before ; or
was that it which I past in my mother's belly ? for
something have I heard of that too, and myself have
seen women with child. What passed before that
age, O God my delight ? Was I anywhere, or any-
body ? For I have none to tell me thus much :
neither could my father and mother, nor the ex-
perience of others, nor yet mine own memory.
Dost thou laugh at me for enquiring these things,
who commandest to praise and to confess to
thee for what I know ? I confess unto thee, O
Lord of heaven and earth, and I sing praises
unto thee for my first being and infancy, which
I have no memory of : and thou hast given leave
to man, by others to conjecture of himself, and
upon the credit of women to believe many things
that concern himself. For even then had I life and
being, and towards the end of mine infancy, I sought
for some significations to express my meaning by unto
others. Whence could such a living creature come,
but from thee, O Lord ? Or hath any man the skill
to frame himself ? Or is any vein of ours, by which
being and life runs into us, derived from any original
but thy workmanship, O Lord, to whom being and

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. currat in nos, praeterquam quod tu facis nos, domine,
VI cui esse et vivere non aliud atque aliud est, quia
summe esse atque summe vivere id ipsum est? summus enim es et non mutaris, neque peragitur in
te hodiernus dies, et tamen in te peragitur, quia in
te sunt et ista omnia: non enim haberent vias trans-
eundi, nisi contineres ea. et quoniam anni tui non
deficiunt, anni tui hodiernus dies: et quam multi
iam dies nostri et patrum nostrorum per hodiernum
tuum transierunt, et ex illo acceperunt modos, et
utcumque extiterunt, et transibunt adhuc alii et
accipient et utcumque existent. tu autem idem ipse
es, et omnia crastina atque ultra omniaque hesterna
et retro hodie facies, hodie fecisti. quid ad me, si
quis non intellegat? gaudeat et ipse dicens: quid
est hoc? gaudeat etiam sic, et amet non inveniendo
invenire, potius quam inveniendo non invenire te.

VII

CAP. EXAUDI, deus. vae peccatis hominum! et homo
VII dicit haec, et misereris eius, quoniam tu fecisti
eum et peccatum non fecisti in eo. quis me com-
memorat peccatum infantiae meae, quoniam nemo
mundus a peccato coram te, nec infans, cuius est

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

living are not several things, because both to be CHAP.
and to live in the highest degree, is of thy very VI
essence? For thou art the highest, and thou art
not changed; neither is this present day spent
in thee; yet it is spent in thee, because even all
these times are in thee; nor could have their
ways of passing on, unless thou containedst them.
And because thy years fail not, thy years are but
this very day. And how many soever our days and Ps. cii. 27
our fathers' days have been, they have all passed
through this one day of thine: from that day have

they received their measures and manners of being:
and those to come shall so also pass away, and so also
receive their measures and manners of being. But
thou art the same still; and all to-morrows and so
forward, and all yesterdays and so backward, thou
shalt make present in this day of thine: yea, and
hast made present. What concerns it me, if any
understand not this? let him rejoice notwithstanding
and say: What is this? Let him so also rejoice,
and rather love to find in not finding it out, than by
finding it, not to find thee with it.

VII

That even his infancy was subject to sin

HEARKEN unto me, O God! Woe to the sins of CHAP.
men! Yet when man says thus, thou hast mercy on VII
him: because him thou hast created, but sin in him
thou hast not made. Who shall bring to my remem-
brance the sin of my infancy? For in thy sight can Job xxv. 3
no man be clean from his sin; no, not an infant of a

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. non pati. sed blande tolerantur haec, non quia nulla
VII vel parva, sed quia aetatis accessu peritura sunt.
quod licet probes, cum ferri aequo animo eadem
ipsa non possunt, quando in aliquo annosiore depre-
henduntur. tu itaque, domine deus meus, qui
dedisti vitam infanti et corpus, quod ita, ut vide-
mus, instruxisti sensibus, conpegisti membris, figura
decorasti, proque eius universitate atque incolumitate
omnes conatus animantis insinuasti, iubes me laudare
te in istis et confiteri tibi et psallere nomini tuo,
altissime, quia deus es omnipotens et bonus, etiamsi
sola ista fecisses, quae nemo aliis potest facere nisi
tu, une, a quo est omnis modus, formosissime, qui
formas omnia et lege tua ordinas omnia.

Hanc ergo aetatem, domine, qua me vixisse non
memini, de qua aliis credidi et quam me egisse ex
aliis infantibus conieci, quamquam ista multum fida
coniectura sit, piget me adnumerare huic vitae
meae, quam vivo in hoc saeculo. quantum enim
adtinet ad oblivionis meae tenebras, par illi est,
quam vixi in matris utero. quod si et in iniquitate
conceptus sum, et in peccatis mater mea me in utero
aluit, ubi, oro te, deus meus, ubi, domine, ego, servus
tuus, ubi aut quando innocens fui? sed ecce omitto
illud tempus: et quid mihi iam cum eo est, cuius
nulla vestigia recolo?

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

and freshly flowing, though destitute of succour, and CHAP.
having but that only nourishment to sustain its poor VII
life withal? But these childnesses are with pleasure
borne withal: not because they be in themselves
either none or small faults, but for that they will
vanish with age. Which albeit they may in this age
be allowed of, yet are they in no patience to be en-
dured in an elder body. Thou therefore, O Lord my
God, who hast given both life and body to the infant;
which as we see thou hast furnished with senses,
compacted with limbs, beautified with shape, and
for his general good and safety, hast armed all the
endeavours of the whole creature: even thou com- Ps. xc. 2,
mandest me to praise thee for these things, and to cil. 1
confess and sing unto thy Name, O thou Most High!
Because thou art a God omnipotent and good,
although thou hadst done no more but these things
which none else can do, but thou alone, from whom
all proportion floweth; O thou most beautiful, which
fashionest all, and after thine own method disposest
all. This age therefore of my life, O Lord, of which
I remember not any passages; concerning which I
must give credit to others' relation, which, notwith-
standing that I have passed, as I conjecture by other
infants (although these tokens may very strongly
assure my conjecture), it irks me to reckon unto the
rest of that life which I lead in this world; seeing
that in regard of the darkness of my forgetfulness of
it, it is like that part which I passed in my mother's
womb. Now, if I were shapen in iniquity, and in Ps. li. 5
sin conceived by my mother; where, I beseech thee,
O my God, in what place, Lord, was I, thy servant,
where or when was I innocent? But behold I now
pass by that age; for what have I to do with it,
whereof I can nothing at all call to memory?

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

VIII

CAP. NONNE ab infantia huc pergens veni in pueri-
^{VIII} tiam? vel potius ipsa in me venit et successit infan-
tiae? nec discessit illa: quo enim abiit? et tamen
iam non erat. non enim eram infans, qui non farer,
sed iam puer loquens eram. et memini hoc, et unde
loqui didiceram, post adverti. non enim docebant
me maiores homines, praebentes mihi verba certo
aliquo ordine doctrinae sicut paulo post litteras, sed
ego ipse mente, quam dedisti mihi, deus meus, cum
gemitibus et vócibus variis et variis membrorum
motibus edere vellem sensa cordis mei, ut voluntati
pareretur, nec valerem quae volebam omnia nec
quibus volebam omnibus. pensabam memoria: cum
ipsi appellabant rem aliquam et cum secundum eam
vocem corpus ad aliquid movebant, videbam et tene-
bam hoc ab eis vocari rem illam, quod sonabant, cum
eam vellent ostendere. hoc autem eos velle, ex
motu corporis aperiebatur, tamquam verbis naturali-
bus omnium gentium, quae fiunt vultu et nutu ocu-
lorum ceterorumque membrorum actu et sonitu vocis
indicante affectionem animi in petendis, habendis
reiciendis fugiendisve rebus. ita verba in variis sen-
tentiis locis suis posita et crebro audita quarum rerum
signa essent paulatim colligebam measque iam volun-

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

VIII

A description of his childhood

GROWING on from the state of infancy, came I not CHAP.
into my childhood? Or rather came not that into
me, and succeeded unto my infancy? Nor yet did
my infancy depart; for whither went it? yet now
it was no more. For an infant I was no longer,
that could not speak; seeing now I began to prove
a pretty prating boy. And this I well remember,
and I afterwards observed how I first learned to
speak. For my elders did not teach me this ability,
by giving me words in any certain order of teaching,
(as they did letters afterwards), but by that mind
which thou, my God, gavest me, I myself with grunt-
ings, varieties of voices, and various motions of my
body, strove to express the conceits of mine own
heart, that my desire might be obeyed; but could
not bring it out, either all I would have, or with all
the signs I would. Then, I pondered in my memory:
when they named anything, and when at that
name they moved their bodies toward that thing,
I observed it, and gathered thereby, that that word
which they then pronounced, was the very name
of the thing which they showed me. And that
they meant this or that thing, was discovered to
me by the motion of their bodies, even by that
natural language, as it were, of all nations; which
expressed by the countenance and cast of the eye,
by the action of other parts, and the sound of the
voice, discovers the affections of the mind, either to
desire, enjoy, refuse, or to avoid anything. And thus
words in divers sentences, set in their due places, and
heard often over, I by little and little collected, of

VIII

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. tates, edomito in eis signis ore, per haec enuntiabam.
^{VIII} sic cum his, inter quos eram, voluntatum enuntian-
darum signa communicavi; et vitae humanae procel-
losam societatem altius ingressus sum, pendens ex
parentum auctoritate nutuque maiorum hominum.

IX

CAP. DEUS, deus meus, quas ibi miserias expertus sum
^{IX} et ludificationes, quandoquidem recte mihi vivere
puero id proponebatur, obtemperare monentibus, ut
in hoc saeculo florerem, et excellerem linguosis art-
ibus, ad honorem hominum et falsas divitias famu-
lantibus. inde in scholam datus sum, ut discerem litteras, in quibus quid utilitatis esset ignorabam miser.
et tamen, si segnis in discendo essem, vapulabam.
laudabatur enim hoc a maioribus, et multi ante nos
vitam istam agentes praestruxerant aerumnosas vias,
per quas transire cogebamur multiplicato labore et
dolore filiis Adam.

Invenimus autem, domine, homines rogantes te, et
didicimus ab eis, sentientes te, ut poteramus, esse

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

what things they were the signs, and having broken CHAP.
my mouth to the pronunciation of them, I by them VIII
expressed mine own purposes. Thus, with those
whom I conversed withal, did I communicate the
expressions of mine own desires; and ventured
thereby upon the troublesome society of human
businesses, depending all this while upon the
authority of my parents, and being at the beck of
my elders.

IX

*The hatred that children bear to Learning, and their
Love to Playing*

O God, my God! what miseries and what mockeries CHAP.
did I find in that age; whenas being yet a boy, obedi- IX
ence was propounded unto me, to those who advised
me to get on in the world; and prove excellent in
tongue-sciences, which should get me reputation
amongst men, and deceitful riches? Thereupon was
I sent to school, to get learning; whereby little knew
I (wretch that I was) what profit might be obtained;
and yet if I proved truantly at my book, I was pre-
sently beaten. For this discipline was commended
by our ancestors; and divers passing the same course
before our times, had chalked these troublesome -
ways out unto us, by which we were constrained to
follow them; multiplying by this means both labour
and sorrow to the sons of Adam.

Yet we observed, O Lord, how certain men would
pray unto thee; and we learned of them; thinking
thee (as far as we could apprehend) to be some

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. magnum aliquem, qui posses etiam non adparens
^{IX} sensibus nostris exaudire nos et subvenire nobis.
nam puer coepi rogare te, auxilium et refugium
meum, et in tuam invocationem rumpebam nodos
linguae meae, et rogabam te parvus non parvo
affectu, ne in schola vapularem. et cum me non ex-
audiebas, quod non erat ad insipientiam mihi, ride-
bantur a maioribus hominibus usque ab ipsis parenti-
bus, qui mihi accidere mali nihil volebant, plagae
meae, magnum tunc et grave malum meum. estne
quisquam, domine, tam magnus animus, praegrandi
affectu tibi cohaerens, estne, inquam, quisquam—
facit enim hoc quaedam etiam stoliditas—est ergo,
qui tibi pie cohaerendo ita sit affectus granditer, ut
eculeos et ungulas atque huiuscemodi varia tormenta,
pro quibus effugiendis tibi per universas terras cum
timore magno supplicatur, ita parvi aestimet, diligens
eos, qui haec acerbissime formidant, quemadmodum
parentes nostri ridebant tormenta, quibus pueri a
magistris affligebamus? non enim aut minus ea
metuebamus aut minus te de his evadendis depreca-
bamur, et peccabamus tamen minus scribendo aut
legendo aut cogitando de litteris, quam exigebatur a
nobis. non enim deerat, domine, memoria vel in-
genium, quae nos habere voluisti pro illa aetate satis,
sed delectabat ludere, et vindicabatur in nos ab eis
qui talia utique agebant. sed maiorum nugae negotia

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

great one ; who wert able, (and yet not appearing CHAP.
to our senses) both to hear and help us. For being IX
yet a boy, I began to pray unto thee, my Aid and
Refuge, and even then brake the string of my tongue
in praying to thee ; and being yet a little one, I
prayed to thee with no small devotion, that I might
not be beaten at school. And when thou hearest
not (which yet was not to be accounted folly in me),
my corrections, which I then esteemed my greatest
and most grievous affliction, were made sport at by
my elders, yea and by mine own parents, who wished
no hurt at all unto me. Is there any man, O Lord,
of so great a spirit, cleaving to thee with so strong
an affection ; is there any man, I say, (for even a
callousness may other-whiles do as much), who by
devoutly applying himself unto thee, is so resolutely
affected, that he can think so lightly of those racks
and strappadoes, and such varieties of torments, (for
the avoiding whereof men pray unto thee with so
much fear all the world over), that he can make
sport at those who most bitterly fear them ; as our
parents laughed at these torments, which we school-
boys suffered from our masters ? For we were no
less afraid of the rod, nor did we less earnestly pray
to thee for the scaping of it, than others did of
their tortures. And yet for all our fears, we too
often played the truants ; either in writing, or read-
ing, or thinking upon our lessons, less than was
required of us. For we wanted not, O Lord, either
memory or capacity, (of which, considering our age,
thou pleasedst to bestow enough upon us) but
our mind was all upon playing ; for which we were
beaten, even by those masters, who were doing
as much themselves. But elder folks' idleness,
must, forsooth, be called business, and when children

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. vocabantur, puerorum autem talia cum sint, puniuntur
^{IX} a maioribus, et nemo miseratur pueros vel illos vel utrosque. nisi vero adprobat quisquam bonus rerum arbiter vapulasse me, quia ludebam pila puer et eo ludo impeditiebar, quominus celeriter discerem litteras, quibus maior deformius luderem. aut aliud faciebat idem ipse, a quo vapulabam, qui si in aliqua quaestuncula a condotore suo victus esset, magis bile atque invidia torqueretur quam ego, cum in certamine pilae a conlusore meo superabar?

X

CAP. Et tamen peccabam, domine deus meus, ordinat^X or et creator rerum omnium naturalium, peccatorum autem tantum ordinator, domine deus meus, peccabam faciendo contra praecepta parentum et magistrorum illorum. poteram enim postea bene uti litteris, quas volebant ut discerem quocumque animo illi mei. non enim meliora eligens inobediens eram, sed amore ludendi, amans in certaminibus superbias Victorias, et scalpi aures meas falsis fabellis, quo prurirent ardentes, eadem curiositate magis magisque per oculos emicante in spectacula, ludos maiorum; quos tamen qui edunt, ea dignitate praediti excellunt, ut hoc

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

do the like, the same men must punish them; CHAP.
and yet no man pities either children or men or IX
both. But perhaps some indifferent judge might
account me to be justly beaten for playing at ball,
being yet a boy, because by that sport I was hin-
dered in my learning, by which, when I came to be
a man, I was to play the fool more unbeseemingly:
or did my master, who now beat me, anything
else? who, if in any trifling question he were foiled
by another schoolmaster, he was presently more
racked with choler and envy at him, than I was,
when at a match at tennis-ball, I lost the game to
my play-fellow.

X

How for his play he neglected his Parents' Commandments

AND yet I offended, O Lord God, thou Ruler CHAP.
and Creator of all natural things, of sins only the X
Ruler! I sinned, O Lord my God! in doing con-
trary to the commandments of my parents, and of
those masters: for I might afterwards have made
good use of my learning, which they were desirous
I should obtain, whatsoever purpose they had in it.
For I disobeyed them not out of desire of choosing
better courses; but all out of a desire to play:
aspiring to be captain in all sports, and to have mine
ears tickled with feigned fables, to make them itch
the more glowingly: the like desperate curiosity
also sparkling through mine eyes, after the shows
and plays of my elders: the authors whereof are
esteemed to gain so much honour by it, that
almost all the spectators wish the like to be their

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. paene omnes optent parvulis suis, quos tamen caedi
^X libenter patiuntur, si spectaculis talibus inpediantur
ab studio, quo eos ad talia edenda cupiunt pervenire.
vide ista, domine, misericorditer, et libera nos iam
invocantes te, libera etiam eos qui nondum te invo-
cant, ut invocent te et liberes eos.

XI

CAP. AUDIERAM enim ego adhuc puer de vita aeterna
^{XI} promissa nobis per humilitatem domini dei nostri
descendentis ad superbiam nostram, et signabar iam
signo crucis eius, et condiebar eius sale iam inde
ab utero matris meae, quae multum speravit in te.
vidisti, domine, cum adhuc puer essem, et quodam
die pressu stomachi repente aestuarem paene mori-
turus, vidisti, deus meus, quoniam custos meus iam
eras, quo motu animi et qua fide baptismum Christi
tui, dei et domini mei, flagitavi a pietate matris meae
et matris omnium nostrum, ecclesiae tuae. et con-
turbata mater carnis meae, quoniam et sempiternam
salutem meam carius parturibat corde casto in fide
tua, iam curaret festinabunda, ut sacramentis saluta-
ribus initiarer et abluerer, te, domine Iesu, confitens

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

own children; whom for all that they gladly suffer to CHAP.
be beaten, if by such stage-plays they be hindered X
from their studies, by which they desire them to arrive
one day to the ability of making the like. Look
down upon these things mercifully, O Lord, and
deliver us that now call upon thee: deliver also those
that do not yet call upon thee; that they may call
upon thee, and thou mayest deliver them.

XI

How he fell sick, and how recovering, his Baptism was deferred

I HAD heard, being yet a boy, of eternal life pro- CHAP.
mised unto us through the humility of thy Son our XI
Lord God, descending even to our pride, and I was
then signed with the sign of his Cross, and was
seasoned with his salt, so soon as I came out of my
mother's womb, who greatly trusted in thee. Thou
sawest, O Lord, when being yet a boy, and one
day taken with a pain in the stomach, I fell sud-
denly into a fit, very like to die. Thou sawest, O
my God, (for thou wert my Keeper) with what
earnestness of mind, and with what faith, I impor-
tuned the piety both of mine own mother, and of
thy Church the mother of us all, for the Baptism of
thy Christ, my Lord God. Whereupon the mother
of my flesh being much perplexed, (for that in a
chaste heart, and faith in thee, she most lovingly
even travailed in birth of my eternal salvation,) did
hasten with great care to procure me to be initiated Gal. iv.
and washed with thy wholesome Sacraments, (I first
confessing thee, O Lord Jesus, for the remission of

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. in remissionem peccatorum, nisi statim recreatus
^{XI} essem. dilata est itaque mundatio mea, quasi
necesse esset, ut adhuc sordidarer, si viverem,
quia videlicet post lavacrum illud maior et peri-
culosior in sordibus delictorum reatus foret. ita
iam credebam, et illa, et omnis domus, nisi pater
solus, qui tamen non evicit in me ius maternae
pietatis, quominus in Christum crederem, sicut
ille nondum crediderat. nam illa satagebat, ut tu
mihi pater esses, deus meus, potius quam ille: et
in hoc adiuvabas eam, ut superaret virum, cui melior
serviebat, quia et in hoc tibi utique id iubenti
serviebat.

Rogo te, deus meus, vellem scire, si tu etiam
velles, quo consilio dilatus sum, ne tunc baptizarer,
utrum bono meo mihi quasi laxata sint lora peccandi
an non laxata sint. unde ergo etiam nunc de aliis
atque aliis sonat undique in auribus nostris: "sine
illum, faciat; nondum enim baptizatus est." et
tamen in salute corporis non dicimus: "sine vul-
neretur amplius; nondum enim sanatus est."
quanto ergo melius et cito sanarer, et id ageretur
mecum meorum meaque diligentia, ut recepta
salus animae meae tuta esset tutela tua, qui de-
dissest eam. melius vero. sed quot et quanti fluctus
inpendere temptationum post pueritiam videbantur !

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

sins,) but that I presently recovered upon it. Upon CHAP.
my recovery was my cleansing deferred: as if it ^{XI} were necessary that I should yet be more defiled, if I lived longer: because, forsooth, the guilt contracted by the filth of sin, were both greater and more dangerous after Baptism, than before. Thus did I then believe, as also my mother and the whole house, except my father only; who did not for all this overthrow the power of my mother's piety in me, to the hindrance of my believing in Christ, although himself had not yet believed in him. For she by all means endeavoured, that thou, my God, shouldst be my father, rather than he. And herein didst thou assist her to overcome her husband, to whom (though the better of the two) she continued her service; wherein she principally served thee, who commandedst her so to do.

I beseech thee, O my God, (for I would gladly know, if thou wert pleased to tell me) to what purpose was my Baptism thus deferred; whether it were more for my good that the reins of sin were, as it were, then enlarged, or that they should not have been enlarged at all? Whence therefore comes it, that even now my ears are on all sides so beaten with this noise: Let him alone, let him do what he will; for he is not yet baptized: whereas upon any doubt of bodily health, we do not say, Let him be more dangerously wounded, for he is not yet cured? How much better had it been for me to have been speedily cured, that by my friends' diligence and my own, so much might have been wrought in me, that my soul having received health, might have been safe under thy protection, who hadst given it? This verily had been the better course. But how many, and what violent waves of temptation did seem to threaten me after my child-

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. noverat eos iam illa mater, et terram potius, unde
^{XI} postea formarer, quam ipsam iam effigiem committere
volebat.

XII

CAP. IN ipsa tamen pueritia, de qua mihi minus
^{XII} quam de adulescentia metuebatur, non amabam
litteras et me in eas urgeri oderam; et urgebar
tamen, et bene mihi fiebat, nec faciebam ego bene:
non enim discerem, nisi cogerer. nemo enim invitus
bene facit, etiamsi bonum est quod facit. nec qui
me urgebant, bene faciebant, sed bene mihi fiebat
abs te, deus meus. illi enim non intuebantur, quo
referrem quod me discere cogebant, praeterquam ad
satiandas insatiabiles cupiditates copiosae inopiae et
ignominiosae gloriæ. tu vero, cui numerati sunt
capilli nostri, errore omnium, qui mihi instabant ut
discerem, utebaris ad utilitatem meam, meo autem,
qui discere nolebam, utebaris ad poenam meam, qua
plexi non eram indignus tantillus puer et tantus
peccator. ita non de bene facientibus tu bene
faciebas mihi, et de peccante me ipso iuste retrivebas
mihi. iussisti enim et sic est, ut poena sua
sibi sit omnis inordinatus animus.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

hood! Those my mother full well knew; and desired CHAP.
to commit to them the clay of which I was after- ^{XI}
wards to be new moulded, rather than the image
itself.¹

XII

*He is forced to his Book: which God turned to
good purpose*

BUT in this my childhood (wherein was less fear of CHAP.
me than in my youth) I loved not my book, and I ^{XII}
hated to be forced to it: yet was I held to it notwithstanding: wherein it was very well for me, but I did not well for myself: for I would never have taken my learning, had I not been constrained to it. For no man does well against his will, though that which he does be good. Nor did they that forced me to it, very well; but it was thou, my God, that didst the good to me. For they that held me to my learning, did not understand to what I would apply it, unless to satiate the insatiable desires of a rich beggary, and a dishonourable glory. But thou before whom the very hairs of our heads Matt. x. 30 are numbered, didst convert the common error of them all who pressed me to learning, to mine own benefit; and my error, who would not learn, didst thou make use of for my punishment; of which I being then so little a boy, and so great a sinner, was not unworthy. Thus by their means who did not well by me, didst thou well for me: and upon me who was a sinner, thou inflictedst a deserved punishment. For thou hast appointed it, and so it proves, every man's inordinate affection shall be his own affliction.

¹ It was believed that this image was restored in baptism.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

XIII

CAP. QUID autem erat causae, cur graecas litteras
XIII oderam, quibus puerulus imbuebar, ne nunc quidem mihi satis exploratum est. adamaveram enim latinas, non quas primi magistri, sed quas docent qui grammatici vocantur. nam illas primas, ubi legere et scribere et numerare discitur, non minus onerosas poenalesque habebam quam omnes graecas. unde tamen et hoc nisi de peccato et vanitate vitae, qua caro eram et spiritus ambulans et non revertens? nam utique meliores, quia certiores, erant primae illae litterae, quibus fiebat in me et factum est et habeo illud, ut et legam, si quid scriptum invenio, et scribam ipse, si quid volo, quam illae, quibus tenere cogebar Aeneae nescio cuius errores, oblitus errorum meorum, et plorare Didonem mortuam, quia se occidit ab amore, cum interea me ipsum in his a te morientem, deus, vita mea, siccis oculis ferrem miserrimus.

Quid enim miserius miserò non miserante se ipsum et flente Didonis mortem, quae fiebat amando Aenean, non flente autem mortem suam, quae fiebat non amando te, deus, lumen cordis mei et panis oris intus animae meae et virtus maritans mentem meam et sinum cogitationis meae? non te amabam, et fornicabar abs te, et fornicanti sonabat undique: "euge,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

XIII

With what studies he was chiefly delighted

BUT what was the reason why of a child I should so naturally hate the Greek tongue when it was taught me, I cannot yet understand. Latin I loved very well: not that part which the elementary teachers enter us in, but that which the men of letters teach us.¹ For those first rudiments, to read, to write, and cipher, I accounted no less painful and troublesome than the Greek. But whence should this proceed, but from the sinfulness and vanity of this life? For Ps. lxxviii. 39 I was but flesh, a wind that passeth away and cometh not again. For those first rudiments were better, because more certain, (seeing that by them, that skill was and is wrought in me, that I am able to read what I find written, and of myself to write what I will) than these latter; by which I was enforced to commit to memory the wanderings of I know not what Æneas, while I forgot mine own: and to bewail dead Dido, because she killed herself for love; when in the mean time (wretch that I was) I with dry eyes endured myself dying towards thee, O God my Life!

For what can be more miserable than a wretch that pities not himself; one bemoaning Dido's death, caused by loving of Æneas, and yet not lamenting his own death, caused by not loving of thee, O God, thou Light of my soul, thou Bread of the internal mouth of my soul, and thou firmest Knot, marrying my soul and the bosom of my thoughts together? I did not love thee, and I committed fornication against thee, while in the mean time every one applauded me with Well done, well done! But

¹ *I.e.* the literature, not the grammar.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. euge." amicitia enim mundi huius fornicatio est abs te
XIII et "euge, euge" dicitur, ut pudeat, si non ita homo sit.
et haec non flebam, et flebam Didonem extinctam fer-
roque extrema secutam, sequens ipse extrema condita
tua relicto te, et terra iens in terram : et si prohiberer
ea legere, dolorem, quia non legerem quod dolorem.
talis dementia honestiores et uberiores litterae putan-
tur quam illae, quibus legere et scribere didici.

Sed nunc in anima mea clamet deus meus, et veri-
tas tua dicat mihi : non est ita, non est ita ; melior
est prorsus doctrina illa prior. nam ecce paratior sum
oblivisci errores Aeneae atque omnia eius modi, quam
scribere et legere. at enim vela pendent liminibus
grammaticarum scholarum, sed non illa magis hono-
rem secreti quam tegimentum erroris significant. non
clament adversus me quos iam non timeo, dum con-
fiteor tibi quae vult anima mea, deus meus, et ad-
quiesco in reprehensione malarum viarum mearum, ut
diligam bonas vias tuas, non clament adversus me
venditores grammaticae vel emptores, quia, si pro-
ponam eis interrogans, utrum verum sit quod Aenean
aliquando Karthaginem venisse poeta dicit, indoc-
tiores nescire se respondebunt, doctiores autem etiam
negabunt verum esse. at si quaeram, quibus litteris
scribatur Aeneae nomen, omnes mihi, qui haec didi-
cerunt, verum respondent et secundum id pactum et
placitum, quo inter se homines ista signa firmarunt.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

the love of this world is fornication against God : CHAP.
which so applauds and encourages a spiritual for-
nicator, that it is even a shame for a man to be XIII
otherwise. But I bemoaned not all this; but dead
Dido I bewailed, that killed herself by falling upon
the sword : I myself following these lower creatures
of thine, forsaking thee ; and myself being earth,
hastening to the earth. But if I were forbidden to read
these toys, how sorry would I be, for that I might
not read that which would make me sorry. Such mad-
nesses were esteemed to be more commendable and
fluent learning, than the learning to write and read.

But let my God now cry unto my soul, and let thy
truth say unto me, It is not so, it is not so ; that first
kind of learning was far better. For behold I am
readier to forget the wanderings of Æneas, and all
such toys, than I am to write and read. True it is,
that there are curtains at the entrance of Grammar
Schools ; but they signify not so much the cloth of
state to privacy, as serve for a blind to the follies
committed behind them. Let not these masters
now cry out upon me, whom now I am out of fear
of ; whilst I confess to thee, my God, what my soul
delights in ; and rest contented with the repre-
hension of mine own evil ways, that I may love thy
good ones. Let not those buyers or sellers of
grammar exclaim upon me, for that if I ask them,
whether that of the poet be true, that Æneas ever
came to Carthage : the unlearned will answer, they
know not ; and the learned will deny it to be true.
But if I ask them with what letters Æneas' name
is written, every one that hath but learned so far,
will pitch upon one truth, according to the agree-
ment and will whereby men at first made rules for
those characters. If I should ask again, which of

James iv. 1

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. item si quaeram, quid horum maiore vitae huius in-
^{XIII} commodo quisque obliscatur, legere et scribere an
poetica illa figmenta, quis non videat, quid respon-
surus sit, qui non est penitus oblitus sui ? peccabam
ergo puer, cum illa inania istis utilioribus amore pre-
ponebam vel potius ista oderam, illa amabam. iam
vero unum et unum duo, duo et duo quattuor odiosa
cantio mihi erat, et dulcissimum spectaculum vanitatis
equus ligneus plenus armatis, et Troiae incendium,
atque ipsius umbra Creusae.

XIV

CAP. CUR ergo graecam etiam grammaticam oderam
^{XIV} talia cantantem ? nam et Homerus peritus texere
tales fabellas, et dulcissime vanus est, et mihi tamen
amarus erat puer. credo etiam graecis pueris Ver-
gilius ita sit, cum eum sic discere coguntur ut ego
illum. videlicet difficultas, difficultas omnino ediscen-
dae linguae peregrinae, quasi felle aspergebat omnes
suavitates graecas fabulosarum narrationum. nulla
enim verba illa noveram, et saevis terroribus ac
poenis, ut nossem, instabatur mihi vehementer. nam
et latina aliquando infans utique nulla noveram, et
tamen advertendo didici sine ullo metu atque cruciatu,
inter etiam blandimenta nutricum et ioca arridentium

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

the two would be most incommodious to the life of CHAP.
man to forget ; to write and read, or, these poetical XIII
fictions ; who sees not what any man would answer,
that had not quite forgotten himself ? I offended
therefore being but a boy, when in my affection I
preferred those vain studies to these more profit-
able : or rather, indeed, I utterly hated these, and
was in love with those. But then, One and one
makes two, and two and two makes four, was a harsh
song to me ; but The Wooden Horse full of Armed
Men, and The Burning of Troy, and the Ghost of
Creusa, was a most delightful spectacle of vanity.

XIV

Of the Greek and Latin Tongues

BUT why then did I hate the Greek literature CHAP.
that chants of such things ? For Homer himself XIV
was skilful in contriving such fictions, and is most
delightfully wanton ; but yet very harsh to me being
a schoolboy. I believe that Virgil is no less to
Grecian children when they be compelled to learn
him, as I was to learn Homer : for to say truth, the
difficulty of learning a strange language, did sprinkle
as it were with gall all the pleasures of those fabulous
narrations. For I understood not a word of it, yet they
vehemently pressed me and with most cruel threaten-
ings and punishments, to make me understand it.
The time was also (when I was an infant) that I knew
not a word of Latin ; yet by marking I got that without
any fear or tormenting, even by my nurses' prattlings
to me, and the pretty tales of those that laughed upon
me, and the sports of those that played with me.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. et laetias alludentium. didici vero illa sine poenali
^{XIV} onere urgentium, cum me urgeret cor meum ad
parienda concepta sua, id quod non esset, nisi aliqua
verba didicissem non a docentibus, sed a loquentibus,
in quorum et ego auribus parturiebam quidquid sen-
tiebam. hinc satis elucet maiorem habere vim ad
discenda ista liberam curiositatem quam meticulosam
necessitatem. sed illius fluxum haec restringit legibus
tuis, deus, legibus tuis a magistrorum ferulis usque
ad temptationes martyrum, valentibus legibus tuis
miscere salubres amaritudines revocantes nos ad te
a iucunditate pestifera, qua recessimus a te.

XV

CAP. EXAUDI, domine, deprecationem meam, ne deficiat
^{XV} anima mea sub disciplina tua, neque deficiam in
confitendo tibi miserationes tuas, quibus eruisti me
ab omnibus viis meis pessimis, ut dulcescas mihi super
omnes seductiones, quas sequebar, et amem te validis-
sime, et amplexer manum tuam totis praecordiis meis,
et eruas me ab omni temptatione usque in finem.

Ecce enim tu, domine, rex meus et deus meus,
tibi serviat quidquid utile puer didici, tibi serviat

ST AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

So much verily I learnt without any painful burden CHAP.
to me of those that urged me, for that mine own XV
heart put me to it to bring out mine own conceptions.
Which I could never have done, had I not learned
divers words, not of those that taught me, but of
them that talked familiarly to me, in whose hearing
I also brought forth whatsoever I had conceived.
Hereby it clearly appears that a free curiosity hath
more force in children's learning of languages, than
a frightful enforcement can have. But the unsettled-
ness of that freedom, this enforcement restrains:
thy laws, O God, yea, thy laws, even from the school-
master's ferule, to the martyr's trials, being able to
temper wholesome and bitter together; calling us
back by that means unto thyself, even from that
infectious sweetness, which at first allured us to fall
away from thee.

XV

His Prayer to God

HEAR my prayer, O Lord, let not my soul faint CHAP.
under thy correction: nor let me faint in confessing XV
unto thee thine own mercies, by which thou hast Ps. ix. 2
drawn me out of all mine own most wicked courses:
that thyself mightest from hence forward grow sweet
unto me, beyond all those allurements which hereto-
fore I followed; and that I might most entirely love
thee, and lay hold upon thy hand with all the powers
of my heart, that thou mightest finally draw me out
of all danger of temptation.

For behold, O Lord my King; whatsoever good I
have learned, being a boy, unto thy service let it be

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. quod loquor et scribo et lego et numero, quoniam cum
^{XV} vana discerem, tu disciplinam dabas mihi et in eis
vanis peccata delectationum mearum dimisisti mihi.
didici in eis multa verba utilia ; sed et in rebus non
vanis disci possunt, et ea via tuta est, in qua pueri
ambularent.

XVI

CAP. SED vae tibi, flumen moris humani ! quis resistit
^{XVI} tibi ? quamdiu non siccaberis ? quo usque volves
Evae filios in mare magnum et formidulosum, quod
vix transeunt qui lignum conscenderint ? nonne ego
in te legi et tonantem Iovem et adulterantem ?
et utique non posset haec duo, sed actum est, ut
haberet auctoritatem imitandum verum adulterium
lenocinante falso tonitru. quis autem paenulatorum
magistrorum audit aure sobria ex eodem pulvere
hominem clamantem et dicentem : fingebat haec
Homerus et humana ad deos transferebat ; divina
mallem ad nos ? sed verius dicitur, quod fingebat
haec quidem ille, sed hominibus flagitious divina
tribuendo, ne flagitia flagitia putarentur, et ut quisquis
ea fecisset, non homines perditos, sed caelestes deos
videretur imitatus.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

directed, yea, whatsoever I speak or write, or read, CHAP.
or number, let all serve thee. For when I learned XV
vain things, thou didst discipline me: and in those
vanities, thou forgavest the sinfulness of my delight
in them. In those studies I learned many useful
words, but those might have been also learned in
studies not so vain: which is, I confess, the safest
way for children to be trained up in.

XVI

Against lascivious fables

BUT woe unto thee, O thou torrent of human CHAP.
custom, who shall stop the course of thee? When XVI
wilt thou be dry? How long wilt thou continue
tumbling the sons of Eve into that huge and hideous
ocean, which they very hardly pass, who are shipped
upon the Tree? Do I not read in thee of Jupiter
sometimes thundering, and sometimes adulterating?
But verily both these could not one person do: but
this is feigned, that there might be authority to imitate
true-acted adultery; false thunder the mean while
playing the bawd to him. Yet which of our long-
robed masters can with any patience hear a man that
should in his school cry out saying: Homer feigned
these, and ascribed men's faults unto the gods; but I
had rather he had derived divine excellencies upon
us. But more truly it is said, that Homer feigned these
things indeed; and that by his attributing divine
excellencies to most wicked mortals, crimes might not
be accounted crimes: so that whosoever shall com-
mit the like, seems not therein to imitate desperate
people, but some heavenly deities.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. XVI. Et tamen, o flumen tartareum, iactantur in te fili
hominum cum mercedibus, ut haec discant, et magna
res agitur, cum hoc agitur publice in foro, in con-
spectu legum supra mercedem salario decernentium,
et saxa tua percutis et sonas dicens : "hinc verba
discuntur, hinc adquiritur eloquentia, rebus persua-
dendis sententiisque explicandis maxime necessaria."
ita ergo non cognosceremus verba haec, imbreum et
aureum et gremium et fucum et templa caeli et alia
verba, quae in eo loco scripta sunt, nisi Terentius
induceret nequam adulescentem, proponentem sibi
Iovem ad exemplum stupri, dum spectat tabulam
quondam pictam in pariete, ubi inerat pictura haec,
Iovem quo pacto Danaae misisse aiunt in gremium
quondam imbreum aureum, fucum factum mulieri ?
et vide, quemadmodum se concitat ad libidinem
quasi caelesti magisterio :

at quem deum ! (inquit) qui templa caeli summo
sonitu concutit.

ego homuncio id non facerem ? ego vero illud
feci ac libens.

Non omnino, non omnino per hanc turpitudinem
verba ista commodius discuntur, sed per haec verba
turpitudo ista confidentius perpetratur. non accuso
verba quasi vasa lecta atque pretiosa, sed vinum
erroris, quod in eis nobis propinabatur ab ebriis doc-
toribus, et nisi biberemus, caedebamur, nec appellare

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

This notwithstanding, O thou hellish torrent, are CHAP.
the sons of men cast into thee, with payments XVI
made, to learn these fables; and a great solemnity is
made of it, when 'tis pleaded for openly in the
assemblies, and in the sight of the laws, which allow
stipends to the teachers over and above the payments
of the scholars: yet, O torrent, thou art still beating
upon thy rocks, roaring out, and crying: Here are
fine words to be learned; here eloquence is attained:
eloquence so necessary to persuade to business, and
with advantage to express thoughts. But for all this,
should we never so well have understood these words:
The Golden Shower, the Lap, the Deceit, the Temple
of Heaven, and such others written in the same place,
had not Terence withal brought a lewd young man Ter. Eun.
upon the stage, propounding Jupiter to himself for 585
an example of his adultery; whilst he beholds a
certain picture on the wall, wherein are set out to
the life, the story of Jupiter raining a golden shower
into Danae's lap, deceiving the simple maiden by
that means? See how that young man provoked
himself to lust, as if he had had a celestial authority
for it:

"But what god do I imitate, saith he? Even that Ter. Eun.
god who with a mighty thunder shakes the very 589
arches of heaven: may I not then, frail flesh and
blood, do as much? But I for my part did as much,
yea, and gladly too."

Plainly, these words are not so much the more easily
learned by this filthy matter, but by these words the
sin is more confidently committed. I blame not the
words, which of themselves are like vessels choice
and precious; but that wine of error which is in
them, drunk to us by our intoxicated teachers. If
we refused to pledge them, we were beaten: nor had

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. ad aliquem iudicem sobrium licebat. et tamen ego,
^{XVI} deus meus, in cuius conspectu iam secura est
recordatio mea, libenter haec didici et eis delectabar
miser et ob hoc bonae spei puer appellabar.

XVII

CAP. SINE me, deus meus, dicere aliquid de ingenio
^{XVII} meo, munere tuo, in quibus a me deliramentis
atterebatur. proponebatur enim mihi negotium
anima meae satis inquietum, praemio laudis et
dedecoris vel plagarum metu, ut dicerem verba
Iunonis irascentis et dolentis, quod non possit Italia
Teucrorum avertere regem: quae numquam Iuno-
nem dixisse audieram, sed figmentorum poeticorum
vestigia errantes sequi cogebamur, et tale aliquid
dicere solutis verbis, quale poeta dixisset versibus:
et ille dicebat laudabilius, in quo pro dignitate
adumbratae personae ire ac doloris similiar affectus
eminebat verbis sententias congruenter vestientibus.

Ut quid mihi illud, o vera vita, deus meus? quid
mihi recitanti adclamabatur prae multis coactaneis
et conlectoribus meis? nonne ecce illa omnia fumus
et ventus? itane aliud non erat, ubi exerceretur
ingenium et lingua mea? laudes tuae, domine,
laudes tuae per scripturas tuas suspenderent

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

we liberty to appeal unto any sober judge. All CHAP.
this notwithstanding, O my God, (in whose presence XVI
I now with security remember this) I did willingly
learn these things; and unhappy I, was for this
accounted a youth of much towardness.

XVII

The way of exercising youth in repeating and varying of verses

GIVE me leave, O my God, to tell thee something CHAP.
of mine own wit, which was thy gift, and what XVII
dotages I spent it upon. My master put a task
upon me, troublesome enough to my soul, and that
upon terms of reward of commendations, or fear of
shame and whipping: namely, that I should declaim
upon those words of Juno, expressing both her
anger and sorrow, that she could not keep off the
Trojan King from going into Italy: which words I
had heard that Juno never uttered; yet were we
enforced to imitate the passages of these poetical
fictions; and to vary that into prose which the poet
had expressed in verse. And he declaimed with
more applause, in whose action, according to the
dignity of the person represented, there appeared
an affection nearer to anger or grief, set out with
words agreeable to the matter.

But to what end was this, O my true Life, my God? Why was my declamation more applauded than so many others of mine own age and form? Was not all this mere smoke and wind? And could no other subject be found to exercise my wit and tongue in? Thy praises, O Lord, thy praises, might have stayed the tender sprig of my heart upon the prop of thy

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. palmitem cordis mei, et non raperetur per inania
XVII nugarum turpis praeda volatilibus. non enim uno modo sacrificatur transgressoribus angelis.

XVIII

CAP. QUID autem mirum, quod in vanitates ita ferebar, et a te, deus meus, ibam foras, quando mihi imitandi proponebantur homines, qui aliqua facta sua non mala si cum barbarismo aut soloecismo enuntiarent, reprehensi confundebantur; si autem libidines suas integris et rite consequentibus verbis copiose ordinateque narrarent, laudati gloriabantur? vides haec, domine, et taces, longanimis et multum misericors et verax. numquid semper tacebis? et nunc erues de hoc inmanissimo profundo quaerentem te animam et sitientem delectationes tuas, et cuius cor dicit tibi: quae sivi vultum tuum; vultum tuum, domine, requiram: nam longe a vultu tuo in affectu tenebroso. non enim pedibus aut spatiis locorum itur abs te aut redditur ad te, aut vero filius ille tuus equos aut currus vel naves quae sivit aut avolavit pinna visibili aut moto poplite iter egit, ut in longinqua regione vivens prodige dissiparet quod dederas

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

Scriptures, that it might not have been cropped off CHAP.
by these empty vanities, to be caught up as a prey by XVII
those flying spirits. For by more ways than one is
there sacrifice offered to the collapsed angels.

XVIII

*That Men care more to observe the Rules of
Grammar than the Laws of God*

BUT what wonder was it, if I were thus carried CHAP.
towards vanity, and estranged from thee, O my God ; XVIII
whenas such men were propounded to me to imitate,
who should they deliver any of their own acts,
though not evil, with any barbarism or solecism, they
were utterly dashed out of countenance : but should
they make a copious and neat oration of their own
lusts, in a round and well followed style, would take
a pride to be applauded for it. These things thou
seest, O Lord, long suffering, and of much mercy
and truth, and thou keepest silence ; but wilt thou
be silent for ever ? Even now thou wilt draw out of
this horrible pit, that soul that seeks after thee, and
that thirsts after thy pleasures : whose heart saith Ps. xxvii. 9
unto thee, I have sought thy face, and thy face, Lord,
will I seek. For I had straggled far away from
thy countenance in the mistiness of my affections.
For we neither go nor return, from, or to thee,
upon our feet, or by distance of spaces : nor did that
younger brother seek post-horses, or waggons, or
ships, or fly away with visible wings, or take his
journey by the motion of his hams, that living in a Luke xv.
far country he might prodigally waste that portion,
which thou hadst given him at his departure. A

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

CAP. proficiscenti, dulcis pater, quia dederas, et egeno
XVIII redeungi dulcior: in affectu ergo libidinoso, id enim
est tenebroso atque id est longe a vultu tuo. vide,
domine deus meus, et patienter, ut vides, vide,
quomodo diligenter observent filii hominum pacta
litterarum et syllabarum accepta a prioribus locu-
toribus, et a te accepta aeterna pacta perpetuae
salutis neglegant: ut qui illa sonorum vetera placita
teneat aut doceat, si contra disciplinam grammati-
cam sine adspiratione primae syllabae hominem
dixerit, magis displiceat hominibus, quam si contra
tua praecepta hominem oderit, cum sit homo. quasi
vero quemlibet inimicum hominem perniciosius sen-
tiat quam ipsum odium, quo in eum irritatur, aut
vastet quisquam persequendo alium gravius, quam
cor suum vastat inimicando. et certe non est in-
terior litterarum scientia quam scripta conscientia,
id se alteri facere quod nolit pati. quam tu secretus
es, habitans in excelsis in silentio, deus solus magnus,
lege infatigabili spargens poenales caecitates supra
inlicitas cupiditates, cum homo eloquentiae famam
quaeritans ante hominem iudicem, circumstante
hominum multitudine, inimicum suum odio inmanis-
simo insectans, vigilantissime cavet, ne per linguae
errorem dicat: Inter omnes, et ne per mentis
furorem hominem auferat ex hominibus non cavet.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

sweet Father, because thou gavest him his portion : CHAP.
yet far sweeter to the poor wretch returning : for XVIII
that he went from thee out of a voluptuous affection ;
that is to say, a darkened one ; and such that is,
which is far from thy countenance. Behold, O Lord
God, and patiently behold, as thou still dost, how
diligently the sons of men observe the rules of
letters and syllables received from former speakers ;
and yet regard not the eternal covenants of ever-
lasting salvation, received from thyself. Insomuch,
that he who either holds or teaches the ancient rules
of pronunciation, if contrary to grammar he shall
pronounce *ominem*, (that is, a man) without H in the
first syllable ; he shall displease men more, than if
against thy rules he should hate a man, although he
be a man. As if any man should think his enemy
to be more pernicious to him, than that hatred of
his own is, whereby he is set against him : or imagine
that he does worse scath to another man by perse-
cuting him, than he does to his own heart, by con-
triving enmity against him. Certainly there is no
more inward knowledge of Letters than this law of
conscience, that one is doing to another what himself Matt. vii. 11
would not suffer. How secret art thou, O thou only
great God, which dwellest in the Highest, and in
silence, with an untiring destiny, dispersing blind-
ness for punishments upon unlawful desires ; when a
man affects the credit of eloquence, standing before a
mortal judge, a multitude of mortals standing about
him, inveighing against his adversary with his
fiercest hatred, he takes heed most watchfully, that
his tongue trips not before men, and he call them
omines ; but takes no heed at all, lest through the
fury of his spirit he should destroy a man out of the
society of men.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER I

XIX

CAP.
XIX HORUM ego puer morum in limine iacebam miser, et huius harenae palaestra erat illa, ubi magis timebam barbarismum facere, quam cavebam, si facerem, non facientibus invidere. dico haec et confiteor tibi, deus meus, in quibus laudabar ab eis, quibus placere tunc mihi erat honeste vivere. non enim videbam voraginem turpitudinis, in quam proiectus eram ab oculis tuis. nam in illis iam quid me foedius fuit, ubi etiam talibus displicebam, fallendo innumerabilibus mendaciis et paedagogum et magistros et parentes, amore ludendi, studio spectandi nugatoria et imitandi ludiera inquietudine?

Furta etiam faciebam de cellario parentum et de mensa, vel gula imperante vel ut haberem quod darem pueris, ludum suum mihi, quo pariter utique delectabantur, tamen vendentibus. in quo etiam ludo fraudulentas victorias ipse vana excellentiae cupiditate victus saepe aucupabar. quid enim tam nolebam pati atque atrociter, si deprehenderem, arguebam, quam id quod aliis faciebam? et, si deprehensus arguerer, saevire magis quam cedere libebat.

Istane est innocentia puerilis? non est, domine, non est, oro te, deus meus. nam haec ipsa sunt

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

XIX

*How he was more careful to avoid Barbarisms of
Speech, than corruption of Manners*

IN the threshold of these customs lay I, wretched boy, CHAP.
and upon that stage I played my prizes; where I ^{XIX}
more feared to commit a barbarism in speaking, than
I took care when I committed any, not to envy those
that committed none. All this I declare and confess to thee, my God; but in these things I was by them applauded, to please whom, I then accounted equal to living honestly. For then I discerned not that whirlpool of filthiness whereinto I was cast from thine eyes. For in thine eyes, what was more filthy than I? Where also I displeased such as myself; with innumerable lies deceiving both my tutor, and masters, and parents: all for love of play, out of a desire to see toys, and a restless desire to imitate the stage.

Thievery also I committed out of my father's buttery and table; either gluttony oft commanding me, or that I might have something to give my playfellows, selling me their baubles, although they were as much delighted with them as myself. In these play-games I being often over-matched, did with a vain desire to be counted excellent, aspire to win, though by foul play. And what was I so unwilling to endure, and what if I found out the deceit would I so fiercely wrangle at, as even those very tricks which I would put upon others? And being myself taken with the manner, I would rather fall flat out, than yield to it.

Is this that childish innocence? It is not, Lord, it is not. I cry thee mercy, O my God: for these are

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. quae a paedagogis et magistris, a nucibus et pilulis
XIX et passeribus, ad praefectos et reges, aurum, praedia,
mancipia, haec ipsa omnino succendentibus maioribus
aetatibus transeunt, sicuti ferulis maiora supplicia
succedunt. humilitatis ergo signum in statura pueri-
tiae, rex noster, probasti, cum aisti : talium est
regnum caelorum.

XX

CAP. SED tamen, domine, tibi excellentissimo, optimo
XX conditori et rectori universitatis, deo nostro gratias,
etiamsi me puerum tantum esse voluisses. eram enim
etiam tunc, vivebam atque sentiebam meamque in-
columitatem, vestigium secretissimae unitatis, ex qua
eram, curae habebam, custodiebam interiore sensu
integritatem sensuum meorum, inque ipsis parvis par-
varumque rerum cogitationibus veritate delectabar.
falli nolebam, memoria vigebam, locutione instruebar,
amicitia mulcebar, fugiebam dolorem, abiectionem,
ignorantiam. quid in tali animante non mirabile
atque laudabile? at ista omnia dei mei dona sunt,
non mihi ego dedi haec : et bona sunt et haec omnia
ego. bonus ergo est qui fecit me, et ipse est bonum
meum, et illi exulto bonis omnibus, quibus etiam puer

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

the same things, the very same, which as our years go on, leaving tutors and masters, leaving nuts, and balls, and birds, are done with regard to kings and governors, to the getting of gold, and manor houses, and slaves. But this boy's play passes over as more years come on, just as greater punishments follow after the ferule. Thou therefore, O our King, hast approved of the character of humility in the stature of childhood, when thou sayest : To such belongeth the Kingdom of God.

CHAP.
XIX

Matt. xix.
114

XX

He thanketh God for his Benefits

BUT yet, O Lord, thanks have been due to thee, our God and most excellent Creator, Governor of this universe, although thou hadst not been pleased to have brought me any further than the age of childhood. For even then a Being I had, yea Life and Senses ; even then I had a care of mine own well being, which is an impression of that most secret unity of thine, whence I had my being ; in my inward sense preserved I the entireness of my outward senses ; even in these little things and in reflecting on little things, was I delighted with the truth. I would not willingly be deceived ; a fresh memory I had ; in forms of speaking I was well tutored ; by friendly usage I was made tractable. I avoided all sadness, dejectedness, and ignorance ; in such a little creature, what was there not admirable, not commendable ? But all these are the gifts of my God : for I bestowed them not upon myself. Good endowments they were ; and all these was I. Good therefore is he that made me ; yea, he is my good, and

CHAP.
XX

59

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER I

CAP. eram. hoc enim peccabam, quod non in ipso, sed in
XX creaturis eius, me atque ceteris, voluptates, sublimi-
tates veritates quaerebam, atque ita inruebam in
dolores, confusiones, errores. gratias tibi, dulcedo
mea et honor meus et fiducia mea, deus meus,
gratias tibi de donis tuis; sed tu mihi ea
serva. ita enim servabis me, et auge-
buntur et perficiantur quae dedisti
mihi, et ero ipse tecum,
quia et ut sim tu
dedisti mihi.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK I

to him will I rejoice for all my good gifts, which of CHAP.
a child I had. But here was my oversight, that I ^{XX}
sought not pleasures, honours, and truths in him,
but in his creatures, myself and the others ; and
therefore rushed I myself upon sorrows, disorders, and
errors. Thanks to thee, my Sweetness, my Honour,
my Trust, and my God ! Thanks to thee for all
thy gifts ! But be pleased to preserve them
still unto me, and thus shall myself be
preserved, and all thy gifts shall be
both increased and perfected :
yea, and I shall be with
thee ; for my being
is of thy giving.

BOOK II

LIBER SECUNDVS

I

CAP. RECORDARI volo transactas foeditates meas, et
^I carnales corruptiones animae meae, non quod eas
amem, sed ut amem te, deus meus. amore amoris
tui facio istuc, recolens vias meas nequissimas in
amaritudine recognitioonis meae, ut tu dulcescas
mihi, dulcedo non fallax, dulcedo felix et secura, et
colligens me a dispersione, in qua frustatim discessus
sum, dum ab uno te aversus in multa evanui.

Exarsi enim aliquando satiari inferis in adules-
centia, et silvescere ausus sum variis et umbrosis
amoribus, et contabuit species mea, et computrui
coram oculis tuis, placens mihi et placere cupiens
oculis hominum.

II

CAP. Et quid erat, quod me delectabat, nisi amare
^{II} et amari? sed non tenebatur modus ab animo usque
ad animum, quatenus est luminosus limes amicitiae,

THE SECOND BOOK

I

He enters upon the Years and Sins of his Youth

I WILL now call to mind my over-passed impurities, CHAP.
and the fleshly corruptions of my soul : not because I
I love them, but that I may love thee, O my God.
For love of thy love I do it ; in the very bitterness
of my remembrance repeating over my most wicked
courses, that thou mayest only grow sweet unto me ;
(thou Sweetness never beguiling, thou happy and
secure Sweetness !) and recollecting myself out of
that broken condition of mine, wherein I was piece-
meal shattered asunder ; while being turned away
from thee alone, I squandered away myself upon
many vanities.

For I even burnt in my youth heretofore to
take my fill of hell ; and I dared even to grow wild
again, with these various loves beneath the shade :
my beauty withered away, and I even stank in
thine eyes ; pleasing myself all this while, and
desirous to content the eyes of mortals.

II

He accuseth his Youth spent in the heat of Lustfulness

AND what was it that I delighted in, but to love CHAP.
and to be beloved ? But love kept not that modera- II
tion of one mind's loving another mind, as the
lightsome bounder of true friendship ; but out of

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER II

CAP. sed exhalabantur nebulae de limosa concupiscentia
11 carnis et scatebra pubertatis, et obnubilabant atque
obfuscabant cor meum, ut non discerneretur serenitas
dilectionis a caligine libidinis. utrumque in confuso
aestuabat et rapiebat inbecillam aetatem per abrupta
cupiditatum atque mersabat gurgite flagitorum.
invaluerat super me ira tua, et nesciebam. obsurdue-
ram stridore catenae mortalitatis ~~meae~~ poena super-
biae animae meae, et ibam longius a te, et sinebas, et
iactabar et effundebar et diffuebam et ebulliebam
per fornicationes meas, et tacebas. o tardum gaudium
meum ! tacebas tunc, et ego ibam porro longe a te
in plura et plura sterilia semina dolorum superba,
deiectione et inquieta lassitudine.

Quis mihi modularetur aerumnam meam et novis-
simarum rerum fugaces pulchritudines in usum ver-
teret earumque suavitatibus metas praefigeret, ut
usque ad coniugale litus exaestuarent fluctus aetatis
meae, si tranquillitas in eis non poterat esse fine pro-
creandorum liberorum contenta, sicut praescribit lex
tua, domine, qui formas etiam propaginem mortis
nostraे, potens inponere lenem manum ad tempera-
mentum spinarum a paradiſo tuo seclusarum ? non
enim longe est a nobis omnipotentia tua, etiam cum
longe sumus a te. aut certe sonitum nubium tuarum
vigilantius adverterem : tribulationem autem carnis

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

that puddly concupiscence of my flesh, certain mists CHAP.
and bubblings of youth fumed up, which beclouded II
and so overcast my heart, that I could not discern
the beauty of a chaste affection, from a fog of impure
lustfulness. Both did confusedly boil in me, and
ravished away my unstayed youth over the downfalls
of unchaste desires, and drenched me over head and
ears in the very whirlpool of most heinous impurities.
Thy wrath all this while grew upon me, and I perceived
it not. I was now grown deaf by the continual
crashing of that chain of my frailty, (thy punishment
upon the pride of my soul) and I straggled further
from thee, and thou letst me alone, and I was tumbled
up and down, and I was even spilt and poured out,
yea, and I boiled over in my fornications, and thou
heldest thy peace yet. O my Joy, how slow art
thou ! Thou then heldest thy peace, and then
wandered I further and further from thee, into more
and more fruitless seed-plots of sorrow, with a proud
dejectedness, and an untired weariness.

O for somebody that would then have sweetened
my misery, and have converted to good use the fading
beauties of these newest vanities ! that would have
prefixed some bounds to their tempting sweets, that
so the high tides of my youth might have spent their
force at last upon the shore of the marriage bed ; if
so be the calmness those tides might be brought
unto, would not have been contented with having
children, as thy law prescribes, O Lord : even thou,
who this way formest the offspring of our mortality,
being able also with a gentle hand to blunt the
prickles of those thorns, which were not suffered
to grow in thy Paradise ? For thy omnipotency is
not very far from us, even when we be far from thee.
Or certainly I should have more heedfully hearkened

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER II

CAP. habebunt huius modi, ego autem vobis parco ; et :
^{II} bonum est homini mulierem non tangere ; et : qui sine uxore est, cogitat ea quae sunt dei, quomodo placeat deo, qui autem matrimonio iunctus est, cogitat ea quae sunt mundi, quomodo placeat uxori. has ergo voces exaudirem vigilantior, et abscissus propter regnum caelorum felicior expectarem amplexus tuos.

Sed efferbui miser, sequens impetum fluxus mei relicto te, et excessi omnia legitima tua, nec evasi flagella tua : quis enim hoc mortalium ? nam tu semper aderas misericorditer saeviens, et amarissimis aspargens offenditionibus omnes illicitas iucunditates meas, ut ita quaererem sine offenditione iucundari, et ubi hoc possem, non invenirem quicquam praeter te, domine, praeter te, qui fingis dolorem in praecepto et percutis, ut sanes, et occidis nos, ne moriamur abs te. ubi eram, et quam longe exulabam a deliciis domus tuae, anno illo sexto decimo aetatis carnis meae, cum accepit in me scepstrum, et totas manus ei dedi, vesania libidinis licentiosae per dedecus humanum, inlicitae autem per leges tuas ? non fuit cura meorum ruentem excipere me matrimonio, sed cura fuit tantum, ut discerem sermonem facere quam optimum et persuadere dictione.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

to the voice of these clouds of thine : Notwith- CHAP.
standing such shall have trouble in the flesh, but I ^{II}
spare you. And again : It is good for a man not to ^{1 Cor.}
touch a woman. And, He that is married careth ^{vii. 28, 1, 32}
for the things of this world, how he may please his
wife. I should have therefore more attentively
listened to those words, and made myself an eunuch ^{Matt. xix.}
for the Kingdom of God, and so I might more ¹²
happily have expected thy embraces.

But I was too hot upon it (wretch that I was)
pursuing still the violent course of mine own stream,
having left thee utterly : yea, and exceeded all thy
prescriptions, nor did I escape thy scourges. For
what mortal can avoid them ? For thou wert with
me at every turn, most mildly rigorous, and ever and
anon besaucing all my unlawful pastimes with most
bitter discontentments : all to draw me on to seek
for such pleasures as were without such discontent,
and that I might light upon none but thee, O
Lord : but thee, who makest, as it were, some
hardship in thy commandment ; and smitest us that
thou mayest heal us, yea, slayest us, that we should
not die away from thee. Where was I, and how
far was I banished from those delights of thy house
in that sixteenth year of the age of my flesh ; at
what time the madness of raging lust, (in which
human shamelessness takes too much liberty, not-
withstanding by thy laws it be forbidden) exercised
its supreme dominion in me, I giving over all my
force unto it ? My parents took no care all this
while by marriage to save me from ruin ; but their
care was to have me learn to make a powerful oration,
and to prove a most persuasive speaker.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER II

III

CAP. ^{III} Et anno quidem illo intermissa erant studia mea,
dum mihi reducto a Madauris, in qua vicina urbe iam
cooperam litteraturae atque oratoriae percipiendae
gratia peregrinari, longinquioris apud Karthaginem
peregrinationis sumptus parabantur, animositate
magis quam opibus patris, municipis Thagastensis ad-
modum tenuis. cui narro haec? neque enim tibi,
deus meus, sed apud te narro haec generi meo,
generi humano, quantulacumque ex particula inci-
dere potest in istas meas litteras. et ut quid hoc? ut
videlicet ego et quisquis haec legit cogitemus, de
quam profundo clamandum sit ad te. et quid proprius
auribus tuis, si cor confitens et vita ex fide est? quis
enim non extollebat laudibus tunc hominem, patrem
meum, quod ultra vires rei familiaris suae impenderet
filio, quidquid etiam longe peregrinanti studiorum
causa opus esset? multorum enim civium longe
opulentiorum nullum tale negotium pro liberis erat,
cum interea non satageret idem pater, qualis cres-
cerem tibi aut quam castus essem, dummodo essem
disertus vel desertus potius a cultura tua, deus, qui
es unus verus et bonus dominus agri tui, cordis mei.

Sed ubi sexto illo et decimo anno interposito otio
ex necessitate domestica feriatus ab omni schola cum
parentibus esse coepi, excesserunt caput meum vepres

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

III.

Of his Travels for his Studies' sake, and his Parents' Purpose in it

Now for that year were my studies intermitted : CHAP.
whenas upon my return from Madaura (a neighbour III
city wherein I had begun to learn the principles of
literature and rhetoric) the expenses for a further
journey to Carthage were provided for me : and that
rather out of a brave mind my father bare, than any
ability in him, for he was but a poor freeman of
Thagaste. To whom tell I all this ? For to thee I
tell it not ; but before thee relate it to mine own
kind, the human kind, even to so small a part of it as
may light upon these writings of mine. And to what
purpose do I this ? Even that both myself and whoso-
ever reads this, may bethink ourselves out of what
depths we are to cry unto thee. For what is nearer Ps. cxxx. 1
to thine ears than the confessing heart, and the life
directed by faith ? Who did not then highly commend
my father, for that even above the ability of his means
he had furnished out his son with all necessaries for
the taking of a far journey for his studies' sake ?
For many abler citizens did no such thing for their
children. But yet this father of mine never troubled
himself with any thought of how I might improve
myself towards thee, or how chaste I were ; so that
I proved cultivated, though I were left withal un-
dressed by thy tillage, O God, which art the only,
true, and good landlord of the field of my heart.

But whilst in that sixteenth year of my age I left
going to school, and upon some household necessities
lived idly at home with my parents, the briars of
unclean desires grew rank over my head, and there

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER II

CAP. libidinum, et nulla erat eradicans manus. quin immo
^{III} ubi me ille pater in balneis vidi pubescentem et in-
quieta indutum adulescentia, quasi iam ex hoc in
nepotes gestiret, gaudens matri indicavit, gaudens
vinulentia, in qua te iste mundus oblitus est crea-
torem suum et creaturam tuam pro te amavit, de
vino invisibili perversae atque inclinatae in ima
voluntatis sua. sed matris in pectore iam incho-
averas templum tuum et exordium sanctae habita-
tionis tuae: nam ille adhuc catechumenus et hoc
recens erat. itaque illa exsiluit pia trepidatione ac
tremore, et quamvis mihi nondum fideli, timuit tamen
vias distortas, in quibus ambulant qui ponunt ad te
tergum et non faciem.

Ei mihi! et audeo dicere tacuisse te, deus meus,
cum irem abs te longius? itane tu tacebas tunc
mihi? et cuius erant nisi tua verba illa per matrem
meam, fidelem tuam, quae cantasti in aures meas?
nec inde quicquam descendit in cor, ut facerem illud.
volet enim illa, et secreto memini, ut monuerit
cum sollicitudine ingenti, ne fornicarer, maximeque
ne adulterarem cuiusquam uxorem. qui mihi moni-
tus muliebres videbantur, quibus obtemperare erubes-
cerem. illi autem tui erant, et nesciebam, et te
tacere putabam atque illam loqui, per quam mihi tu

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

was no hand put to root them out. Moreover, when my father seeing me in the bath, how the signs of manhood began to bud in me, and plumed already with a stirring youthfulness: as if in this sight he had first rejoiced in hope of having grandchildren by me, he gladly told it to my mother: rejoicing, I say, at it in his wine, in which the world too oft forgets thee its Creator, in the immaterial intoxication of its own will, perverse and bent to the lowest things, frowardly and weakly setting its love upon thy creature instead of thyself. But thou hadst already begun thy temple in my mother's breast, and laid the foundations of thine own holy habitation: whereas my father was but a Catechumen as yet, one newly converted. She therefore was even startled with an holy fear and trembling. And though I were not as yet baptized; yet feared she those crooked ways, in which they walk, who put their backs to thee, and not their faces.

Woe is me! And dare I say that thou heldest thy peace, O my God, whilst I wandered further from thee? Is it so? Didst thou indeed hold thy peace to me? And whose but thine were those words, which by my mother, thy faithful one, thou sangest in my ears? Nothing of which would at that time so far sink into my heart, as to do it. For she commanded me, and, as I well remember, with very much earnestness forewarned me, that I should not commit fornication; and especially that I should never defile any man's wife. These seemed to me no better than women's advices, which would be a shame for me to follow. But they were thine, indeed, and I knew it not: I thought thou hadst held thy peace, and that she only had spoken: she, by whom thou wert not silent unto me; and in

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER II

CAP. non tacebas, et in illa contemnebaris à me, a me,
^{III} filio eius, filio ancillae tuae, servo tuo. sed nesciebam
et praeeceps ibam tanta caecitate, ut inter coaeta-
neos meos puderet me minoris dedecoris, quoniam
audiebam eos iactantes flagitia sua et tanto
gloriantes magis, quanto magis turpes essent, et
libebat facere non solum libidine facti verum etiam
laudis.

Quid dignum est vituperatione nisi vitium? ego,
ne vituperarer, vitiosior fiebam, et ubi non suberat,
quo admisso aequarer perditis, fingebam me fecisse
quod non feceram, ne viderer abiectior, quo eram
innocentior, et ne vilior haberer, quo eram castior.
ecce cum quibus comitibus iter agebam platearum
Babyloniae, et volutabar in caeno eius tamquam in
cinnamis et unguentis pretiosis. et in umbilico eius
quo tenacius haererem, calcabat me inimicus invis-
ibilis et seducebat me, quia ego seductilis eram. non
enim et illa, quae iam de medio Babylonis fugerat,
sed ibat in ceteris eius tardior, mater carnis meae,
sicut monuit me pudicitiam, ita curavit quod de me
a viro suo audierat, iamque pestilentiosum et in poste-
rum periculosum sentiebat cohercere termino coniu-
galis affectus, si resecari ad vivum non poterat. non
curavit hoc, quia metus erat, ne inpediretur spes

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

her thyself wast contemned by me ; even by me her CHAP.
son, the son of thy handmaid, and thy servant. But ^{III} all this while I knew it not ; and I ran headlong with such blindness, that I was ashamed amongst my equals to be guilty of less impudency than they were, whom I heard brag mightily of their naughtiness : yea, and so much the more boasting, by how much more they had been beastly : and I took pleasure to do it, not for the pleasure of the act only, but for the praise of it also.

What now is worthy of dispraise, if vice be not ? But I made myself worse than indeed I was, that I might not be dispraised ; and when I wanted opportunity to commit a naughtiness should make me as bad as the lost, I would feign myself to have done what I never did, that I might not seem so much the more dastardly, as I was the more innocent ; and that I might not be counted so much the more faint hearted, as I was the more chaste. Behold with what companions I walked the streets of Babylon, and I wallowed myself in the mire of it, as if I had reposed in a bed of spices and most precious ointments. And to make me cleave the faster to the very centre of sin, my invisible enemy trod me down and seduced me, because I was easy to be seduced. Yea, and the mother of my flesh, although herself were already fled out of Babylon, yet Jer. ii. 6 went she full slow in the outskirts : for, as she had once advised me to keep my chastity, so she carried some respect withal to what she had heard her husband say of me. She felt it to be now deadly and dangerous for the future to restrain me within the bonds of a matrimonial affection, if that infection in me could not otherwise be pared away by the quick. But she continued not in that care,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER II

CAP. mea conpede uxoria, non spes illa, quam in te futuri
^{III} saeculi habebat mater, sed spes litterarum, quas ut ^x
nossem nimis volebat parens uterque, ille, quia de te
prope nihil cogitabat, de me autem inania, illa autem,
quia non solum nullo detimento, sed etiam non-
nullo adiumento ad te adipiscendum futura existi-
mabat usitata illa studia doctrinae. ita enim conicio
recolens, ut possum, mores parentum meorum. relaxabantur etiam mihi ad ludendum habenae ultra
temperamentum severitatis in dissolutionem afflictionum variarum, et in omnibus erat caligo inter-
cludens mihi, deus meus, serenitatem veritatis tuae,
et prodiebat tamquam ex adipe iniquitas mea.

IV

CAP. FURTUM certe punit lex tua, domine, et lex scripta
^{IV} in cordibus hominum, quam ne ipsa quidem delet
iniquitas: quis enim fur aequo animo furem patitur?
nec copiosus adactum inopia. et ego furtum facere
volui, et feci, nulla compulsus egestate, nisi penuria
et fastidio iustitiae et sagina iniquitatis. nam id
furatus sum, quod mihi abundabat et multo melius;
nec ea re volebam frui, quam furto appetebam, sed

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

because she feared withal, lest my hopes might be CHAP.
hindered by a she-clog. Not those hopes of the ^{III} next world, which my mother reposed in thee ; but the hopes of learning, which both my parents were greatly desirous I should attain unto. He, because he had little or no thought almost of thee, and but vain conceits of me neither. She, because she made reckoning that those usual courses of learning, would not only be no hindrance, but a great furtherance towards my attaining of thee. For thus I conjecture (to my best remembrance) were the dispositions of both my parents at that time. The reins (in the mean time) of liberty to play were slackened towards me, beyond all temper of due severity, yea even to dissoluteness which brought the various troubles. And in all these, there was a mist depriving my sight, O my God, of the brightness of thy truth ; and mine iniquity came from me, as if swelling from a fatness. Ps. lxxiii. 7

IV

How he robbed a Pear-tree

SURELY thy law, O Lord, punishes thievery ; yea, CHAP.
and this law is so written in our hearts, that ini- ^{IV} quity itself cannot blot it out. For what thief does willingly abide another man to steal from him ? No, not a rich thief, him that is driven to steal upon necessity. Yet had I a desire to commit thievery ; and did it, compelled neither by hunger nor poverty ; but even through a cloyedness of well doing, and a pamperedness of iniquity. For I stole that, of which I had enough of mine own, and much better. Nor when I had done, cared I to enjoy the thing which

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER II

CAP. ipso furto et peccato. arbor erat pirus in vicinia
^{IV} nostrae vineae, pomis onusta, nec forma nec sapore
inlecebrosis. ad hanc excutiendam atque asportan-
dam nequissimi adulescentuli perreximus nocte in-
tempesta, quousque ludum de pestilentiae more in
areis produxeramus, et abstulimus inde onera ingentia
non ad nostras epulas, sed vel proicienda porcis,
etiamsi aliquid inde comedimus, dum tamen fieret a
nobis quod eo liberet, quo non liceret. ecce cor
meum, deus, ecce cor meum, quod miseratus es in
imo abyssi. dicat tibi nunc ecce cor meum, quid ibi
quaerebat, ut essem gratis malus et malitiae meae
causa nulla esset nisi malitia. foeda erat, et amavi
eam; amavi perire, amavi defectum meum, non illud,
ad quod deficiebam, sed defectum meum ipsum
amavi, turpis anima et dissiliens a firmamento tuo
in exterminium, non dedecore aliquid, sed dedecus
appetens.

V

CAP. ETENIM species est pulchris corporibus, et auro et
^V argento et omnibus, et in contactu carnis congruentia
valet plurimum, ceterisque sensibus est sua cuique
accommodata modificatio corporum; habet etiam
honor temporalis et imperitandi atque superandi
potentia suum decus, unde etiam vindictae aviditas

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

I had stolen, but joying in the theft and sin itself. CHAP.
A pear-tree there was in the orchard next our vine-
yard, well laden with fruit, not much tempting
either for colour or taste. To the shaking and
robbing of this, a company of lewd young fellows
of us went late one night, (having, according to our
pestilent custom in the game-places, continued our
sports even till that season): thence carried we huge
loadings, not for our own lickerishness, but even to
fling to the hogs, though perhaps we ate some of it.
And all this we did, because we would go whither we
should not. Behold my heart, O Lord, which thou
hadst pity on in the very bottom of the bottomless pit.
Now, behold, let my heart tell thee, what it sought
for there, that I should be thus evil for nothing,
having no other provocation to ill, but ill itself. It
was foul, yet I loved it, I loved to undo myself, I loved
mine own fault, not that for which I committed the
fault, but even the very fault itself; a base soul,
shrinking back thus from my holdfast upon thee,
even to utter destruction ; not affecting anything
from the shame, but the shame itself.

V

No man sinneth, but provoked by some Cause

THERE is a comeliness now in all beautiful bodies, CHAP.
both in gold and silver, and all things ; and in the
touch of flesh, sympathy pleases much. Each other
sense hath his proper object answerably tempered.
Worldly honour hath also its grace, in commanding
and overcoming by its own power ; whence springs
also the thirst of revenge. But yet, might a man

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER II

CAP. oritur : et tamen in cuncta haec adipiscenda non est
egrediendum abs te, domine, neque deviandum a
lege tua. et vita, quam hic vivimus, habet inlece-
bram suam, propter quendam modum decoris sui, et
convenientiam cum his omnibus infimis pulchris.
amicitia quoque hominum caro nodo dulcis est
propter unitatem de multis animis. propter universa
haec atque huius modi peccatum admittitur, dum
inmoderata in ista inclinatione, cum extrema bona
sint, meliora et summa deseruntur, tu, domine deus
noster, et veritas tua et lex tua. habent enim et
haec ima delectationes, sed non sicut deus meus, qui
fecit omnia, quia in ipso delectatur iustus, et ipse
est deliciae rectorum corde.

Cum itaque de facinore quaeritur, qua causa
factum sit, credi non solet, nisi cum appetitus
adipiscendi alicuius illorum bonorum, quae infima
.diximus, esse potuisse adparuerit, aut metus amit-
tendi. pulchra sunt enim et decora, quamquam
prae bonis superioribus et beatificis abiecta et
iacentia. homicidium fecit. cur fecit ? adamavit
eius coniugem aut praedium aut voluit depraedari,
unde viveret, aut timuit ab illo tale aliquid amittere
aut laesus ulcisci se exarsit. num homicidium sine
causa faceret ipso homicidio delectatus ? quis credi-
derit ? nam et de quodam dictum est vaecordi et
nimis crudeli homine, quod gratuito potius malus

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

obtain all these, he were not to depart from thee, CHAP.
O Lord, nor to decline from thy Law. The life also
which here we live hath its proper enticement, and
that by reason of a certain proportion of comeliness
of its own, and a correspondency with all these
inferior beauties. That friendship also which is
amongst societies, we see endeared with a sweet
tie, even by reason of the union of many hearts.
Upon occasion of all these and the like, is sin
committed, while through an immoderate inclination
towards these, which are goods but of the lowest
alloy, better and higher are left out; even thou,
our Lord God, thy Truth and thy Law. For these
low things have their delights, but nothing like my
Lord God, who hath made these all: for in him is
the righteous man delighted, and he is the delicious-
ness of the upright in heart.

When enquiry is made after wickedness, upon
what cause it was committed, no other reason uses to
be believed but this, when there hath appeared
to be a possibility of the appetites obtaining some
one of those good things which we called of a
lower alloy, or else a fear of losing it. For even
these are beautiful and comely; although com-
pared with those higher goods, and happy-making
riches, they be but abject and contemptible. A
man hath murdered another. Why so? Either
he loved his wife or his estate; or he would rob
another to get maintainance for himself; or he stood
in fear to lose some such thing by him; or being
wronged, he was all on fire to be revenged of him.
Would any man commit a murder upon no provoca-
tion, but only upon a delight he takes in mur-
dering? Who will believe it? For as for that man
said to be so stupidly and savagely cruel, that he

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER II

CAP. atque crudelis erat ; praedicta est tamen causa : ne
v per otium, inquit, torpesceret manus aut animus.
quare id quoque ? cur ita ? ut scilicet illa exer-
citatione scelerum capta urbe honores, imperia,
divitias adsequeretur, et careret metu legum et diffi-
cilitate rerum, propter inopiam rei familiaris et con-
scientiam scelerum. nec ipse igitur Catilina amavit
facinora sua, sed utique aliud, cuius causa illa
faciebat.

VI

CAP. QUID ego miser in te amavi, o furtum meum, o facinus
VI illud meum nocturnum sexti decimi anni aetatis
meae ? non enim pulchrum eras, cum furtum esses.
aut vero aliquid es, ut loquar ad te ? pulchra erant
poma illa, quae furati sumus, quoniam creatura tua
erat, pulcherrime omnium, creator omnium, deus
bone, deus summum bonum et bonum verum meum ;
pulchra erant illa poma, sed non ipsa concupivit
anima mea miserabilis. erat mihi enim meliorum
copia, illa autem decerpsi, tantum ut furarer. nam
decerpta proieci epulatus inde solam iniquitatem,
qua laetabar fruens. nam et si quid illorum pomorum

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

was evil and cruel merely for cruelty's sake ; yet is CHAP.
there a cause assigned : Lest (says himself) my hand
or heart should grow unactive with idleness. And why
that? Why? Even in order that when he had once
made himself master of the city, through frequent
execution of mischievousness, he might mount up
unto honours, commands, and riches ; and set him-
self above the fear of the law, and all difficulty,
because of his desperate poverty, and the conscious-
ness of his own villanies. Therefore even Catiline
himself loved not his own villanies, but 'twas some-
thing else he loved, for whose sake he fell to commit
them.

V

Sallust,
Cat. 9

VI

*All those things which under the shew of Good
invite us unto sin, are in God alone, to
be found True and perfect*

WHAT then was it that wretched I so loved in thee, CHAP.
O thou Theft of mine, thou deed of darkness, which VI
I committed in the sixteenth year of my age ?
Lovely thou wert not, because thou wert Theft.
But art thou anything, that I may reason the case
with thee ? Those pears that we stole were fair to
see to, for they were thy creature, O thou most
Beautiful of all, thou Creator of all, thou good God,
thou Sovereign Good, and my true Good. Those
pears were fair indeed, but it was not those that my
wretched soul desired ; for I had store of better of
mine own, and I gathered those only that I might
steal. For having gathered them, I flung them
away, eating little of them but my own sin only,
which I was extremely pleased with the enjoying.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSONVM LIBER II

CAP. intravit in os meum, condimentum ibi facinus erat.

VI

et nunc, domine deus meus, quaero, quid me in furto delectaverit, et ecce species nulla est: non dico sicut in aequitate atque prudentia, sed neque sicut in mente hominis atque memoria et sensibus et vegetante vita, neque sicut speciosa sunt sidera et decora locis suis, et terra et mare plena fetibus, qui succedunt nascendo decadentibus; non saltem ut est quaedam defectiva species et umbratica vitiis fallentibus.

Nam et superbia celsitudinem imitatur, cum tu sis unus super omnia deus excelsus. et ambitio quid nisi honores quaerit et gloriam, cum tu sis p[re]e cunctis honorandus unus et gloriōsus in aeternum? et saevitia potestatum timeri vult: quis autem timendus nisi unus deus, cuius potestati eripi aut subtrahi quid, quando aut ubi aut quo vel a quo potest? et blanditiae lascivientium amari volunt: sed neque blandius est aliquid tua caritate, nec amatur quicquam salubrius quam illa p[re]e cunctis formosa et luminosa veritas tua. et curiositas affectare videtur studium scientiae, cum tu omnia summe noveris. ignorantia quoque ipsa atque stultitia simplicitatis et innocentiae nomine tegitur, quia te simplicius quicquam non reperitur. quid te autem innocentius, quandoquidem opera sua malis inimica sunt? et ignavia quasi quietem appetit: quae vero quies certa praeter dominum? luxuria satietatem atque abundantiam

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

For if any bit of those pears came within my mouth, CHAP.
the sweetest sauce it had was the sin of the eater. VI
And now, O Lord my God, I enquire what was it
in that thievery of mine, should so much delight
me ; and behold there appears no loveliness in it. I
do not mean such loveliness as there is seen in
justice and wisdom ; no, nor such as is in the
mind and memory ; or in the senses and lively soul
of man : nor yet such as the stars are glorious and
beautiful withal in their orbs ; or the earth or sea
replenished with their natural offsprings, which by
daily growing supply the room of the decayed. Nay,
not so much as that false colour or shadow of good,
that usually appears in deceiving vices.

For pride imitates high-spiritedness ; whereas thou
alone art the highest over all. Ambition, what
seeks it but honours and reputation ; whereas thou
art to be honoured above all things, and glorious for
evermore. The cruelty of great ones desires to be
feared ; but who is to be feared but God alone ? Out
of whose power, what can be wrested ? or when, or
where, or which way, or by whom ? The enticements
of amorous inveiglers desire to be loved ; but yet is
nothing more pleasurable than thy charity ; nor is
anything loved more wholesomely than that truth
of thine, more bright and beautiful than anything. Curiosity makes semblance to affect a desire of know-
ledge ; whereas 'tis thou only that supremely knowest
all things. Yea, ignorance and foolishness itself is
masked under the name of simplicity and innocency ;
even because nothing can be found more simple
than thyself ; and what is more innocent, seeing
it is their own works that hunt the wicked ? Yea,
sloth pretends a desire of quietness ; but what stable
rest is there beside the Lord ? Expensiveness affects

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER II

CAP. se cupit vocari : tu es autem plenitudo et indeficiens
^{VI} copia incorruptibilis suavitatis. effusio liberalitatis obtendit umbram : sed bonorum omnium largitor affluentissimus tu es. avaritia multa possidere vult : et tu possides omnia. invidentia de excellentia litigat : quid te excellentius ? ira vindictam quaerit : te iustius quis vindicat ? timor insolita et repentina exhortescit, rebus, quae amantur, adversantia, dum praecavet securitati : tibi enim quid insolitum ? quid repentinum ? aut quis a te separat quod diligis ? aut ubi nisi apud te firma securitas ? tristitia rebus amisis contabescit, quibus se oblectabat cupiditas, quia ita sibi nollet, sicut tibi auferri nihil potest.

Ita fornicatur anima, cuin avertitur abs te et quaerit extra te ea quae pura et liquida non invenit, nisi cum redit ad te. perverse te imitantur omnes, qui longe se a te faciunt et extollunt se adversum te. sed etiam sic te imitando indicant creatorem te esse omnis naturae et ideo non esse, quo a te omni modo recessatur. quid ergo in illo furto ego dilexi, et in quo dominum meum vel vitiose atque perverse imitatus sum ? an libuit facere contra legem saltem fallacia, quia potentatu non poteram, ut mancam libertatem captivus imitarer, faciendo inpune quod non liceret, tenebrosa omnipotentiae similitudine ? ecce est ille servus fugiens dominum suum et consecutus umbram.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFessions BOOK II

to be called plenty and abundance ; yet art thou the CHAP.
fulness and never failing plenty of most incorruptible VI
sweetness. Prodigality pretends a show of liberality :
but thou art the most flowing bestower of all good
things. Covetousness desires to possess much ; and
thou possessest all. Emulation contends for ex-
cellency ; but what so excellent as thou ? Anger
seeks revenge ; but who revenges more justly than
thou ? Fear startles at unusual chances, which scare
away the thing loved, while it is wary for its own
security ; but what can happen unusual or sudden
unto thee ? Or who can deprive thee of what thou
lovest ? Or where but with thee is there any settled
security ? Grief pines away itself at its losses, which
desire took delight to enjoy ; even because it would
not be deprived ; like as nothing can be lost to thee.

Just thus does the soul commit fornication, when
she turns from thee, seeking those things with-
out thee, which she can nowhere find pure and
untainted, till she returns again to thee. Thus all
awkwardly imitate thee, even they that get them-
selves far from thee, and who pride themselves
against thee : and yet by thus imitating thee, do
they declare thee to be the Creator of the whole
frame of nature, and consequently, that there is no
place whither they can at all retire from thee.
What therefore did I love in that theft of mine !
And wherein did I thus awkwardly and corruptly
imitate my lord ? Was it a pleasure to do contrary
to thy Law, if but in show, because by strong
hand I could not : that being a prisoner, I might
make show of a counterfeit liberty, by doing that
unpunished, which I ought not to do, under the
shadowy pretence of omnipotency ? Behold, here
is thy servant fleeing from his Lord, and gotten

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER II

CAP. o putredo, o monstrum vitae et mortis profunditas !
^{VI} potuitne libere quod non licebat, non ob aliud, nisi
quia non licebat ?

VII

CAP. QUID retribuam domino, quod recolit haec memoria
^{VII} mea et anima mea non metuit inde ? diligam te, domine, et gratias agam et confitear nomini tuo, quoniam tanta dimisisti mihi mala et nefaria opera mea. gratiae tuae deputo et misericordiae tuae, quod peccata mea tamquam glaciem solvisti. gratiae tuae deputo et quaecumque non feci mala : quid enim non facere potui, qui etiam gratuitum facinus amavi ? et omnia mihi dimissa esse fateor, et quae mea sponte feci mala et quae te duce non feci.

Quis est hominum, qui suam cogitans infirmitatem audet viribus suis tribuere castitatem atque innocentiam suam, ut minus amet te, quasi minus ei necessaria fuerit misericordia tua, qua donas peccata conversis ad te ? qui enim vocatus a te secutus est vocem tuam, et vitavit ea, quae me de me ipso recordantem et fatentem legit, non me derideat ab eo medico aegrum sanari, a quo sibi praestitum est, ut non aegrotaret, vel potius ut minus aegrotaret, et ideo

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

under a shadow. O rottenness, O monster of life, CHAP.
O depth of death ! Could anything please thee,^{VI}
that thou mightest not do lawfully ; and done too
upon no other reason, but because it was not lawful ?

VII

*He returns thanks to God for remitting these sins,
and for keeping him from many others*

WHAT reward shall I render unto the Lord, for that CHAP.
he so gently brings these things to my remem-^{VII}
brance, that my soul is not affrighted at it ? I will
love thee, O Lord, and thank thee, and I will confess
unto thy name ; because thou hast forgiven me this
crime, and these heinous deeds of mine : unto thy
grace and mercy do I ascribe, that thou hast dis-
solved my sins as it were ice : yea unto thy grace do
I ascribe whatsoever evils I have not done. For
what evil was I not apt enough to commit, who
loved the sin for the sin's sake ? Yea all I confess
to be forgiven me ; both what evils I committed
wilfully, and what by thy guidance I have not
committed.

What man is he, who upon consideration of his
own infirmity, dares so far to ascribe his chastity and
innocency to his own virtue, as that he thereupon
should love thee less ; as if thy mercy, by which thou
forgivest those that turn unto thee, had been less
necessary for him ? Whosoever being effectually
called by thee, hath obeyed thy voice, and declined
those transgressions which he here reads me remem-
bering and confessing of myself ; let him not laugh
at me, who am now cured by that same Physician
who ministered unto him such preservatives, that he
might not be sick at all, or but a little distempered

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER II

CAP. te tantudem, immo vero amplius diligat, quia per
^{VII} quem me videt tantis peccatorum meorum languoribus exui, per eum se videt tantis peccatorum languoribus non implicari.

VIII

CAP. **QUEM** fructum habui miser aliquando in his, quae
^{VIII} nunc recolens erubesco, maxime in illo furto, in quo ipsum furtum amavi, nihil aliud, cum et ipsum esset nihil et eo ipso ego miserior? et tamen solus id non fecisset—sic recordor animum tunc meum—solus omnino id non fecisset. ergo amavi ibi etiam consortium eorum, cum quibus id feci. non ergo nihil aliud quam furtum amavi; immo vero nihil aliud, quia et illud nihil est. quid est re vera? quis est, qui doceat me, nisi qui inluminat cor meum et discernit umbras eius? quid est, quod mihi venit in mentem quaerere et discutere et considerare, quia si tunc amarem poma illa, quae furatus sum, et eis frui cuperem, possem etiam solus, si satis esset, committere illam iniquitatem, qua pervenirem ad voluptatem meam, nec confricatione conciorum animorum accenderem pruritum cupiditatis meae? sed

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

rather: but let him take occasion thereupon to love thee so much, yea, so much the more; since by that Physician he hath observed me to have been recovered out of such deep consumptions of sinfulness, by the same hand he perceives himself not to have been incumbered by the like.

VIII

What he loved in that his theft

WHAT fruit had I (wretched man) heretofore in these things, of the remembrance whereof I am now ashamed? In that piece of thievery especially, wherein I loved nothing but the very theft itself: whereas that was nothing itself, but I much the more miserable by it? Yet by myself alone I would not have committed it: so I now remember what my disposition then was: alone I would never have done it. Belike therefore it was the company that I loved, who were with me at it. Then it was not that I loved nothing but the theft itself; nay verily, nothing else, because that circumstance of the company, was indeed a very nothing. What is this, verily? Who is there to teach me, but even he that enlighteneth my heart and discovereth the darkness of it? What is that which came into my head to inquire into, and to discuss and consider better of? For had I then loved those pears which I stole, and wanted to eat them, I might have done it by myself, had it been enough to commit the thievery, by which I might attain my pleasure; nor needed I have provoked that itch of mine own desires, by the rubbing of those guilty consciences. But because

.S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER II

CAP. quoniam in illis pomis voluptas mihi non erat, ea
VIII erat in ipso facinore, quam faciebat consortium simul
peccantium.

IX

CAP. QUID erat ille affectus animi? certe enim plane
IX turpis erat nimis, et vae mihi erat, qui habe-
bam illum. sed tamen quid erat? delicta quis in-
tellegit? risus erat quasi titillato corde, quod falle-
bam eos, qui haec a nobis fieri non putabant et
vehementer nolebant. cur ergo eo me delectabat,
quo id non faciebam solus? an quia etiam nemo
facile solus ridet? (nemo quidem facile, sed tamen
etiam solos et singulos homines, cum alius nemo
praesens est, vincit risus aliquando, si aliquid nimie
ridiculum vel sensibus occurrit vel animo. at ego
illud solus non facerem, non facerem omnino solus.)

Ecce est coram te, deus meus, viva recordatio
anima meae. solus non facerem furtum illud, in quo
me non libebat id quod furabar, sed quia furabar:
quod me solum facere prorsus non liberet, nec
facerem. o nimis inimica amicitia, seductio mentis
investigabilis, ex ludo et ioco nocendi aviditas et
alieni damni appetitus, nulla lucri mei, nulla ulcis-
cendi libidine, sed cum dicitur: "eamus, faciamus,"
et pudet non esse impudentem.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

the pleasure I took consisted not in those pears, it CHAP.
must needs therefore be in the very prank itself, ^{VIII}
which the company of us offenders jointly committed
together.

IX

Bad Company is infectious

WHAT kind of disposition was that then? For it CHAP.
was too bad plainly: and woe is me that I had it. ^{IX}
But yet what was it? Oh, who can understand his ^{Ps. xix. 12}
errors? We laughed heartily, till we tickled again,
that we could beguile the owners, who little thought
what we were a doing, and would never have endured
it. Yet, again, why took I delight even in this, that
I did it not alone? Is it for that no man doth so
readily laugh alone? Ordinarily indeed nobody
does; but yet a fit of laughter sometimes comes upon
men by themselves and singly, when nobody else is
with them, if anything worthy to be laughed at
comes either in their eye or fancy. Yet I for my
part would not have done this alone; I should never
have done it alone verily.

See here, my God, the lively remembrance of my
soul set before thee. Alone, I would never have
committed that theft, wherein what I stole did not so
much content me, as because I stole it; which would
never have pleased me so well to have done alone,
nor would I ever have done it. O friendship too
unfriendly! Thou inscrutable inveigler of the soul,
thou greediness to do mischief, all out of a mirth and
wantonness, thou thirst to do wrong to others, though
upon no pleasure of gain or revenge unto me: but
even because when one cries: Let us go, let us do
this or that, then 'tis a shame not to be shameless.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER II

X

CAP. QUIS exaperit istam tortuosissimam et implicatissimam nodositatem? foeda est; nolo in eam intendere, nolo eam videre. te volo, iustitia et innocentia, pulchra et decora honestis luminibus, et insatiabili satietate. quies est apud te valde et vita imperturbabilis. qui intrat in te, intrat in gaudium domini sui et non timebit et habebit se optime in optimo. defluxi abs te ego et erravi, deus meus, nimis devius ab stabilitate tua in adulescentia et factus sum mihi regio egestatis.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK II

X

Whatsoever is good, is in God

Who can pick out that crooked and intricate CHAP.
knottiness? 'Tis filthy, I will never give my mind X
to it, I will not so much as look towards it. But
thee I desire, O Righteousness and Innocency, most
beautiful and comely to all chaste eyes; yea, with
an insatiable satiety I desire to behold thee. With
thee is rest assured, and a life never to be dis-
turbed. He that enters into thee, enters into his Matt. xxv.

master's joy: and he shall have no cause of 21

fear, and shall be well in him who is
the best. I slid away from thee, and

I went astray, O my God, yea, too
much astray, from thee my

Stay, in these days of my
youth, and I became
to myself a land
of want.

BOOK III

1

G

LIBER TERTIVS

I

CAP. VENI ^I Karthaginem, et circumstrepebat me undique sartago flagitiosorum amorum. nondum amabam, et amare amabam, et secretiore indigentia oderam me minus indigentem. quaerebam quid amarem, amans amare, et oderam securitatem et viam sine muscipulis, quoniam fames mihi erat intus ab interiore cibo, te ipso, deus meus, et ea fame non esuriebam, sed eram sine desiderio alimentorum incorruptibilem, non quia plenus eis eram, sed quo inanior, fastidiosior. et ideo non bene valebat anima mea, et ulcerosa proiciebat se foras, miserabiliter scalpi avida contactu sensibilium. sed si non habarent animam, non utique amarentur. amare et amari dulce mihi erat, magis si et amantis corpore fruerer.

Venam igitur amicitiae coquinabam sordibus concupiscentiae, candoremque eius obnubilabam de tartaro libidinis, et tamen foedus atque inhonestus, elegans et urbanus esse gestiebam abundantivaniate. rui etiam in amore, quo cupiebam capi.

THE THIRD BOOK

I

He is caught with Love, which he hunted after

To Carthage I came, where a whole frying-pan full CHAP.
abominable loves crackled round about me, and on ¹ every side. I was not in love as yet, yet I loved to be in love, and with a more secret kind of want, I hated myself having little want. I sought about for something to love, loving still to be in love : security I hated, and that way too that had no snares in it : and all because I had a famine within me, even of that inward food (thyself, O God) though that famine made me not hungry. For I continued without all appetite towards incorruptible nourishments, not because I was already full, but the more empty, the more queasy stomached. For this cause my soul was not very well, but miserably breaking out into botches, had an extreme itch to be scratched by the touch of these sensible things, which yet if they had not a life, would not be loved at all. It was very pleasurable to me, both to love, and to be loved ; but much more, when I obtained to enjoy the person whom I loved.

I defiled therefore the spring of friendship with the filth of uncleanness, and I besullied the purity of it with the hell of lustfulness. But thus filthy and dishonest as I was, with a superlative kind of vanity I took a pride to pass for a spruce and a gentle companion. I forced myself also into love,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER III

CAP. deus meus, misericordia mea, quanto felle mihi
^I suavitatem illam et quam bonus aspersisti, quia et
amatus sum, et perveni ad vinculum fruendi et con-
ligabar laetus aerumnosis nexibus, ut caederer virgis
ferreis ardentibus zeli et suspicionum et timorum et
irarum atque rixarum.

II

CAP. RAPIEBANT me spectacula theatrica, plena imagin-
^{II} ibus miseriarum mearum et fomitibus ignis mei.
quid est, quod ibi homo vult dolere luctuosa et tra-
gica, quae tamen pati ipse nolle? et tamen pati
vult ex eis dolorem spectator, et dolor ipse est
voluptas eius. quid est nisi miserabilis insanias?
nam eo magis eis movetur quisque, quo minus a
talibus affectibus sanus est, quamquam, cum ipse
patitur, miseria, cum aliis compatitur, misericordia
dici solet. sed qualis tandem misericordia in rebus
fictis et scenicis? non enim ad subveniendum pro-
vocatur auditor, sed tantum ad dolendum invitatur
et auctori earum imaginum amplius favet, cum
100

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

with which I affected to be ensnared. My God, my CHAP.
Mercy, with how much sourness didst thou of thy
goodness to me, besour that sweetness? For obtain-
ing once to be beloved again, and secretly arriving to
the bond of enjoying; I was with much joy bound
with sorrow-bringing embracements, even that I
might be scourged with the iron burning rods of
jealousy, and suspicions, and fears, and angers, and
brawls.

II

Of Stage Plays

STAGE-PLAYS also at that time drew me away; sights CHAP.
full of the images of mine own miseries, and the fuel to
mine own fire. What is the reason now that a spectator
desires to be made sad when he beholds doleful and
tragical passages, which himself could not endure to
suffer? Yet for all that he desires to feel a kind
of passionateness, yea, and his passion becomes his
pleasure too. What is all this but a miserable mad-
ness? For every man is more affected with these
actions, the less free he is from such affections.
Howsoever, when a man suffers aught in his own
person, it uses to be styled misery: but when he
hath a fellow feeling of another's, then 'tis mercy.
But what compassion is to be shown at those feigned
and scenical passions? For the auditors here are not
provoked to help the sufferer, but invited only to be
sorry for him: and they so much the more love the
author of these fictions, by how much the more he can

S. AVG^VSTINI CONFESSI^VN LIBER III

CAP. amplius dolet. et si calamitates illae hominum vel
II antiquae vel falsae sic agantur, ut qui spectat non
doleat; abscedit inde fastidiens et reprehendens; si
autem dolet, manet intentus et gaudens. lacrimae
ergo amantur et dolores. certe omnis homo gaudere
vult. an cum miserum esse neminem libeat, libet
tamen esse misericordem, quod quia non sine dolore
est, hac una causa amantur dolores? et hoc de illa
vena amicitiae est.

Sed quo vadit? quo fluit? ut quid decurrit in
torrentem picis bullientis, aestus inmanes taetrarum
libidinum, in quos ipsa mutatur, et vertitur per
nutum proprium de caelesti serenitate detorta atque
deiecta? repudietur ergo misericordia? nequaquam.
ergo amentur dolores aliquando. sed cave inmundiciam,
anima mea, sub tute deo meo, deo patrum
nostrorum et laudabili et superelato in omnia saecula,
cave inmundiciam. neque enim nunc non misereor,
sed tunc in theatris congaudebam amantibus, cum
sese fruebantur per flagitia, quamvis haec imaginarie
gererent in ludo spectaculi, cum autem sese amitte-
bant, quasi misericors contristabar; et utrumque de-
lectabat tamen. nunc vero magis miseror gaudentem
in flagitio quam velut dura perpessum detimento

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

move passion in them : and if the calamities of the CHAP.
person represented (either fallen out long since or ^{II}
utterly feigned) be so lamely set out, that no passion
be moved in the spectator, he goes away surfeited
and reporting scurvily of it. But if he be moved to
passion, he sits it out very attentively, and even
weeps for joy again. Are tears therefore loved, and
passions? Verily each man desires joyfulness. Or,
whereas no man is willing to be miserable, is he
notwithstanding pleased to be merciful? which
because it cannot be without passion, for this reason
alone come passions to be loved. All this springs
from that vein of friendship.

But whither goes that vein? Which way flows
it? Wherefore runs it into that torrent of boiling
pitch, those vast overflowings of vile lustfulness, into
the nature of which it is of its own inclination
changed, being quite altered from its heavenly clear-
ness, and depraved? Shall compassion therefore be
banished? By no means. Let us frame ourselves
rather to love passion sometimes. But take heed of
uncleanness, O my soul, under the eye of God my
Protector, (that God of our fathers, who is to be
praised, and to be exalted above all, for ever and
ever) beware of uncleanness. Nor am I now past all
compassion; but when in those days I in the theatres
sympathised together with the lovers, when they
wickedly enjoyed one another, although their parts
were merely feigned in the action of the comedy:
and when they lost one another, I was sad with
them, as if really pitying them: being in both
equally delighted notwithstanding. But I much
more pity him now that still rejoiceth in his own
wickedness, than I do him that is, as it were, hardly
pinched with the foregoing of some pernicious

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. perniciosa voluntatis et amissione miserae felicitatis.

^{II} haec certe verior misericordia, sed non in ea delectat dolor. nam etsi adprobatur officio caritatis qui dolet miserum, mallet tamen utique non esse quod doleret, qui germanitus misericors est. si enim est malevola benevolentia, quod fieri non potest, potest et ille, qui veraciter sinceriterque miseretur, cupere esse miseros, ut misereatur. nonnullus itaque dolor adprobandus, nullus amandus est. hoc enim tu, domine deus, qui animas amas, longe alteque purius quam nos, et incorruptibilius misereris, quod nullo dolore sauciari. et ad haec quis idoneus ?

At ego tunc miser dolere amabam, et quaerebam, ut esset quod dolorum, quando mihi in aerumna aliena et falsa et saltatoria, ea magis placebat actio histrionis meque alliciebat vehementius, qua mihi lacrimae executiebantur. quid autem mirum, cum infelix pecus aberrans a grege tuo et inpatiens custodiae tuae, turpi scabie foedarer? et inde erant dolorum amores, non quibus altius penetrarer—non enim amabam talia perpeti, qualia spectare—sed quibus auditis et fictis tamquam in superficie raderer: quos tamen quasi unguis scalpentium fervidus tumor et tabes et sanies horrida consequebatur. talis vita mea numquid vita erat, deus meus?

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

pleasure, and the loss of some miserable felicity. CHAP.
This certainly is the truer mercy, but the grief ^{II} gives not so much delight. For though he that condoles with the miserable be commended for his office of charity ; yet had he, that is most brotherly compassionate, much rather there were no occasion given him to condole. For if there be a good-will that is ill-willed, (which can never be), then only may he, who is truly and sincerely compassionate, wish there might still be some men miserable, that he might still be compassionate. Some kind of sorrow may therefore be allowed, but no kind loved. And thus dost thou, O Lord God, who lovest our own souls much more purely than ourselves can do, and art more incorruptibly merciful, because thou canst be wounded with no sorrowfulness. And who is fit for these things ? }

But wretched I, loved at that time to be made sorry, and sought out matter to be sorry at, whenas in another man's misery, though feigned, and merely personated, that action of the player best pleased me, yea, and drew me the more vehemently, which extracted tears out of mine eyes. What marvel was it now, when being an unhappy sheep, straying from thy flock, and not contented with thy keeping, I became infected with that filthy scab ? And hence came my loving of those sorrows, not such, though, as should gall me too deep : (nor was I so far gone, as to love to suffer, what I loved to look upon :) but such yet as upon hearing these fictions should lightly scratch me ; upon which (as after scratching nails) followed an impostumation, and a putrefied matter. Such a life I then led ; but was that a life, O my God ?

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

III

CAP. ^{III} Et circumvolabat super me fidelis a longe misericordia tua. in quantas iniquitates distabui, et sacrilega curiositate secutus sum, ut deserentem te deduceret me ad ima infida et circumventoria obsequia daemoniorum, quibus immolabam facta mea mala, et in omnibus flagellabas me! ausus sum etiam in celebritate sollemnitatum tuarum, intra parietes ecclesiae tuae concupiscere, et agere negotium procurandi fructus mortis: unde me verberasti gravibus poenis, sed nil ad culpam meam, o tu praegrandis misericordia mea, deus meus, refugium meum a terribilibus nocentibus, in quibus vagatus sum praefidenti collo ad longe recedendum a te, amans vias meas et non tuas, amans fugitivam libertatem.

Habebant et illa studia, quae honesta vocabantur, ductum suum intuentem fora litigiosa, ut excellerem in eis, hoc laudabilior, quo fraudulentior. tanta est caecitas hominum de caecitate etiam gloriantium. et maior iam eram in schola rhetoris et gaudebam superbe et tumebam typho, quamquam longe sedatior, domine, tu scis, et remotus omnino ab eversionibus, quas faciebant eversores—hoc enim nomen saevum et diabolicum velut insigne urbanitatis est—inter

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

III

His conversation with young Lawyers

AND thy faithful mercy hovered over me afar off ! CHAP.
Upon what gross iniquities consumed I myself,^{III}
pursuing a sacrilegious curiosity, that having once
forsaken thee, it might bring me as low as the very
bottom of infidelity, to that beguiling service of devils,
unto whom I sacrificed mine own vile actions ; for all
which thou didst chastise me ? I was so bold one
day, as thy solemnities were a celebrating, even
within the walls of thy Church, to desire and to
execute a business, enough to purchase me the very
fruits of death. For which thou scourgedst me with
very grievous punishments, though nothing in respect
of my fault, O thou my infinite Mercy, my God, my
Refuge against those terrible dangers, in which I
wandered with a stiff neck, to withdraw myself the
further off from thee, loving mine own ways, and not
thine : affecting a freedom, though that of a run-
away.

Those studies of mine also which were accounted commendable, were intended towards the Law, with an ambition to prove excellent at them ; so much the famouser as I proved the craftier. Such is men's blindness, that they even brag of their own owl-eyedness. I became by this time to be a prime fellow in the Rhetoric Schools ; and I joyed in it very pertly, and I swelled again with arrogance, though more temperate I was, Lord thou knowest, yea, and far enough off from those humours of the Overturners (for this cruel and diabolical name was given out to be the very badge of gallantry) whom

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. quos vivebam pudore inpudenti, quia talis non eram :
^{III} et cum eis eram et amicitiis eorum delectabar aliquando, a quorum semper factis abhorrebam, hoc est ab eversionibus, quibus proterve insectabantur ignorantum verecundiam, quam proturbarent gratis inludendo atque inde pascendo malevolas laetias suas. nihil est illo actu similius actibus daemoniorum. quid itaque verius quam eversores vocarentur, eversi plane prius ipsi atque perversi, deridentibus eos et seducentibus fallacibus occulte spiritibus in eo ipso, quo alios inridere amant et fallere ?

IV

CAP. INTER hos ego inbecilla tunc aetate discebam libros eloquentiae, in qua eminere cupiebam, fine damnabili et ventoso per gaudia vanitatis humanae ; et usitato iam discendi ordine perveneram in librum cuiusdam Ciceronis, cuius linguam fere omnes mirantur, pectus non ita. sed liber ille ipsius exhortationem continet ad philosophiam et vocatur Hortensius. ille vero liber mutavit affectum meum, et ad te ipsum, domine,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

notwithstanding I kept company withal, even with CHAP.
an impudent bashfulness, because I had not so rightly
gotten the garb of it as they. With these I conversed,
and was oftentimes delighted with their acquaintance,
whose doings I did ever abhor, that is their humours
of Overturning: in which their custom was, mala-
pertly enough, to come over the demure and bashful
behaviour of the freshmen, whom they thoroughly
vexed with abusing and jeering at, upon no occasion;
and all to maintain their own humour of bitter
jesting: nothing in the world can be liker the very
actions of the devil himself, than this behaviour
of theirs. What name then could they more truly
be called by, than Overturners? Being themselves
overturned and altogether perverted first, and that
by those seducing and deceiving spirits, secretly
deriding them, even while they themselves take so
much delight to jeer at, and to put tricks upon
others.

IV

How Tully's Hortensius provoked him to study Philosophy

AMONGST these mad companions in that tender CHAP.
age of mine learned I the books of eloquence,
wherein my ambition was to be eminent, all out of
a damnable and vain-glorious end, puffed up with a
delight of human glory. By the ordinary course of
study I fell upon a certain book of one Cicero, whose
tongue almost every man admires, though not so his
heart. This book of his contains an exhortation to
Philosophy, and 'tis called Hortensius. Now this
book quite altered my affection, turned my prayers

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. mutavit preces meas, et vota ac desideria mea fecit alia.

IV

viluit mihi repente omnis vana spes, et immortalitatem sapientiae concupiscebam aestu cordis incredibili, et surgere coeperam, ut ad te redirem. non enim ad acuendam linguam, quod videbar emere maternis mercedibus, cum agerem annum aetatis undevicen-simum, iam defuncto patre ante biennium ; non ergo ad acuendam linguam referebam illum librum, neque mihi locutionem, sed quod loquebatur persuaserat.

Quomodo ardebam, deus meus, quomodo ardebam revolare a terrenis ad te, et nesciebam quid ageres mecum ! apud te est enim sapientia. amor autem sapientiae nomen graecum habet philosophiam, quo me accendebant illae litterae. sunt qui seducant per philosophiam, magno et blando et honesto nomine colorantes et fucantes errores suos; et prope omnes, qui ex illis et supra temporibus tales erant, notantur in eo libro et demonstrantur, et manifestatur ibi salutifera illa admonitio spiritus tui, per servum tuum bonum et pium : “ videte, ne quis vos decipiat per philosophiam et inanem seductionem secundum traditionem hominum, secundum elementa huius mundi et non secundum Christum, quia in ipso inhabitat omnis plenitudo divinitatis corporaliter.” et ego illo tempore, scis tu, lumen cordis mei, quoniam necdum mihi haec apostolica nota erant, hoc tamen solo delectabar in illa exhortatione, quod non illam aut illam sectam, sed

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

to thyself, O Lord, and made me have clean other purposes and desires. All my vain hopes I thenceforth slighted ; and with an incredible heat of spirit I thirsted after the immortality of wisdom, and began now to rouse up myself, that I might turn again to theeward. For I made not use of that book to file my tongue with, which I seemed to buy with that exhibition which my mother allowed me, in that nineteenth year of my age, my father being dead two years before. I made not use of that book, I say, to sharpen my tongue withal, nor had it persuaded me to affect the fine language in it, but the matter of it.

How did I burn then, my God, how did I burn to fly from earthly delights towards thee, and yet I knew not what thou meanest to do with me ! For with thee is wisdom. That love of wisdom is in Greek called Philosophy, with which that book inflamed me. Some there be that seduce others through Philosophy, under a great, a fair promising, and an honest name, colouring over and palliating their own errors : and almost all those who in the same and former ages had been of that stamp, are in that book censured and set forth : there also is that most wholesome advice of thy Spirit, given by thy good and devout servant, made plain : Beware Col. ii. 8 lest any man spoil you through Philosophy and vain deceit after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ. For in him dwelleth all the Fulness of the Godhead bodily. For my part, thou Light of my heart knowest, that the Apostolical Scriptures were scarce known to me at that time : but this was it that so delighted me in that exhortation, that it did not engage me to this or that sect, but left me free to love, and seek, and

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. ipsam quaecumque esset sapientiam ut diligerem et
^{IV} quaererem et adsequerer et tenerem atque amplexarer
fortiter, excitabar sermone illo et accendebar et
ardebam, et hoc solum me in tanta flagrantia
refrangebat, quod nomen Christi non erat ibi,
quoniam hoc nomen secundum misericordiam tuam,
domine, hoc nonen salvatoris mei, fili tui, in ipso
adhuc lacte matris tenerum cor meum pie biberat et
alte retinebat, et quidquid sine hoc nomine fuisse
quamvis litteratum et expolitum et veridicum, non
me totum rapiebat.

V

CAP. ITAQUE institui animum intendere in scripturas
^V sanctas, et videre, quales essent. et ecce video rem
non compertam superbis neque nudatam pueris, sed
incessu humilem, successu excelsam, et velatam
mysteriis, et non eram ego talis, ut intrare in eam
possem, aut inclinare cervicem ad eius gressus. non
enim sicut modo loquor, ita sensi, cum attendi ad
illam scripturam, sed visa est mihi indigna, quam
Tullianae dignitati compararem. tumor enim meus
refugiebat modum eius, et acies mea non penetrabat
interiora eius. verum tamen illa erat, quae cresceret

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

obtain, and hold, and embrace Wisdom itself, what- CHAP.
ever it was. Perchance it was that book I was ^{IV}
stirred up, and enkindled, and inflamed by: this
thing only in such a heat of zeal took me off, that
the name of Christ was not in it. For this Name,
according to thy mercy, O Lord, this Name of my
Saviour thy Son, had my tender heart even together
with my mother's milk devoutly drunken in, and
charily treasured up: so that what book soever was
without that Name, though never so learned, politely
and truly penned, did not altogether take my appro-
bation.

V

*He sets lightly by the Holy Scriptures because of
the simplicity of the style*

I RESOLVED thereupon to bend my studies towards CHAP.
the Holy Scriptures, that I might see what they ^V
were. But behold, I espy something in them not
revealed to the proud, not discovered unto children,
humble in style, sublime in operation, and wholly
veiled over in mysteries; and I was not so fitted at
that time, as to pierce into the sense, or stoop my
neck to its coming. For when I attentively read
these Scriptures, I thought not then so of them, as I
now speak; but they seemed to me far unworthy to
be compared to the stateliness of the Ciceronian
eloquence. For my swelling pride soared above the
temper of their style, nor was my sharp wit able to
pierce into their sense. And yet such are thy

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. cum parvulis, sed ego deditabam esse parvulus et
turgidus fastu mihi grandis videbar.

VI

CAP. ITAQUE incidi in homines superbe delirantes, carnales nimis et loquaces, in quorum ore laquei diaconi, et viscum confectum commixtione syllabarum nominis tui et domini Iesu Christi et paracleti consolatoris nostri spiritus sancti. haec nomina non recedebant de ore eorum, sed tenus sono et strepitu linguae; ceterum cor inane veri. et dicebant: "veritas et veritas," et multum eam dicebant mihi, et nusquam erat in eis, sed falsa loquebantur non de te tantum, qui vere veritas es, sed etiam de istis elementis mundi, creatura tua, de quibus etiam vera dicentes philosophos transgredi debui prae amore tuo, mi pater summe bone, pulchritudo pulchrorum omnium. o veritas, veritas, quam intime etiam tum medullae animi mei suspirabant tibi, cum te illi sonarent mihi frequenter et multipliciter, voce sola, et libris multis et ingentibus! et illa erant fercula, in quibus mihi esurienti te inferebatur sol et luna, pulchra opera tua, sed tamen opera tua, non tu, nec

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

Scriptures as grew up together with thy little ones. CHAP.
But I much disdained to be held a little one; and V
big swollen with pride, I took myself to be some
great man.

VI

How he was ensnared by the Manichees .

AND even then I fell upon a sect of men^{*} proudly CHAP.
doting, too carnal and prating, in whose mouth were VI
the very snares of the Devil, and a very bird-lime composed by the mixture of the syllables of thy Name, and of our Lord Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Ghost the Comforter. All these names were never out of their mouth ; so far forth as the sound only and the noise of the tongue; but their heart was void of true meaning. Yet they cried out Truth, and Truth, and often sounded the word to me, yet was the Truth itself nowhere to be found amongst them. But they spake falsehood, not of thee only (who truly art the Truth itself) but also of the elements of this world, thy creatures. Concerning which it had been my duty, O my supreme and good Father, thou Beauty of all things that are beautiful, to have passed by all the Philosophers though they spake most truly. O Truth, Truth, how inwardly did the very marrow of my soul pant after thee, whenas they often and divers ways, though but barely, sounded thy name to me, with their voice only, and in many books and huge volumes? And these were the dishes wherein to me, hunger-starven for thee, they served up the sun and moon. Beautiful works indeed of thine, but thy creatures notwithstanding, not thyself, no, nor thy first creatures

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III
CAP. ipsa prima. priora enim spiritalia opera tua quam
VI ista corporea quamvis lucida et caelestia.

At ego nec priora illa, sed te ipsam, veritas, in qua non est conmutatio nec momenti obumbratio, esuriebam et sitiebam. et apponebantur adhuc mihi in illis ferculis phantasmata splendida, quibus iam melius erat amare istum solem, saltem istis oculis verum, quam illa falsa animo decepto per oculos. et tamen, quia te putabam, manducabam, non avide quidem, quia nec sapiebas in ore meo sicuti es—neque enim tu eras illa figmenta inania—nec nutriebar eis, sed exhaudiebar magis. cibus in somnis simillimus est cibis vigilantium, quo tamen dormientes non aluntur; dormiunt enim. at illa nec similia erant ullo modo tibi, sicut nunc mihi locuta es, quia illa erant corporalia phantasmata, falsa corpora, quibus certiora sunt vera corpora ista, quae videmus visu carneo, sive caelestia sive terrestria: cum pecudibus et volatilibus videmus, et certiora sunt, quam cum imaginamur ea. et rursus certius imaginamur ea quam ex eis suspicamur alia grandiora et infinita, quae omnino nulla sunt. qualibus ego tunc pascebar inanibus et non pascebar.

At tu, amor meus, in quem deficio, ut fortis sim, nec ista corpora es, quae videmus quamquam in caelo, nec ea, quae non videmus ibi, quia tu ista

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

neither. For thy spiritual works are before these CHAP.
corporeal works, celestial though they be and VI
shining.

But I hungered and thirsted not after those first works of thine, but after thee, even thee, O Truth, with whom there is no variableness, neither shadow James i. 17 of turning. Yet they still set before me in those dishes glorious phantasies, than which much better it were to love this sun, which is true to our sight at least, than those phantasies which by our eyes serve to deceive our mind. Yet because I thought them to be thee, I fell to and fed; not greedily though, for thou wert not savoury in my mouth, nor like thyself; for thou wast not those empty fictions: nor was I soundly nourished by them, but drawn dry rather. That food we dream of shows very like the food which we eat awake; yet are not those asleep nourished by it, for they are asleep. But those phantasies were not any way like to thee, as thou hast since spoken to me; for that those were corporeal phantasies only, false bodies, than which these true bodies both celestial and terrestrial which with our fleshly sight we behold, are far more certain. These things the very beasts and birds discern as well as we, and they are much more certain than any we can fancy of ourselves. And again, we do with more certainty conceive the images of these, than by them entertain the least suspicion of any vaster or infinite bodies which have at all no being. Such empty husks as these was I fed with, yet not a whit nourished.

But thou, my Love, after whom I pine, that I may gather the more strength, art not these bodies which we see, though from heaven appearing: nor art thou those things which we see not there: for all those

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. condidisti nec in summis tuis conditionibus habes.

VI

quanto ergo longe es a phantasmatis illis meis, phantasmatis corporum, quae omnino non sunt ! quibus certiores sunt phantasiae corporum eorum, quae sunt, et eis certiora corpora, quae tamen non es. sed nec anima es, quae vita est corporum—ideo melior vita corporum certiorque quam corpora—sed tu vita es animarum, vita vitarum, vivens te ipsa, et non mutaris, vita animae meae.

Vbi ergo mihi tunc eras et quam longe ? et longe peregrinabar abs te, exclusus et a siliquis porcorum, quos de siliquis pascebam. quanto enim meliores grammaticorum et poetarum fabellae quam illa decipula ! nam versus et carmen et Medea volans utiliores certe, quam quinque elementa, varie fucata propter quinque antra tenebrarum, quae omnino nulla sunt et occidunt credentem. nam versum et carmen etiam ad vera pulmenta transfero ; volantem autem Medeam etsi cantabam, non asserebam, etsi cantari audiebam, non credebam : illa autem credidi. vae, vae ! quibus gradibus deductus in profunda inferi, quippe laborans et aestuans inopia veri, cum te, deus meus—tibi confiteor, qui me miseratus es et nondum confitentem—cum te non secundum intellectum mentis, quo modo praestare voluisti beluis, sed secundum sensum carnis quaererem. tu autem

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

hast thou created; nor yet dost thou count them CHAP.
amongst the chiefest pieces of thy workmanship. How VI
far then art thou from those fond phantasies of mine,
the phantasies of those bodies which have at all no
being! Than which the images of those bodies, which
have real existence, are far more certain; and the
bodies themselves are more certain than their own
images: yet these bodies thou art not. No, nor yet
art thou the soul, which is the life of those bodies;
though better and more certain be the life of those
bodies, than the bodies themselves are. But thou art
the life of souls, the life of lives, yea the very living
life itself; nor art thou altered, O life of my soul.

Where therefore wert thou then, and how far
from me? Very far verily had I straggled from thee,
being even barred from the husks of those swine,
whom with husks I was set to feed. How much better
then are those fables of the poets and grammarians,
than these fool-traps! For their verses, and poems,
and Medea flying, are more profitable surely, than
these men's Five Elements, oddly devised to answer
the Five Dens of Darkness, which have at all no
being, and which slay the believer. For verses and
poems I can turn into true nourishment. But Medea
flying, although I chanted sometimes, yet I maintained
not the truth of; and though I heard it sung, I
believed it not: but these phantasies I thoroughly
believed. Alas, alas! by what steps was I brought to
the very bottom of hell; whenas toiling and tur-
moiling myself through want of truth, I sought
after thee my God, (to thee I now confess it, who
hadst mercy on me when I had not yet confessed)
not according to the understanding of the mind,
wherein thou madest me to excel the beasts, but
according to the sense of the flesh? But thou at

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER III

CAP. eras interior intimo meo et superior summo meo.
^{VI} offendit illam mulierem audacem, inopem prudentiae, aenigma Salomonis, sedentem super sellam in foribus et dicentem: panes occultos libenter edite et aquam dulcem furtivam bibite. quae me seduxit, quia invenit foris habitantem in oculo carnis meae, et talia ruminantem apud me, qualia per illum vorassem.

VII

CAP. NESCIEBAM enim aliud, vere quod est, et quasi ^{VII} acutule movebar, ut suffragarer stultis deceptoribus, cum a me quaereretur, unde malum est? et utrum forma corporea deus finiretur, et haberet capillos et unguies, et utrum iusti existimandi essent qui habarent uxores multas simul, et occiderent homines, et sacrificarent de animalibus. quibus rerum ignarus perturbabar, et recedens a veritate ire in eam mihi videbar, quia non noveram malum non esse nisi privationem boni usque ad quod omnino non est, quod unde viderem, cuius videre usque ad corpus erat oculis, et animo usque ad phantasma? non noveram deum esse spiritum, non cui membra essent per longum et latum nec cui esse moles esset, quia moles in parte minor est quam in toto suo, et
120

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

the same time wert more inward than my most CHAP.
inward part; and superior then, unto my supremest. VI

I chanced upon that bold woman, who knoweth nothing, that subtily in Solomon, sitting at the door of her house, and saying: Eat ye bread of seccrecies willingly, and drink ye stolen waters which are sweet. She seduced me, because she found my soul without-doors, dwelling in the eye of my flesh, and chewing the cud by myself, upon such baits as through her enticements I had devoured.

Compare
Prov. vii. 10
with Prov.
ix. 13-17

VII

The absurd doctrine of the Manichees

FOR I knew not that other, which truly is, and I was, CHAP.
as it were, in some subtle way persuaded to give my VII
consent to those foolish deceivers when they put their questions to me: Whence comes evil? and whether God were made up in a bodily shape, and had hair and nails? and whether those were to be esteemed righteous men, who had many wives at once, and did kill men, and offered sacrifices of living creatures? [At which things ignorant I was much troubled; and while I went quite from the truth, I seemed to myself to be making towards it: because I yet knew not how that evil was nothing else but a privation of good, next indeed to that which has no being.] Which how should I come to see, whose sight pierced no further than to a body with mine eyes; and with my soul no deeper than to a mere phantasy? Nor did I know God to be a Spirit who hath not any parts extended in length and breadth, nor whose Being was to be a bulk; for that

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. si infinita sit, minor est in aliqua parte certo spatio
^{VII} definita, quam per infinitum, et non est tota ubique
sicut spiritus, sicut deus. et quid in nobis esset,
secundum quod essemus, et quid in scriptura dice-
remur, ad imaginem dei, prorsus ignorabam.

Et non noveram iustitiam veram interiorem non
ex consuetudine iudicantem, sed ex lege rectissima
dei omnipotentis, qua formarentur mores regionum
et dierum pro regionibus et diebus, cum ipsa ubique
ac semper esset, non alibi alia nec alias aliter;
secundum quam iusti essent Abraham et Isaac et
Iacob et Moyses et David, et illi omnes laudati
ore dei; sed eos ab imperitis iudicari iniquos,
iudicantibus ex humano die et universos mores
humani generis ex parte moris sui metientibus;
tamquam si quis nescius in armamentis, quid cui
membro adcommodatum sit, ocrea velit caput
contegi et galea calciari, et murmuret, quod non
apte conveniat; aut in uno die, indicto a pomeri-
dianis horis iustitio, quisquam stomachetur non sibi
concedi quod venale proponere, quia mane con-
cessum est; aut in una domo videat aliquid
tractari manibus a quoquam servo, quod facere non
sinatur qui pocula ministrat; aut aliquid post prä-
sepio fieri, quod ante mensam prohibeatur; et

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

every bulk is lesser in his part, than in his whole : and CHAP.
if it be infinite, it must needs be less in some part VII
that is limited, than in his infinity ; and cannot so be
wholly everywhere, as a spirit is, as God is. And
which part in us that should be, by which we were,
and how rightly in the Scriptures we may be said
to be made after the image of God, I was altogether
ignorant.

Nor did I know that true and inward righteousness, which judgeth not according to custom, but out of the most rightful Law of God Almighty, by which the fashions of several places and times were so disposed, as was fittest both for those times and places ; itself in the mean time being the same always and everywhere ; not another thing in another place, nor otherwise upon another occasion. According to which righteousness Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and Moses were righteous, yea, and all those other commended by the mouth of God : but they were judged unrighteous by unskilful people judging out of human judgment, and measuring all mankind in general by the model of their own customs : just as if in armour, a man being ignorant what piece were appointed for what part, should clap a greave upon his head, and draw a headpiece upon his leg, and then murmur because they would not fit him : or as if upon some set day when the course of Justice is publicly forbidden in the afternoon, a shopkeeper should stomach at it that he may not have leave to sell his wares, because it was lawful for him to do it in the forenoon : or when in some house he observeth some servant to pass that kind of business through his hands, which the butler is not suffered to meddle withal ; or some thing done behind the stable, which is forbidden in the dining-room : or as if he should

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. ^{VII} indignetur, cum sit unum habitaculum et una familia,
non ubique atque omnibus idem tribui. sic sunt
isti qui indignantur, cum audierint illo saeculo
licuisse iustis aliquid, quod isto non licet iustis; et
quia illis aliud präcepit deus, istis aliud pro tem-
poralibus causis; cum eidem iustitiae utriusque servie-
rint: cum in uno homine et in uno die et in unis
aedibus videant aliud alii membro congruere, et
aliud iam dudum licuisse, post horam non licere,
quiddam in illo angulo permitti aut iuberi, quod
in isto iuxta vetetur et vindicetur. numquid
iustitia varia est et mutabilis? sed tempora, quibus
praesidet, non pariter eunt; tempora enim sunt.
homines autem, quorum vita super terram brevis
est, quia sensu non valent causas contexere saecu-
lorum priorum aliarumque gentium, quas experti
non sunt, cum his quas experti sunt, in uno autem
corpore vel die vel domo facile possunt videre,
quid cui membro, quibus momentis, quibus partibus
personisve congruat, in illis offenduntur, hic serviunt.

Haec ego tunc nesciebam et non advertebam, et
feriebant undique ista oculos meos, et non videbam.
et cantabam carmina, et non mihi licebat ponere
pedem quemlibet ubilibet, sed in alio atque alio
metro aliter et in uno aliquo versu non omnibus

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

be angry, that where there is one dwelling-house, CHAP.
and one family, the same equality of distribution is ^{VII}
not observed everywhere, and to all alike in it. Of
the same humour be those who are fretted to
hear something to have been lawful for righteous
men in the former age, which is not so for righteous
men now-a-days. And because God commanded
them one thing then, and these another thing
now for certain temporal respects; and yet those of
both ages were servants to the same righteousness:
whereas they may observe in one man, and in one
day, and in one house, different things to be fit for
different members, and one thing to be lawful now,
which an hour hence is not so; and something to be
permitted or commanded in one corner, which is
forbidden and punished in another. Is Justice
thereupon various or mutable? No; but the times
rather, which justice governs, are not like one
another; for they are times. But men now, whose
life is but short upon the earth, for that in their own
apprehensions they are not able to compare together
the causes of those former ages, and of other nations,
which they have had no experience of, with these
which they have had experience of; and that in one
and the same body, day or family, they may easily
observe what is fitting for such a member and at
what seasons, what parts and what persons: they
take exception to those, but to these they are
slaves.

These things I then knew not, nor did I mark
them; and they on every side beat about mine eyes,
yet did I not see them. I endited verses, in which
I had not liberty to place every foot where I pleased,
but in one metre in one place, and in another metre
in another place: and not the selfsame foot in all

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER III

CAP. locis eundem pedem; et ars ipsa, qua canebam, non
^{VII} habebat aliud alibi, sed omnia simul. et non intuebar
iustitiam, cui servirent boni et sancti homines, longe
excellentius atque sublimius habere simul omnia
quae praecipit, et nulla ex parte varie, tamen variis
temporibus non omnia simul, sed propria distri-
buentem ac praecipientem. et reprehendebam
caecus pios patres, non solum, sicut deus iuberet
atque inspiraret, utentes praesentibus, verum quoque,
sicut deus revelaret, futura praenuntiantes.

VIII

CAP. NUMQUID aliquando aut alicubi iniustum est
^{VIII} diligere deum ex toto corde et ex tota anima et
ex tota mente, et diligere proximum tamquam te
ipsum? itaque flagitia, quae sunt contra naturam,
ubique ac semper detestanda atque punienda sunt,
qualia Sodomitarum fuerunt. quae si omnes gentes
facerent, eodem criminis reatu divina lege tene-
rentur, quae non sic fecit homines, ut hoc se
uterentur modo. violatur quippe ipsa societas, quae
cum deo nobis esse debet, cum eadem natura, cuius

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

places of the same verse neither : yea, and the very CHAP.
art of poetry itself, by which I endited, had not rules VII
different in one place from those in another, but all
in one. Nor did I then behold how that rule of
righteousness, to which those good and holy men
obeyed, did far more excellently and sublimely con-
tain all its precepts in one ; which though not varied
from itself in any part, yet in different times, did not
distribute or command all the same things at one
time, but what was fit and proper for each time.
Thus blind I reprehended those holy Fathers, not
only for making use of the present things with that
liberty which God both commanded and inspired
them, but even also for foretelling things to come,
which God had revealed unto them.

VIII

Heinous offences what be, and how punished

CAN it at any time or place be an unjust thing for CHAP.
a man to love God with all his heart, with all his VIII
soul, and with all his mind ; and his neighbour as
himself? Therefore are those crimes which be
against nature, to be everywhere and at all times
both detested and punished ; such as those of the
men of Sodom were : which should all nations com-
mit, they should stand all guilty of the same crime,
by the Law of God, which hath not so made men,
that they should this way use one another. For
even that society which should be betwixt God and
us, is then violated, when the same nature of which
he is author, is polluted by the preposterousness of

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. ille auctor est, libidinis perversitate polluitur. quae
VIII autem contra mores hominum sunt flagitia, pro
morum diversitate vitanda sunt; ut pactum inter se
civitatis aut gentis consuetudine vel lege firmatum
nulla civis aut peregrini libidine violetur. turpis
enim omnis pars universo suo non congruens.

Cum autem deus aliquid contra morem aut pactum
quorumlibet iubet, etsi nunquam ibi factum est,
faciendum est; et si omissum, instaurandum; et si
institutum non erat, instituendum est. si enim regi
licet in civitate, cui regnat, iubere aliquid, quod neque
ante illum quisquam nec ipse umquam iusserat, et
non contra societatem civitatis eius obtemperatur,
immo contra societatem non obtemperatur—generale
quippe pactum est societatis humanae oboedire
regibus suis—quanto magis deus regnator universae
creaturae, cui ad ea quae iusserit sine dubitatione
serviendum est! sicut enim in potestatibus societatis
humanae maior potestas minori ad oboediendum
praeponitur, ita deus omnibus.

Item in facinoribus, ubi libido est nocendi, sive
per contumeliam sive per iniuriam, et utrumque vel
ulciscendi causa, sicut inimico inimicus, vel adipi-
scendi alicuius extra conmodi, sicut latro viatori, vel

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

lust. But those actions which are offences against the customs and public usages of people, are to be avoided, with respect had to the diversity of those several customs and usages; so that a thing agreed upon, and confirmed, either by the custom or law of a city or nation amongst themselves, may not be violated at the lawless pleasure of any, whether native or foreigner. For vile is every part that agrees not with its own whole.

CHAP.
VIII

But when God commands anything to be done, either against the customs or constitutions of any people whatsoever, though the like were never done heretofore, yet it is to be done now; and if ever it hath been intermitted before, it is to be restored now; and if it were never made a law before, it is to be made one now. For lawful if it be for a King in that city which he reigns over, to command that which never any Prince had before him, nor he himself ever heretofore, and that it cannot be held to be against the common good of the city that he is obeyed: nay it were against it if he were not obeyed: (for a general agreement of all human societies, is that their princes should be obeyed) how much more dutiful then ought we to be to God, who is Lord Paramount over all his creatures, and that without any sticking at all, at whatsoever he pleases to command us! For as amongst those powers appointed in human society, the greater authority is set over the lesser, to command obedience; so is God set over all.

In heinous offences also, where there arises a licentious will to hurt another, be it either by offering reproach or injury; and both of these either upon occasion of revenge, as in one enemy against another, or for the compassing of some piece of profit, not in his own power, as in the highway thief to the traveller; or

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. evitandi mali, sicut ei qui timetur, vel invidendo,
VIII sicut feliciori miseror aut in aliquo prosperatus ei,
quem sibi aequari timet aut aequalem dolet, vel sola
voluptate alieni mali, sicut spectatores gladiatorum
aut inrisores aut inlusores quorumlibet. haec sunt
capita iniquitatis, quae pullulant principandi et spec-
tandi et sentiendi libidine, aut una aut duabus earum,
aut simul omnibus, et vivitur male adversus tria et
septem, psalterium decem chordarum, decalogum
tuum, deus altissime et dulcissime. sed quae flagitia
in te, qui non corrumperis? aut quae adversus te
facinora, cui noceri non potest? sed hoc vindicas,
quod in se homines perpetrant, quia etiam cum in te
peccant, inpie faciunt in animas suas, et mentitur
iniquitas sibi: sive corrumpendo ac pervertendo
naturam suam, quam tu fecisti et ordinasti; vel
inmoderate utendo concessis rebus vel in non con-
cessa flagrando in eum usum, qui est contra naturam;
aut rei tenentur, animo et verbis saevientes adversus
te et adversus stimulum calcitrantes; aut cum di-
ruptis limitibus humanae societatis, laetantur, audaces
privatis conciliationibus aut diremptionibus, prout
quidque delectaverit aut offenderit.

Et ea fiunt, cum tu derelinqueris, fons vitae, qui es
unus et verus creator et rector universitatis, et privata
130

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

for the eschewing of some evil, as in him that is afraid CHAP. VIII of another ; or in case of envying, as the miserable wretch against him in happier condition, or he that is well thriven in anything, fears him that is to grow up to him, or is grieved at him already in equal case with him ; or for the pleasure alone at another man's mischance, as those that are spectators of the sword-players, or that deride or put tricks on others. These be the chief heads of iniquity which sprout forth from that lawless desire of bearing rule, of seeing, of feeling, or of any one or two of these, or of all three together. Thus we live offensively against three and seven, that psaltery of ten strings, thy Ten Commandments, O God, most High and most Sweet. But what foul offences can there be against thee, seeing thou canst not by them be corrupted ? Or what high-handed transgressions can cross thee who canst not be harmed ? But this it is that thou revengest, that namely which men commit against themselves, seeing also when they sin against thee, they do wickedly even against their own souls, and iniquity gives itself the lie : either by corrupting or Ps. xxvii. 12 perverting its own nature which thou hast created and ordained ; or else by an immoderate use of those creatures appointed for them, or in burning in lust towards the use of what is not appointed, which is against nature ; or they are held guilty, for raving with heart and tongue against thee, kicking thereby against the prick : or breaking open the pale of all human society, they rejoice themselves, bold in their privy societies and schisms, right as anything either delighteth or offendeth them.

And these pranks are played whenever thou art forsaken, O Fountain of Life, which art the only and true Creator and Governor of the universe,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. superbia diligitur in parte unum falsum. itaque pietate
VIII humili reditur in te : et purgas nos a consuetudine
mala, et propitius es peccatis confitentium, et exaudis
gemitus conpeditorum, et solvis a vinculis, quae nobis
fecimus, si iam non erigamus adversus te cornua falsae
libertatis, avaritia plus habendi et damno totum amit-
tendi, amplius amando proprium nostrum quam te,
omnium bonum.

IX

CAP. **SED** inter flagitia et facinora et tam multas iniqui-
IX tates sunt peccata proficientium, quae a bene
iudicantibus et vituperantur ex regula perfectionis,
et laudantur spe frugis sicut herba segetis. et sunt
quaedam similia vel flagitio vel facinori et non sunt
peccata, quia nec te offendunt, dominum deum
nostrum, nec sociale consortium ; cum conciliantur
aliqua in usum vitae congrua, et temporis, et incertum
est an libidine habendi ; aut puniuntur corrigendi
studio potestate ordinata, et incertum est an libidine

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

whenas out of a personal pride, a false unity is loved in a part. By an humble devoutness must we therefore return unto thee; and then thou purgest away our lewd customs, and provest favourable to their sins that confess unto thee, and thou hearest the groans of those that are enthralled by them, and thou loosest those fetters which we have made for our own selves; if so be we do not lift up against thee the horns of a feigned liberty, through a grippleness of having more, though with a danger of losing all; even by more strongly settling our love upon our own private commodity, than upon thee, the common Good of all.

IX

The difference that is betwixt Sins, and betwixt the Judgment of God and Men

But amongst vices and crimes and all those iniquities are the sins of learners; which by those that judge rightly, both are discommended, after the rule of perfection, and yet the persons commended withal, upon hope of better fruit, as is the green blade of the growing corn. And there are some again, that look like infamous or impudent crimes, which yet are no sins; even for that they neither offend thee, O Lord God, nor yet the bond of society; when, namely, provision is made of some things fitting for the times, and we cannot judge whether it be out of a lust of having; or when some actions be by ordinary authority punished, with a

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER III

CAP. ^{IX} nocendi. multa itaque facta, quae hominibus improbanda viderentur, testimonio tuo adprobata sunt, et multa laudata ab hominibus te teste damnantur, cum saepe se aliter habet species facti et aliter facientis animus atque articulus occulti temporis. cum vero aliquid tu repente inusitatum et improvisum imperas, etiamsi hoc aliquando vetuisti, quamvis causam imperii tui pro tempore occultes, et quamvis contra pactum sit aliquorum hominum societatis, quis dubitet esse faciendum, quando ea iusta est societas hominum, quae servit tibi? sed beati qui te imperasse sciunt. fiunt enim omnia a servientibus tibi, vel ad exhibendum, quod ad praesens opus est, vel ad futura praenuntianda.

X

CAP. ^X HAEC ego nesciens, inridebam illos sanctos servos et prophetas tuos. et quid agebam, cum inridebam eos, nisi ut inriterer abs te, sensim atque paulatim perductus ad eas nugas, ut crederem ficum plorare, cum decerpitur, et matrem eius arborem lacrimis

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

desire of correcting, and it is uncertain whether it were out of a desire of hurting. Many a fact therefore which seems worthily disallowed by men, is yet well approved of by thy testimony ; and many a one by men praised, is, thou being witness, condemned : and all this, because the outside of the fact, and the mind of the doer, and the unknown secret of the crisis, are all different from one another. But when thou on the sudden commandest any unusual and unthought-of thing, yea, notwithstanding thou hast sometime heretofore forbidden this, although thou keepest secret for the time the reason of thy command ; and notwithstanding it be against the ordinance of some society of men ; who doubts but it is to be obeyed, seeing that society of men is a just society, which serves thee ? But happy are they who know it was thou that gave the command. For all things are done by them that serve thee, either for the providing themselves of what is needful for the present, or for the foreshowing of something to come hereafter.

CHAP.
IX.

X

*He speaks again of the Fig-tree, and derides the
Manichees' foolish conceits about it*

I MYSELF being at that time ignorant of these things, derided heartily those holy servants and prophets of thine. And what gained I by scorning them, but that myself should in the mean time be scorned by thee, being sensibly and by little and little drawn on to these toys, as to believe that a fig wept when it was plucked, and the tree

X

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER III

CAP. lacteis? quam tamen ficum si comedisset aliquis
^X sanctus, alieno sane, non suo scelere decerptam,
misereret visceribus, et anhelaret de illa angelos,
immo vero particulas dei, gemendo in oratione atque
ructando: quae particulae summi et veri dei ligatae
fuissent in illo pomo, nisi electi sancti dente ac ventre
solverentur. et credidi miser magis misericordiam
praestandam fructibus terrae, quam hominibus, prop-
ter quos nascerentur. si quis vero esuriens peteret,
qui Manichaeus non esset, quasi capitali supplicio
damnanda bucella videretur, si ei daretur.

XI

CAP. Er misisti manum tuam ex alto, et de hac profunda
^{XI} caligine eruisti animam meam, cum pro me fleret ad
te mea mater, fidelis tua, amplius quam flent matres
corporea funera. videbat enim illa mortem meam
ex fide et spiritu, quem habebat ex te, et exaudisti
eam, domine. exaudisti eam nec despexisti lacrimas
eius, cum profluentes rigarent terram sub oculis eius
in omni loco orationis eius: exaudisti eam. nam
unde illud somnium, quo eam consolatus es, ut vivere
mecum cederet et habere mecum eandem mensam

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

the mother of it to shed milky tears? Which fig notwithstanding (so that it were plucked by some other man's sin,) had some Manichean saint eaten, he should digest in his guts, and breathe out of that fig, very angels: yea, in his prayer, groan and sigh out certain portions, forsooth, of the Deity: which portions of the most High and True God should remain bound in that fig, unless they had been set at liberty by the teeth or belly of some elect holy one. And I believed (wretch that I was) that more mercy was to be shewn to the fruits of the earth, than unto men for whose use they were created. For if any man, though an hungered, should have begged a bit, who were no Manichee, that morsel should seem fit to be condemned with capital punishment, should it have been given to him.

CHAP.
X
The elect thus released the "light-elements" imprisoned in food

XI

His Mother's Dream

AND thou stretchedst thine hand from on high, CHAP.
and drewest my soul out of that darksome deepness,
whenas my mother thy faithful one wept to thee for me, more bitterly than mothers use to do for the bodily deaths of their children. For she evidently saw that I was dead, by that faith and spirit which thou hadst given her, and thou heardest her, O Lord; thou heardest her, and despisedst not her tears, when flowing down they watered the very earth under her eyes in every place where she prayed; yea, thou heardest her. For whence else was that dream of hers, by which thou comfortedst her; after which she allowed me to live with her, and to eat at

XI
Ps. lxxxv.
13

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. in domo? quod nolle cooperat, aversans et detestans
^{XI} blasphemias erroris mei. vidi enim se stantem in quadam regula lignea et venientem ad se iuvenem splendidum hilarem atque arridentem sibi, cum illa esset maerens et maerore confecta. qui cum causas ab ea quaesisset maestitiae suae cotidianarumque lacrimarum (docendi, ut adsolet, non discendi gratia), atque illa respondisset perditionem meam se plangere, iussisse illum, quo secura esset, atque admonuisse, ut adtenderet et videret, ubi esset illa, ibi esse et me. quod illa ubi adtendit, vidi me iuxta se in eadem regula stantem. unde hoc, nisi quia erant aures tuae ad cor eius, o tu bone omnipotens, qui sic curas unumquemque nostrum, tamquam solum cures, et sic omnes, tamquam singulos?

Vnde illud etiam, quod cum mihi narrasset ipsum visum, et ego ad id detrahere conarer, ut illa se potius non desperaret futuram esse quod eram, continuo sine aliqua haesitatione: "non" inquit; "non enim mihi dictum est: ubi ille, ibi et tu, sed: ubi tu, ibi et ille." confiteor tibi, domine, recordationem meam, quantum recolo, quod saepe non tacui, amplius me isto per matrem responso tuo, quod tam vicina interpretationis falsitate turbata non est, et tam cito vidi quod videndum fuit—quod ego certe, antequam dixisset, non videram—etiam tum fuisse commotum quam ipso somnio, quo feminae piae gaudium, tanto

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

the same table in house with her, which she already CHAP.
began to be unwilling to do, refusing and detesting XI
the blasphemies of my error. For she saw, in her Compare
sleep, herself standing upon a wooden rule, and a viii. 30 :
very beautiful young man coming towards her, with "stans in
a cheerful countenance and smiling upon her, her- ea regula
self being grieved and far gone with sorrowfulness.
fidel"

Which young man when he had demanded of her
the causes of her sadness and daily weepings, (that
he might teach, as they use to do, rather than learn)
and she had answered that it was my perdition that
she bewailed; he bade her rest contented, and wished
her to observe diligently and behold, that where she
herself was, there was I also. Who when she looked
aside, she saw me standing by her upon the same
rule. How should this chance now, but that thine
ears were bent towards the requests of her heart, O
thou Good Omnipotent, who hast such special care
of every one of us, as if thou hadst care but of one
alone ; and so regardest all, as if but single persons !

How came this about also, that when she had told
me this vision, and I would have interpreted it, that
she should not despair of being one day what I was :
she presently, without any sticking at, replies :
" No," saith she, " it was not told me, thou art where
he is ; but where thou art, there he is " ? I confess
to thee O Lord, that to the best of my remembrance
(which I have often spoken of) I was then the more
moved at this thy answer by my mother, that she
was not put out of conceit by the likelihood of my
close interpretation, and that upon the very instant
she apprehended what was to be seen by it, which I
myself verily had not perceived before she spake :
I was more moved, I say, at that, than with her
dream itself ; by which the joy of that holy woman

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER III

CAP. post futurum, ad consolationem tunc praesentis sol-
^{XI} litudinis tanto ante praedictum est. nam novem ferme anni secuti sunt, quibus ego in illo limo pro- fundi ac tenebris falsitatis, cum saepe surgere conarer et gravius alliderer, voluntatus sum; cum tamen illa vidua casta, pia et sobria, quales amas, iam quidem spe alacrior, sed fletu et gemitu non segnior, non desineret horis omnibus orationum suarum de me plangere ad te, et intrabant in conspectum tuum preces eius, et tamen dimittebas adhuc volvi et involvi illa caligine.

XII

CAP. ET dedisti alterum responsum interim, quod recolo.
^{XII} nam et multa praetereo, propter quod propero ad ea quae me magis urgunt confiteri tibi, et multa non memini. dedisti ergo alterum per sacerdotem tuum, quandam episcopum nutritum in ecclesia et exercitatum in libris tuis. quem cum illa femina rogasset, ut dignaretur mecum conloqui, et refellere errores meos, et dedocere me mala ac docere bona—faciebat enim hoc, quos forte idoneos invenisset—noluit ille, prudenter sane, quantum sensi postea. respondit

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

to be fulfilled so long after, was, for the consolation CHAP.
of her present anguish, so long before foresignified. XI
For nine full years passed after that, in all which
I tumbled up and down in the mud of that deep pit,
and the darkness of that false belief, and when I
endeavoured to rise, the more violently was I flung
down again. All which time that chaste, godly, and
sober widow (such thou lovest) more cheered up
with hope, though no whit slackened in weeping
and mourning, failed not all hours of her set prayers
to bewail my case before thee. And her prayers
found entry then into thy sight, yet notwithstanding
thou sufferedst me to be tumbled over and over in
that darkness.

XII

The answer his Mother received from a Bishop, concerning his Conversion

AND thou gavest her another answer in the mean CHAP.
time, which I now remember: and yet I pass over XII
many a one, for that I make haste to those things
which more press me to confess unto thee, and
many have I also forgotten. Thou affordedst her
another answer, therefore, by a certain priest of
thine, a Bishop brought up in the Church, and well
studied in thy Books. Whom when this woman had
entreathed that he would vouchsafe to have some
conference with me, as well to unteach me what
was false, as to instruct me in what was sound: (for
this office he ever and anon did, as he found fit hearers):
but he refused it, and in truth discreetly too, as I better
afterwards perceived. For his answer was, that I was

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER III

CAP. ^{XII} enim me adhuc esse indocilem, et quod inflatus essem novitate haeresis illius, et nonnullis quaestiunculis iam multos inperitos exagitassem, sicut illa indicaverat ei. "sed" inquit "sine illum ibi. tantum roga pro eo dominum: ipse legendo reperiet, quis ille sit error et quanta inpietas."

Simul etiam narravit, se quoque parvulum a seducta matre sua datum fuisse Manichaeis, et omnes paene non legisse tantum verum etiam scriptitasse libros eorum, sibique adparuisse nullo contra disputante et convincente, quam esset illa secta fugienda: itaque fugisse. quae cum ille dixisset, atque illa nollet adquiescere, sed instaret magis deprecando et ubertim flendo, ut me videret et mecum dissereret, ille iam substomachans: "vade" inquit "a me; ita vivas, fieri non potest, ut filius istarum lacrimarum pereat." quod illa ita se accepisse inter conloquia sua mecum saepe recordabatur, ac si de caelo sonuisset.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK III

yet unripe for instruction, for that I was yet puffed up CHAP.
with the new taken-in heresy, and that I had already XII
troubled divers unskilful persons with spurring of
questions to them, as she had already told him : "but
let him alone a while," said he, "only pray to God for
him : he will of himself by reading find his own mis-
take, and how great his impiety is."

The Bishop then up and told her how himself when he was a little one had been by his seduced mother committed to the Manichees, and how he had not only read over almost all, but also copied out their books, and that it appeared to him, without the help of any man to dispute against or to convince it, how much that sect was to be avoided ; and how of himself therefore he had forsaken it. Which words when he had spoken, and she would not yet be satisfied ; but pressed more upon him, what with entreating, and what with weeping, that he would be pleased to see me, and to discourse with me ; he, a little displeased at her tedious importunity, "Go thy ways," saith he, "and God bless thee, for it is not possible that the son of these tears should be lost." Which answer she then took (as she often remembered in our familiar discourse afterwards) as if an oracle had resounded from Heaven.

BOOK IV

I

K

LIBER QVARTVS •

I

CAP. PER idem tempus annorum novem, ab undevicensimo
anno aetatis meae usque ad duodetricensimum,
seducebamur et seducebamus, falsi atque fallentes
in variis cupiditatibus, et palam per doctrinas, quas
liberales vocant, occulte autem falso nomine re-
ligionis, hic superbi, ibi superstitioni, ubique vani :
hac popularis gloriae sectantes inanitatem, usque ad
theatricos plausus, et contentiosa carmina, et agonem
coronarum faenearum, et spectacularorum nugas, et in-
temperantium libidinum ; illac autem purgari nos ab
istis sordibus expetentes, cum eis, qui appellarentur
electi et sancti, afferremus escas, de quibus nobis in
officina aqualiculi sui fabricarent angelos et deos, per
quos liberaremur. et sectabar ista atque faciebam
cum amicis meis, per me ac mecum deceptis. inrideant
me arrogantes, et nondum salubriter prostrati et elisi
a te, deus meus, et ego tamen confitear tibi dedecora
mea in laude tua. sine me, obsecro, et da mihi

THE FOURTH BOOK

I

How long, and what ways he seduced others

FOR the space of nine years then (that is from the CHAP. — nineteenth year of mine age to the eight and twentieth) I was seduced myself, and others I seduced; deceived, and deceiving in divers lusts; and in public I did it by those arts which are called liberal, but in private I still pretended the assumed name of religion: here proud, there superstitious, everywhere vain; on the one hand hunting after the empty noise of popular reputation, even affecting those theatrical hummings and applause, and those contentious strifes of wit, and to gain the grassy garlands, and the vanity of the stage, and the intemperancy of ambition; on the other hand much desiring to purge myself from these corruptions by the help of those who were called elect and holy, I carried them certain chosen meats, out of which in the workhouse of their own paunches, they should See p. 137 forge certain angels and gods, by whom I was to be cleansed. These things did I then follow, and did them with my friends, who were deceived by me and with me. Let such deride me now, who are arrogant, and not yet savingly cast down nor broken in heart, by thee, O my God; but I for all this do here confess mine own shame to thee in thy praise. Suffer me, I beseech thee, and give megrace to run over in

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

CAP. circuire praesenti memoria praeteritos circuitus erroris
I mei, et immolare tibi hostiam iubilationis. quid enim
sum ego mihi sine te nisi dux in präceps? aut
quid sum, cum mihi bene est, nisi sugens lac tuum
aut fruens te, cibo qui non corruptitur? et quis
homo est quilibet homo, cum sit homo? sed inrideant
nos fortes et potentes, nos autem infirmi et inopes
confiteamur tibi.

II

CAP. DOCEBAM in illis annis artem rhetoricam, et vic-
II toriosam loquacitatem victus cupiditate vendebam.
malebam tamen, domine, tu scis, bonos habere disci-
pulos, sicut appellantur boni, et eos sine dolo docebam
dolos, non quibus contra caput innocentis agerent,
sed aliquando pro capite nocentis. et, deus, vidisti
de longinquo lapsantem in lubrico, et in multo fumo
scintillantem fidem meam, quam exhibebam in illo
magisterio diligentibus vanitatem et quaerentibus
mendacium, socius eorum. in illis annis unam habe-
bam, non eo quod legitimum vocatur coniugio cogni-
tam, sed quam indagaverat vagus ardor inops pru-
dentiæ, sed unam tamen, ei quoque servans tori

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

my present remembrance the errors of my forepast CHAP.
time, and to offer up unto thee the sacrifice of re- I
joicing. For what am I without thee, but a guide Ps. xvi. 17
to mine own downfall? Or what am I even at the
best, but an infant sucking thy milk, and feeding
upon thee, the Food incorruptible? But what kind John vi. 27
of thing is any man, seeing that he is but a man?
Let now the strong and the mighty laugh at me,
but let us weak and needy souls ever confess unto
thee.

II

*He teaches Rhetoric, and despiseth a Wizard who
promised him the Victory*

I TAUGHT in those years the art of rhetoric, and CHAP.
myself being overcome with a desire of gain, made II
sale of a loquacity, to overcome others by. Yet I
desired rather (Lord, thou knowest) to have honest
scholars, as they are now-a-days accounted; and those,
without all deceit, I taught how to deceive; not
that they might plead against the life of any innocent
person, though sometimes to save the life of the
guilty. And thou O God, from afar perceivedst me
falling in that slippery course, and in much smoke
sparkling out some little faith, which I then made
show of in that schoolmastership of mine to those
that loved vanity and sought a lie, becoming their Ps. iv. 2
companion. In those days I kept a mistress, not
joined to me in lawful marriage; but one found out
by wandering lust, utterly void of understanding:
yet had I but that one, towards whom I truly kept
the promise of the bed; in whom I might by mine

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. fidem; in qua sane experirer exemplo meo, quid
^{II} distaret inter coniugalis placiti modum, quod foede-
ratum esset generandi gratia, et pactum libidinosi
amoris, ubi proles etiam contra votum nascitur,
quamvis iam nata cogat se diligi.

Recolo etiam, cum mihi theatrici carminis cer-
tamen inire placuisset, mandasse mihi nescio quem
haruspicem, quid ei dare vellem mercedis, ut vin-
cerem, me autem foeda illa sacramenta detestatum et
abominatum respondisse, nec si corona illa ita esset
inmortaliter aurea, muscam pro victoria mea necari
sinere. necaturus enim erat ille in sacrificiis suis ani-
mantia, et illis honoribus invitatus mihi suffraga-
tura daemonia videbatur. sed hoc quoque malum
non ex tua castitate repudiavi, deus cordis mei. non
enim amare te neveram, qui nisi fulgores corporeos
cogitare non neveram. talibus enim figmentis sus-
pirans anima nonne fornicatur abs te, et fudit in falsis,
et pascit ventos? sed videlicet sacrificari pro me
nollem daemonibus, quibus me illa superstitione ipse
sacrificabam. quid est enim aliud ventos pascere
quam ipsos pascere, hoc est errando eis esse voluptati
atque derisui?

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

own example learn experience, what difference there CHAP.
would be betwixt the knot of the marriage covenant,^{II}
mutually consented unto for the desire of children,
and the bargain of a lustful love, where though
children be against our wills begotten, yet being
born, they even compel us to love them.

I remember once, that when I had a mind to put forth myself for the prize in a theatrical poem, I was demanded by I know not what wizard, what I would give him, to be assured to win the garland : but I detesting and abhorring such filthy rites, returned him answer ; that though the garland were immortal and of gold, yet would I not suffer a fly to lose its life to gain me the better of it. For he was to kill certain living creatures in those his sacrifices, and by those honours to invite the devils to favour me. But this ill means also I refused not out of any chaste reservation towards thee, O God of my heart ; for then I knew not how to love thee, who knew not how to think on anything but certain corporeal shinings. And does not the soul, panting after such fond fictions, commit fornication against thee, trust in false hopes, and feed the winds ? But I Hos. xii. 7 would not, forsooth, that he should do sacrifice to the devils for me, and yet did I offer myself unto them, even by that my superstition. For, to feed the winds, what is it else but to feed them ; that is, by our own errors to make ourselves the subjects of their pleasure and derision ?

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

III

CAP. ITAQUE illos planos, quos mathematicos vocant,
^{III} plane consulere non desistebam, quod quasi nullum
eis esset sacrificium, et nullae preces ad aliquem spiri-
tum ob divinationem dirigerentur. quod tamen Chris-
tiana et vera pietas consequenter repellit et damnat.
bonum est enim confiteri tibi, domine, et dicere :
Miserere mei, cura animam meam, quoniam peccavi
tibi ; neque ad licentiam peccandi abuti indulgentia
tua, sed meminisse dominicae vocis : Ecce sanus
factus es ; iam noli peccare, ne quid tibi deterius
contingat. quam totam illi salubritatem interficere
conantur, cum dicunt : "de caelo tibi est inevitabilis
causa peccandi" et "Venus hoc fecit aut Saturnus
aut Mars," scilicet ut homo sine culpa sit, caro et
sanguis et super a putredo, culpandus sit autem caeli
ac siderum creator et ordinator. et quis est hic nisi
deus noster, suavitas et origo iustitiae, qui redde
unicuique secundum opera eius et cor contritum et
humiliatum non spernis ?

Erat eo tempore vir sagax, medicinae artis peri-
tissimus atque in ea nobilissimus, qui proconsul
manu sua coronam illam agonisticam inposuerat non
sano capiti meo, sed non ut medicus. nam illius
morbi tu sanator, qui resistis superbis, humiliibus
autem das gratiam. numquid tamen etiam per
illum senem defuisti mihi, aut destitisti mederi

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

III

Giving himself to Astrology, he is reclaimed by an ancient Physician

THOSE impostors therefore, whom they style astro- CHAP.
logers, I verily did not forbear to consult with ; and III
that because they used no sacrifice, nor directed
their prayers to any Spirit to speed their divina-
tions ; and yet doth Christian and true piety con-
sistently refuse and condemn that art. For it is a
good thing to confess unto thee, and to say Have Ps. xl. 4
mercy upon me, heal my soul : for I have sinned
against thee : and not to abuse thy kindness for a
liberty of sinning, but to remember our Lord's warn-
ing Behold thou art made whole, sin no more, John v. 14
lest a worse thing come unto thee. All which
wholesome advice they endeavour to overthrow, that
say, The cause of thy sin is inevitably determined
in heaven ; and that man, flesh and blood and proud
corruption, be kept without sin, is of Venus' doing,
forsooth ; or Saturn or Mars procured it ; meanwhile
the Creator and Ruler of heaven and stars bears the
blame of it. And who is he but our God, the very
Sweetness and Well-spring of Righteousness, who
shall render to every man according to his works : and Ps. li. 7
a broken and contrite heart wilt thou not despise.

There was in those days a wise gentleman very
skilful in physic, and famous for his art, who being
at that time Proconsul, had with his own hand put
the garland of contest upon my distempered head,
but not as a physician : for this disease thou only
curest, who resistest the proud, and givest grace 1 Pet. v. 5
to the humble. But didst thou fail even by that
old physician, or forbarest to heal my soul ? For

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

CAP. animae meae? quia enim factus ei eram familiarior,
^{III} et eius sermonibus—erant enim sine verborum cultu
vivacitate sententiarum iucundi et graves—adsiduus
et fixus inhaerebam: ubi cognovit et ex conloquio
meo libris genethliacorum esse me deditum, benigne
ac paterne monuit, ut eos abicerem, neque curam et
operam rebus utilibus necessariam illi vanitati
frustra inpendarem; dicens ita se illa didicisse, ut
eam professionem primis annis aetatis suae deferre
voluisse, qua vitam degeret, et si Hippocraten
intellexisset, et illas utique litteras potuisse in-
tellegere: et tamen non ob aliam causam se postea
illis relictis medicinam adsecutum, nisi eas falsissimas
conperisset, et nollet vir gravis decipiendis hominibus
victum quaerere. “at tu” inquit “quo te in homini-
bus sustentas, rhetoricam tenes, hanc autem fallaciā
libero studio, non necessitate rei familiaris sectaris.
quo magis mihi te oportet de illa credere, qui eam
tam perfecte discere elaboravi, quam ex ea sola
vivere volui.” a quo ego cum quaesissem, quae
causa ergo faceret, ut multa inde vera pronuntiaren-
tur, respondit ille, ut potuit, vim sortis hoc facere,
in rerum natura usquequaque diffusam. si enim de
paginis poetae cuiuspiam, longe aliud canentis atque
intendantis, cum forte quis consultit, mirabiliter con-
sonus negotio saepe versus exiret, et mirandum non
esse dicebat, si ex anima humana, superiore aliquo

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

I grew more acquainted with him, and I diligently CHAP.
and firmly depended upon his words : by the liveli- III
ness of the thoughts, his talk was both pleasant and grave, although without study of elegance. Who when he had gathered by my discourse, that I was given to study the books of the Nativity-casters, he courteously and fatherly advised me to cast them all away, and that I should not hereafter in vain bestow my care or diligence (which was necessary for useful things) upon that vain study : affirming withal, that himself had in his younger years studied that art with a purpose to get his living by it ; hoping, if he had understood Hippocrates, he might well attain to understand that kind of learning also : yet that he had given it over, and wholly betaken himself to physic, for no other reason, but that he found it most deceitful ; and he being a grave man, would not get his living by cheating of people. "But thou," saith he, "hast the profession of Rhetoric to maintain thyself by, whereas thou followest this delusion voluntarily, not driven to it by necessity : so much the more then oughtest thou to give me credit in this point, who laboured to attain to perfection in it, out of a purpose to get my living by it alone." Of whom when I had demanded, what the reason was then, why so many true things should be foretold by it ? he answered me (as well as he could) that the force of chance diffused round about in the nature of things brought this about. For if when a man had by hap-hazard consulted the books of some poet, who sang of and intended clean another matter, the verses did oftentimes fall out wondrously agreeable to the present business : it were not then to be wondered at, saith he, if out of the soul of man, by some higher instinct, knowing nothing what is done

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. instinctu, nesciente quid in se fieret, non arte sed
^{III} sorte sonaret aliquid, quod interrogantis rebus
factisque concineret.

Et hoc quidem ab illo vel per illum procurasti
mihi, et quid ipse postea per me ipsum quaererem,
in memoria mea deliniasti. tunc autem nec ipse
nec carissimus Nebridius, adulescens valde bonus et
valde castus, inridens totum illud divinationis genus,
persuadere mihi potuerunt, ut haec abicerem,
quoniam me amplius ipsorum auctorum movebat
auctoritas, et nullum certum quale quaerebam docu-
mentum adhuc inveneram, quo mihi sine ambigui-
tate appareret, quae ab eis consultis vera dicerentur,
forte vel sorte, non arte inspectorum siderum dici.

IV

CAP. IN illis annis, quo primum tempore in municipio,
^{IV} quo natus sum, docere cooperam, comparaveram
amicum societate studiorum nimis carum, coaevum
mihi et conflorentem flore adulescentiae. mecum
puer creverat et pariter in scholam ieramus pariterque
luseramus. sed nondum erat sic amicus, quamquam
ne tum quidem sic, uti est vera amicitia, quia non est
156

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

within itself, some answer should be given, which CHAP.
more by hap than any good cunning, should have ^{III} agreement to the business and actions of the demander.

And thus much truly, either from or by him, thou then wroughtest for me, and then didst sketch in my memory, what of myself I should seek out afterwards. But yet at that time neither he, nor my most dear Nebridius, (a very good dispositioned young man, and a very chaste, who utterly derided that whole manner of divination) could persuade me to cast away those studies, even because the authority of the very authors overswayed more with me, and that I had not yet lit upon any demonstrative argument, such as I sought for, whereby it might clearly and without all doubtfulness appear, that what had been truly foretold by those masters of the science, were spoken by fortune or by chance, and not out of the sure art of the Star-gazers.

IV

*He relates the sickness and Baptism of his Friend,
whom himself had affected with Heresy :
he grievously laments his Death*

IN those years when I first of all began to teach CHAP.
rhetoric in the town where I was born, I had gained a ^{IV} very dear friend, upon the occasion of the nearness of our studies ; one he was about mine own age, now springing up with me in the flower of youth. He had grown up of a child with me, and both school-fellows and play-fellows we had been. But yet was he not so truly my friend, no not at that later time even, as true friendship should be indeed : for true it

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. vera, nisi cum eam tu agglutinas inter haerentes sibi
^{IV} caritate diffusa in cordibus nostris per spiritum sanctum, qui datus est nobis. sed tamen dulcis erat nobis, cocta fervore parilium studiorum. nam et a fide vera, quam non germanitus et penitus adulescens tenebat, deflexeram eum in superstitiones fabellas et perniciosas, propter quas me plangebat mater. mecum iam errabat in animo ille homo, et non poterat anima mea sine illo. et ecce tu inminens dorso fugitivorum tuorum, deus ultionum et fons misericordiarum simul, qui convertis nos ad te miris modis, ecce abstulisti hominem de hac vita, cum vix explevisset annum in amicitia mea, suavi mihi super omnes suavitates illius vitae meae.

Quis laudes tuas enumerat unus in se uno, quas expertus est? quid tunc fecisti, deus meus, et quam investigabilis abyssus iudiciorum tuorum? cum enim laboraret ille febribus, iacuit diu sine sensu in sudore laetali, et cum desperaretur, baptizatus est nesciens, me non curante, et praesumente id retinere potius animam eius quod a me acceperat, non quod in neScientis corpore fiebat. longe autem aliter erat. nam recreatus est et salvus factus, statimque, ut primo cum eo loqui potui—potui autem mox, ut ille potuit, quando non discedebam et nimis pendebamus ex invicem—temptavi apud illum inridere, tamquam et illo inrisuro mecum baptismum, quem acceperat mente

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

cannot be, unless thou solderest it betwixt such CHAP.
parties as cleave together, by that love which is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost, which is given unto us. But yet a very sweet friendship it was, being ripened by the heat of like studies. For, from the true faith, (which he being a youth was not soundly and thoroughly grounded in) I had rapt him, even towards those selfsame superstitious and pernicious fables, for which my mother bewailed my condition. With me now that man was wandering in error, nor could my soul be without him. But behold thou, ever at the back of thy runaways, the God of revenge, and fountain of mercies, both at the same time, who turnest us to thyself by most wonderful means, tookest that man out of this life, when he had scarce continued one whole year in my friend-
Ps. xciv. 1
ship, sweet to me above all sweetness of this life.

What one man is able to recount all thy praises Ps. cvi. 2 which he hath felt in himself alone? What was it thou then didst, my God, and how unsearchable is Ps. xxxvi. 6 the bottomless depth of thy judgments? For whenas one day, sore sick of his fever, he lay senseless in a deadly sweat, and all despairing of his recovery, he was baptized, unwitting to himself; myself meanwhile little regarding, and presuming that his soul would have retained rather what it had learnt of me, and not what was now wrought in the body of him that knew nothing of it. But it fell out far otherwise; for he became refreshed, and recovered his health upon it. And as soon as ever I could come to speak with him (and I could, so soon as he could: for I had never yet gone from him, and we very nearly depended one upon another), I offered to scoff, as if he also would have scoffed with me for company, at that Baptism, which he, being most

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

CAP. atque sensu absentissimus. sed tamen iam se accep-
IV pisse didicerat. at ille ita me exhorruit ut inimicum,
admonuitque mirabili et repentina libertate, ut, si
amicus esse vellem, talia sibi dicere desinerem. ego
autem stupefactus atque turbatus, distuli omnes motus
meos, ut convalesceret prius, essetque idoneus viribus
valetudinis, cum quo agere possem quod vellem. sed
ille abreptus dementiae meae, ut apud te servaretur
consolationi meae, post paucos dies me absente
repetitur febribus et defungitur.

Quo dolore contenebratum est cor meum, et quid -
quid aspiciebam mors erat. et erat mihi patria sup-
plicium, et paterna domus mira infelicitas, et quidquid
cum illo communicaveram, sine illo in cruciatum in-
manem verterat. expetebant eum undique oculi mei,
et non dabatur: et oderam omnia, quod non haberent
eum, nec mihi iam dicere poterant: "ecce venit,"
sicut cum viveret,¹ quando absens erat. factus eram
ipse mihi magna quaestio, et interrogabam animam
meam, quare tristis esset et quare conturbaret me
valde, et nihil noverat respondere mihi. et si dicebam:
"spera in deum," iuste non obtemperabat, quia verior
erat et melior homo, quem carissimum amiserat,
quam phantasma, in quod sperare iubebatur. solus
fletus erat dulcis mihi et successerat amico meo in
deliciis animi mei.

¹ So MSS.; veniret, Knöll.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

absent both in understanding and feeling, had lately CHAP.
received, and had now understood that he had
received it. But he looked with a great indignation
upon me, as I had been his mortal enemy ; and with
an admirable and sudden freedom of language, ad-
vised me, that if I purposed to continue his friend,
I should forbear such talk to him. But I all astonished
and amazed, put off the disclosing of my private com-
motions, till he should grow well again, and had re-
covered so much strength of health, that he were fit
for me to deal with as I would. But he was taken
away from my frenzy, that with thee he might be
preserved for my future comfort ; falling in my absence
a few days after into a relapse of his fever, he died.

At the grief of this, my heart was utterly over
clouded; and whatsoever I cast mine eyes upon, looked
like death unto me. Mine own country was a very
prison to me, and my father's house a wonderful un-
happiness ; and whatsoever I had communicated in
with him, wanting him turned to my most cruel
torture. Mine eyes roved about everywhere for him,
but they met not with him ; and I hated all places
for that they had not him ; nor could they now tell
me, Behold, he will come shortly, as when he was
alive they did whenever he was absent. I became
a great riddle to myself, and I often asked over my
soul, why she was so sad, and why she afflicted me so
sorely : but she knew not what to answer me. And if
I said, "Put thy trust in God," very justly she did
not obey me ; because that most dear man whom
she had lost, was both truer and better than that
fantastical god she was bid to trust in. Only tears
were sweet to me, for they had now succeeded in
my friend's place, in the dearest of my affections.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

V

CAP. ET nunc, domine, iam illa transierunt, et tempore
V lenitum est vulnus meum. possumne audire abs te,
qui veritas es, et admoveare aurem cordis mei ori tuo,
ut dicas mihi, cur fletus dulcis sit miseris? an tu,
quamvis ubique adsis, longe abiecisti a te miseriam
nostram? et tu in te manes, nos autem in experimentis
volvimus: et tamen nisi ad aures tuas ploraremus,
nihil residui de spe nostra fieret. unde igitur suavis
fructus de amaritudine vitae carpitur gemere et
flere et suspirare et conqueri? an hoc ibi dulce est,
quod speramus exaudire te? recte istud in pre-
cibus, quia desiderium pervenienti habent. num
in dolore amissae rei et luctu, quo tunc operiebar?
neque enim sperabam revivescere illum aut hoc
petebam lacrimis, sed tantum dolebam et flebam.
miser enim eram et amiseram gaudium meum .an
et fletus res amara est, et prae fastidio rerum, quibus
prius fruebamur, et tunc, dum ab eis abhorremus,
delectat?

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

V

Of Tears in our Prayers for, and Bewailing of, the Thing Beloved

AND now Lord, are these things well passed over, CHAP.
and time hath assuaged the anguish of my wound. V
May I learn this from thee who art Truth, and may I
apply the ear of my heart unto thy mouth, that thou
mayest tell me the reason, why weeping should be so
sweet to people in misery? Hast thou (notwith-
standing thou art present everywhere) cast away our
misery far from thee? And thou remainest constant
in thyself, but we are tumbled up and down in divers
trials: and yet unless we should bewail ourselves in
thine ears, there should no hope remain for us. How
comes it then to pass, that such sweet fruit is
gathered from the bitterness of life, namely to mourn,
and weep, and sigh, and complain? Is it this that
sweetens it, that we are in hope thou hearest us?
This may rightly be thought of our prayers, because
they have a desire to approach unto thee. But may
it be so said too concerning that grief and mourn-
ing for the thing lost, with which I was then wholly
overwhelmed? For I did not hope he should now
revive again, nor did I pray for this with all my
tears; but bemoan him only I did, and weep for him:
seeing a wretch I was, and had utterly lost all my
joy. Or is weeping a bitter thing, and yet out of a
full-gorgedness of what we before enjoyed, and only
while we are a loathing of them, can it be pleasing
to us?

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

VI

CAP. QUID autem ista loquor? non enim tempus quae-
^{VI} rendi nunc est, sed confitendi tibi. miser eram, et
miser est omnis animus vinctus amicitia rerum
mortaliuum, et dilaniatur, cum eas amittit, et tunc
sentit miseriam, qua miser est et antequam amittat
eas. sic ego eram illo tempore, et flebam amarissime
et requiescebam in amaritudine. ita miser eram, et
habebam cariorem illo amico meo vitam ipsam mise-
ram. nam quamvis eam mutare vellem, nolle tam
amittere magis quam illum; et nescio an vellem vel
pro illo, sicut de Oreste et Pylade traditur, si non
fingitur, qui vellent pro invicem simul mori, quia morte
peius eis erat non simul vivere. sed in me nescio
quis affectus nimis huic contrarius ortus erat, et tae-
dium vivendi erat in me gravissimum et moriendi
metus. credo, quo magis illum amabam, hoc magis
mortem, quae mihi eum abstulerat, tamquam atro-
cissimam inimicam oderam et timebam; et eam
repente consumpturam omnes homines putabam,
quia illum potuit. sic eram omnino, memini. ecce cor
meum, deus meus, ecce intus; vide, quia memini, spes
mea, qui me mundas a talium affectionum inmunditia,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

VI

He tells with what great Affection he loved his Friend

BUT why speak I of these things? For 'tis no time CHAP.
to ask questions, but to confess unto thee. Wretched VI

I was; and wretched is every soul that is bound fast in the friendship of mortal things; who becomes all to pieces when he forgoes them, and then first he becomes sensible of his misery, by which he is already miserable even before he forgoes them. This was my case at that time, I wept full bitterly, and yet was best at quiet in that bitterness. Thus was I wretched enough, and that wretched life I accounted more dear than my friend himself. For though I would gladly have changed it, yet more unwilling I was to lose that, than I had been to lose him; yea I know not whether I would have forgone that, even to have enjoyed him. Like as the tradition (if it be not a fiction) goes of Pylades and Orestes, who would gladly have died one for another, both together, it being to them worse than death not to live together. But a strange kind of affection prevailed with me which was clean contrary to theirs, for both grievously tedious to me it was to live, and yet fearful was I to die. I suppose that how much the more affectionately I loved him, so much the more did I both hate and fear (as my cruellest enemy) death, which had bereaved me of him: and I imagined it would speedily make an end of all other men, because it had the power to do of him. Even thus I remember, stood I then affected. Behold my heart, O my God, yea, search it throughly; search it because I remember it well, O my Hope, who cleanest me from the impurity of such

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. ^{VI} dirigens oculos meos ad te, et evellens de laqueo
pedes meos. mirabar enim ceteros mortales vivere,
quia ille, quem quasi non moriturum dilexeram, mor-
tuus erat; et me magis, quia ille alter eram, vivere
illo mortuo mirabar. bene quidam dixit de amico
suo: dimidium animæ suae. nam ego sensi animam
meam et animam illius unam fuisse animam in duo-
bus corporibus, et ideo mihi horrori erat vita, quia
nolebam dimidiū vivere; et ideo forte mori metue-
bam, ne totus ille moreretur, quem multum ama-
veram.

VII

CAP. ^{VII} O DEMENTIAM nescientem diligere homines humani-
ter! o stultum hominem inmoderate humana
patientem! quod ego tunc eram. itaque aestuabam,
suspirabam, flebam, turbabar, nec requies erat nec
consilium. portabam enim concisam et cruentam
animam meam, inpatientem portari a me; et ubi eam
ponerem non inveniebam. non in ainoenis nemor-
ibus, non in ludis atque cantibus, nec in suave
olentibus locis, nec in conviviis apparatis, nec in
voluptate cubilis et lecti, non denique in libris atque
carminibus adquiescebat. horreabant omnia et ipsa

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

affections, directing mine eyes towards thee, and CHAP.
plucking my feet out of the snare. For I much VI
admired that other mortals did live, since he whom
I so loved, as if he never should have died, was now
dead : yea, I more admired that myself who was to
him a second self, should be able to live after him.

Well said one of his friend, Thou half of my soul : for Hor. Odes,
I still thought my soul and his soul to have been but i. 3, 8
one soul in two bodies : and therefore was my life a
very horror to me, because I would not live by halves.
And even therefore perchance was I afraid to die,
lest he should wholly die, whom so passionately I had | *Rietveld!*
loved.

VII

*The impatientness of grief constrains us to shift
our dwellings*

O MADNESS, which knowest not how to love men, as CHAP.
men should be loved ! O foolish man, which so VII
impatiently endurest the chances Mortality is subject
unto ! Thus mad and foolish was I at that time.
Therefore I stormed, and puffed, and cried, and
tumbled, being capable neither of rest nor counsel.
For I was fain to carry my shattered and blood-
blubbered soul, which yet had not patience enough
to be carried by me; yet a place where to dispose
of it, I could not light upon. Not in the delightful
groves, not where mirth and music was, nor in the
odoriferous gardens, nor in curious banqueting, nor
in the pleasures of the bed and chambering ; nor,
finally, in reading over either verse or prose, took it
any contentment. Everything was offensive, yea,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

CAP. lux, et quidquid non erat quod ille erat, improbum
^{VII} et taediosum erat, praeter gemitum et lacrimas :
nam in eis solis aliquantula requies. ubi autem inde
auferebatur anima mea, onerabat me grandis sarcina
miseriae, ad te, domine, levanda erat et curanda,
sciebam, sed nec volebam nec valebam, eo magis,
quod mihi non eras aliquid solidum et firmum, cum
de te cogitabam. non enim tu eras, sed vanum
phantasma et error meus erat deus meus. si conabar
eam ibi ponere, ut requiesceret, per inane labebatur
et iterum ruebat super me ; et ego mihi remanseram
infelix locus, ubi nec esse possem nec inde recedere.
quo enim cor meum fugeret a corde meo ? quo a
me ipso fugerem ! quo non me sequerer ! et tamen
fugi de patria. minus enim eum quaerebant oculi
mei, ubi videre non solebant : atque a Thagastensi
oppido veni Carthaginem.

VIII

CAP. Non vacant tempora, nec otiose volvuntur per sensus
^{VIII} nostros : faciunt in animo mira opera. ecce venie-
bant et praeteribant de die in diem ; et veniendo et
praetereundo, inserebant mihi spes alias et alias
memorias, et paulatim resarciebant me pristinis

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

the very light itself; and whatsoever were not he, CHAP.
was alike painful and hateful to me, except groaning VII
and weeping. For only in those found I a little
refreshment. But so soon as I had retired my soul Ps. xxv. 1
from these, a huge misery overloaded me, which thou
only couldst ease and lighten, O Lord. I knew thus
much, and yet indeed I would not, nor was I able; the
more so, for that thou wert not any solid or substantial
thing unto me, when in those days I thought upon
thee. For not thou thyself, but mine own idle fantasy
and error were then my God. If I offered to dis-
charge my burden upon that, to give it some ease-
ment, it fell as it were through the empty air, and
came tumbling again upon me: whereupon I remained
so unfortunate a place to myself, as there I could
neither stay, nor get away from it. For whither
should my heart fly from my heart? Whither was it
possible to fly from mine own self? Whither should
I not have followed myself? And yet after all this,
out of my country I fled: for so should mine eyes less
look for him there, where they were not wont to see
him. And thus I left the town of Thagaste, and
came to Carthage.

VIII

Time cures Sorrow

TIMES lose no time: nor do they idly go and return CHAP.
about these senses of ours; but they cause strange VIII
operations in our minds. Behold, they went and came
day by day, and by going and coming to and again,
they brought into my mind other notions, and other
remembrances, and by little and little pieced me up

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. generibus delectationum, quibus cedebat dolor meus
VIII ille; sed succedebant non quidem dolores alii, causae
tamen aliorum dolorum. nam unde me facillime et
in intima dolor ille penetraverat, nisi quia fuderam
in harenam animam meam, diligendo moriturum ac si
non moriturum? maxime quippe me reparabant at-
que recreabant aliorum amicorum solacia, cum quibus
amabam quod postea amabam; et hoc erat ingens
fabula et longum mendacium, cuius adulterina con-
fricatione corrumpebatur mens nostra, pruriens in
auribus.

Sed illa mihi fabula non moriebatur, si quis
amicorum meorum moreretur. alia erant, quae
in eis amplius capiebant animum, conloqui et con-
ridere, et vicissim benivole obsequi; simul legere
libros dulciloquos, simul nugari et simul honestari;
dissentire interdum sine odio, tamquam ipse homo
secum, atque ipsa rarissima dissensione condire con-
sensiones plurimas; docere aliquid invicem aut dis-
cere ab invicem, desiderare absentes cum molestia,
suscipere venientes cum laetitia: his atque huius
modi signis, a corde amantium et redamantium pro-
cedentibus, per os, per linguam, per oculos, et mille
motus gratissimos, quasi fomitibus flagrare animos et
ex pluribus unum facere.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

again with my old kind of delights, unto which my present sorrow gave some way. And to that again there succeeded, though not other griefs, yet the causes of other griefs. For how came that former grief so easily and so deeply to make impression in me, but even from hence, that I had spilt my soul upon the sand, in loving a man that must die, as if he never had been to die? For the comfortings of other friends did mostly repair and refresh me, with whom I did love, what afterwards I did love: and this was a great fable, and a long lie; by the impure tickling whereof, my soul, which lay itching in my ears, was wholly corrupted.

But that fable would not yet die with me, so oft as any of my friends died. They were other things which in their company did more fully take my mind; namely, to discourse, and to laugh with them, and to do obsequious offices of courtesy one to another; to read pretty books together; sometimes to be in jest, and other whiles seriously earnest to one another; sometimes so to dissent without discontent, as a man would do with his own self, and even with the seldomness of those dissentings, season our more frequent consentings; sometimes would we teach, and sometimes learn one of another; wish for the company of the absent with impatience, and welcome home the newcomers with joyfulness. With these and the like expressions, proceeding out of the hearts of those that loved and repaired one another's affections, by the countenance, by the tongue, by the eyes, and by a thousand other most pleasing motions, did we set our souls ablaze, and make but one out of many.

CHAP.
VIII

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

IX

CAP. Hoc est, quod diligitur in amicis; et sic diligitur, ut
^{IX} rea sibi sit humana conscientia, si non amaverit redamantem aut si amantem non redamaverit, nihil querens ex eius corpore praeter indicia benivoltiae. hinc ille luctus, si quis moriatur, et tenebrae dolorum, et versa dulcedine in amaritudinem cor madidum, et ex amissa vita morientium mors viventium. beatus qui amat te, et amicum in te, et inimicum propter te. solus enim nullum carum amittit, cui omnes in illo cari, qui non amittitur. et quis est iste nisi deus noster, deus, qui fecit caelum et terram et inplet ea, quia inplendo ea fecit ea? te nemo amittit, nisi qui dimittit, et quia dimittit, quo it aut quo fugit nisi a te placido ad te iratum? nam ubi non invenit legem tuam in poena sua? et lex tua veritas et veritas tu.

X

CAP. DEUS virtutum, converte nos et ostende faciem tuam,
^X et salvi erimus. nam quoquoversum se verterit anima

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

IX

The comparing of Human Friendship with Divine

THIS it is now which a man loves in his friends ; and CHAP.
so loves it, that he must in conscience confess himself IX
guilty if he should not love him that loves him again,
or not love that man again that loves him first, ex-
pecting no other thing from him besides the pure
demonstration of his love. Hence is that mourning
whenever a friend dies, yea, those overcastings of
sorrows, that steeping of the heart in tears, all sweet-
ness utterly turned into bitterness : hence too upon
the loss of the life of the dying, comes the death of
the living. But blessed is the man that loves thee,
and his friend in thee, and his enemy for thee. For
he alone loses none that is dear unto him, to whom all
are dear, in him that can never be lost. And who is
this but our God, the God that made heaven and
earth, and who filleth them, because in filling them
he created them ? Thee, no man loses, but he that
lets thee go. And he that lets thee go, whither goes
he, or whither runs he, but from thee well pleased,
back to thee offended ? For where shall not such a
one find thy Law fulfilled in his own punishment ?
And thy Law is truth, and Truth is thyself.

John xiv. 6

X

All Beauty is from God, who is to be prayed for all

TURN us, O God of Hosts, show us the light of thy CHAP.
countenance and we shall be whole. For which way X
soever the soul of man turns itself, unless towards Ps. lxxxix. 4

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP^h hominis, ad dolores figitur alibi praeterquam in te,
^x tametsi figitur in pulchris extra te et extra se. quae tamen nulla essent, nisi essent abs te. quae oriuntur et occidunt, et oriendo quasi esse incipiunt, et crescunt, ut perficiantur, et perfecta senescunt et intereunt: et non omnia senescunt et omnia intereunt. ergo cum oriuntur et tendunt esse, quo magis celesteriter crescunt, ut sint, eo magis festinant, ut non sint. sic est modus eorum. tantum dedisti eis, quia partes sunt rerum, quae non sunt omnes simul, sed decadendo ac succedendo agunt omnes universum, cuius partes sunt. ecce sic peragitur et sermo noster per signa sonantia. non enim erit totus sermo, si unum verbum non decadat, cum sonuerit partes suas, ut succedat aliud. laudet te ex illis anima mea, deus, creator omnium, sed non eis infigatur glutine amore per sensus corporis. eunt enim quo ibant, ut non sint, et consindunt eam desideriis pestilentiosis, quoniam ipsa esse vult et requiescere amat in eis, quae amat. in illis autem non est ubi, quia non stant: fugiunt, et quis ea sequitur sensu carnis? aut quis ea comprehendit, vel cum praesto sunt?

Tardus est enim sensus carnis, quoniam sensus carnis est: ipse est modus eius. sufficit ad aliud,

Viney - medieval - age

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

thee, it is even riveted into dolours : yea, though it CHAP.
settles itself upon beautiful objects without thee, and
without itself : which beauties were no beauties at all,
unless they were from thee. They rise, and set ; and
by rising, they begin to have being ; they grow up,
that they may attain perfection ; which having
attained, they wax old and wither : though all grow
not old, yet all must wither. Therefore when they
spring up and tend towards a being, look how much
more haste they make to be, so much the more they
make not to be. This is the law of them. Thus much
hast thou given to them, because they are parcels
of things which are not extant all at one time, but
which by going and coming do altogether make up
the whole universe, whereof they are the parcels.
Lo, even thus is our speech delivered by sounds
significant : for it will never be a perfect sentence,
unless one word gives way when it hath sounded
his part, that another may succeed it. And by
them let my soul praise thee, O God, Creator of
all things ; but yet let not my soul be fastened unto
these things with the glue of love through the
senses of my body. For these things go whither
they were to go, that they might no longer be ;
and they cleave the soul in sunder with most pesti-
lent desires : even because the soul earnestly desires
to be one with them, and loves finally to rest in
these things which she loves. But in those things
she finds not settlement, which are still fleeing,
because they stand not : they flee away ; and who
is he that can follow them with the senses of his
flesh ; yea, who is able to overtake them, when they
are hard by him ?

For the sense of our flesh is slow, even because it
is the sense of our flesh : and itself is its own measure.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

CAP. ad quod factus est; ad illud autem non sufficit, ut
^X teneat transcurrentia ab initio debito usque ad finem
debitum. in verbo enim tuo, per quod creantur, ibi
audiunt: "hinc et hoc usque."

XI

CAP. NOLI esse vana, anima mea, et obsurdescere in aure
^{XI} cordis tumultu vanitatis tuae. audi et tu: verbum
ipsum clamat, ut redeas, et ibi est locus quietis in-
perturbabilis, ubi non deseritur amor, si ipse non
deserat. ecce illa discedunt, ut alia succedant, et
omnibus suis partibus constet infima universitas.
"numquid ego aliquo discedo?" ait verbum dei. ibi
fige mansionem tuam, ibi commenda quidquid inde
habes, anima mea, saltem fatigata fallaciis. veritati
commenda quidquid tibi est a veritate, et non perdes
aliquid; et resurgent putria tua, et sanabuntur
omnes languores tui, et fluxa tua reformabuntur et
renovabuntur et constringentur ad te; et non te
deponent, quo descendunt, sed stabunt tecum et
permanebunt ad semper stantem ac permanentem
deum.

Vt quid perversa sequeris carnem tuam? ipsa te
sequatur conversam. quidquid per illam sentis, in
176

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

Sufficient enough it is for the end it is made for ; but CHAP.
it is not sufficient for this, namely, to hold at a stay X
things running of course from their appointed start-
ing place to their appointed end. For in thy Word
by which they are created, they hear this signal :
“Hence, and thus far.”

XI

*All things are created mutable in themselves, and
immutable in God*

Be not foolish, O my Soul, and make not the ear of CHAP.
thine heart deaf, with the tumult of thy folly. But XI
hearken now : the Word itself calls thee to return :
and there is the place of quiet not to be disturbed,
where thy love can never be forsaken, if itself for-
sake not. Behold, these things give way that other
things may come in their places, that so this lowest
whole may have all his parts. “But do I ever
depart ?” saith the Word of God. There set up thy
dwelling, trust there whatsoever thou hast thence,
O my Soul, at length tired out with these uncertain-
ties. Recommend over unto truth, whatsoever thou
hast left of truth ; and thou shalt lose nothing by
the bargain ; yea, thy decays shall reflourish again,
and all thy languishments shall be recovered ; thy
fadings shall be refreshed, shall be renewed, and shall
be made to continue with thee : nor shall they put
thee down to the place whither themselves descend ;
but they shall stay with thee and stand fast for ever
before that God, who himself stays and stands fast for
ever.

Why now, my perverse soul, wilt thou be still follow-
ing thine own flesh ? Let that rather follow thee now

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

CAP. parte est et ignoras totum, cuius hae partes sunt, et
^{XI} delectant te tamen. sed si ad totum comprehenden-
dum esset idoneus sensus carnis tuae, ac non et ipse
in parte universi accepisset pro tua poena iustum
modum, velles, ut transiret quidquid existit in
praesentia, ut magis tibi omnia placerent. nam et
quod loquimur, per eundem sensum carnis audis, et
non vis utique stare syllabas, sed transvolare, ut aliae
veniant et totum audias. ita semper omnia, quibus
unum aliiquid constat, et non sunt omnia simul ea,
quibus constat: plus delectant omnia quam singula,
si possint sentiri omnia. sed longe his melior qui fecit
omnia, et ipse est deus noster, et non discedit, quia
nec succeditur ei.

XII

CAP. Si placent corpora, deum ex illis lauda, et in arti-
^{XII} ficem eorum retorque amorem, ne in his, quae tibi
placent, tu dispiceas. si placent animae, in deo
amentur, quia et ipsae mutabiles sunt et illo fixae
stabiliuntur: alioquin irent et perirent. in illo ergo
amentur, et rape ad eum tecum quas potes, et dic

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

thou hast turned. Whatever by her thou hast sense CHAP.
of, is but in part : and the whole whereof these are XI
parts, thou knowest not ; and yet this little contents
thee. But had the sense of thy flesh been capable of
comprehending the whole, and not for thy punishment
been stinted to a part of the whole ; thou wouldest
have then desired that whatsoever hath existence at
this present should pass away, that so the whole might
better have pleased thee altogether. For what we
speak, by the same sense of the flesh thou hearest,
and yet wouldest not thou have the same syllables
sound ever, but fly away, that others may come on,
and thou mayest hear the whole sentence. Thus
are all these things ever in being, which have still any
one part of theirs in being, and yet all those parts
which go to the making up of that whole being, are
never all together in present being. All together
surely must needs delight more fully, than parts
single, if the pleasure of all could be felt all at once.
But far better than these all, is he that made all ;
and he is our God : nor does he depart away, for that
he hath no successor.

XII

*Love of the Creatures is not forbidden, provided that
in those which please us, God be loved*

If bodies then please thee, praise God for them, and CHAP.
turn thy love upon him that made them ; lest other- XII
wise in those things which please thee, thou dis-
please him. If souls please, let them be loved in
God : for they are mutable, but in him are they
firmly established, or else would they pass and perish.
In him therefore let them be beloved ; and draw

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

CAP. eis : "hunc amemus: ipse fecit haec et non est
^{XII} longe." non enim fecit atque abiit, sed ex illo in illo
sunt. ecce ubi est, ubi sapit veritas: intimus cordi
est, sed cor erravit ab eo. redite, p̄aevaricatores, ad
cor, et inhaerete illi, qui fecit vos. state cum eo et
stabitis, requiescite in eo et quieti eritis. quo itis in
aspera? quo itis? bonum, quod amatis, ab illo est:
sed quantum est ad illum, bonum est et suave; sed
amarum erit iuste, quia iniuste amatur deserto illo
quidquid ab illo est. quo vobis adhuc et adhuc am-
bulare vias difficiles et laboriosas? non est requies,
ubi quaeritis eam. quaerite quod quaeritis, sed ibi
non est, ubi quaeritis. beatam vitam quaeritis in
regione mortis: non est illic. quomodo enim beata
vita, ubi nec vita?

Et descendit huc ipsa vita nostra et tulit mortem nos-
tram, et occidit eam de abundantia vitae sua, et tonuit
clamans, ut redeamus hinc ad eum in illud secretum,
unde processit ad nos in ipsum primum virginalem
uterum, ubi ei nupsit humana creatura, caro mortalis,
ne semper mortal is; et inde velut sponsus procedens
de thalamo suo exultavit ut gigans ad currēdam
viam. non enim tardavit, sed cucurrit clamans dictis,
factis, morte, vita, descensu, ascensu, clamans, ut
redeamus ad eum. et discessit ab oculis, ut redeamus

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

unto him along with thee as many souls as thou canst, CHAP.
and say to them : Him let us love, let us love him.

XII

He made all these, nor is he far from them. For he did not once make them, and then get him gone : but of him, and in him they are. See where he is, even wherever is a flavour of truth. He is within the very heart, but yet hath the heart strayed from him. Turn again to your own heart, O ye trans- Is. xlvi. 8 gressors, and cleave fast unto him that made you. Stand with him, and ye shall stand safely : rest yourselves in him, and ye shall rest safely. Whither go you in these craggy passages ? Oh whither go you ? The good that you love, is from him ; and in respect of him 'tis both good and pleasant. But it shall justly be turned to bitterness, because whatsoever is from him is unjustly loved, if he be forsaken for it. Whither now wander ye further and further over these difficult and troublesome passages ? There is no rest to be found where you seek it. Seek what you do seek, but yet 'tis not there where you are seeking for it. You seek a blessed life in the land of death ; 'tis not there : for how should there be a happy life, where there is at all no life ?

But our life descended hither, and took away our death, and killed him, out of the abundance of his own life : and he thundered, calling unto us to return hence to him into that secret place, from whence he came forth to us ; coming first into the Virgin's womb, whence the humanity was married unto him, (even our mortal flesh, though not ever to be mortal) Ps. xviii. 6 and thence came he like a bridegroom out of his chamber, rejoicing as a giant to run his course. For he forslowed not, but he ran, crying both in words, deeds, death, descent, and ascension ; still crying to us to return unto him. And he withdrew himself

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. ad cor et inveniamus eum. abscessit enim et ecce
XII hic est. noluit nobiscum diu esse et non reliquit nos.
illuc enim abscessit, unde numquam recessit, quia
mundus per eum factus est, et in hoc mundo erat,
et venit in hunc mundum peccatores salvos facere.
cui confitetur anima mea, et sanat eam, quoniam
peccavit illi. fili hominum, quo usque graves corde?
numquid et post descensum vitae non vultis ascen-
dere et vivere? sed quo ascenditis, quando in alto
estis et posuistis in caelo os vestrum? descendite,
ut ascendatis, et ascendatis ad deum. cecidistis enim
ascendendo contra deum. dic eis ista, ut plorent in
convalle plorationis, et sic eos rape tecum ad deum,
quia de spiritu eius haec dicis eis, si dicis ardens igne
caritatis.

XIII

CAP. HAEc tunc non noveram, et amabam pulchra inferiora,
XIII et ibam in profundum et dicebam amicis meis:
“num amamus aliquid nisi pulchrum? quid est ergo
pulchrum? et quid est pulchritudo? quid est quod
nos allicit et conciliat rebus, quas amamus? nisi
enim esset in eis decus et species, nullo modo nos ad

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

from our eyes, that we might return to our own CHAP.
heart, and there find him. He withdrew himself, and XII
behold he is still here. He would not tarry long
with us, yet hath he not utterly left us ; for thither he
is gone, from whence he never parted, because the
world was made by him. And in this world he was,
and into this world he came to save sinners, unto
whom my soul now confesseth, and he heals it, for it
hath sinned against him. O ye sons of men, how long
will ye be slow of heart ? Will ye not now after that
life is descended down to you, will not you ascend up
to it and live ? But whither ascend you since you are
on high, and have lifted up your head into heaven ?
Descend again, that you may ascend, and ascend to
God. For fallen you are, by ascending against God.
Tell the souls whom thou lovest, thus ; that they may
weep in this valley of tears ; and so carry them up
with thee unto God, because by his Spirit thou
speakest thus unto them, if speak thou dost burning
with the fire of charity.

XIII

Love, whence it comes

THESE things I as then knew not, and I fell in love CHAP.
with these inferior beauties, and I was sinking even XIII
to the very bottom ; and unto my friends I said : Do
we love anything that is not beautiful ? Then what
is fair, and what is beauty ? What is it that inveigles
us thus, and that draws our affections to the things
we love ? For unless there were a gracefulness and
a beauty in them, they could by no means draw us

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. se moverent." et animadvertebam, et videbam in
XIII ipsis corporibus aliud esse quasi totum et ideo pul-
chrum, aliud autem, quod ideo deceret, quoniam
apte accommodaretur alicui, sicut pars corporis ad
universum suum aut calciamentum ad pedem et
similia. et ista consideratio scaturriit in animo meo
ex intimo corde meo, et scripsi libros "de pulchro et
apto," puto, duos aut tres; tu scis, deus: nam ex-
cidit mihi. non enim habemus eos, sed aberraverunt
a nobis nescio quomodo,

XIV

CAP. QUID est autem, quod me movit, domine deus meus,
XIV ut ad Hierium, Romanae urbis oratorem, scriberem
illos libros? quem non neveram facie, sed amaveram
hominem ex doctrinae fama, quae illi clara erat, et
quaedam verba eius audieram, et placuerant mihi.
sed magis, quia placebat aliis et eum efferebant
laudibus stupentes, quod ex homine Syro, docto prius
graecae facundiae, post in latina etiam dictor mira-
bilis extisset, et esset scientissimus rerum ad studium
sapientiae pertinentium, mihi placebat. laudabatur
homo et amabatur absens. utrumnam ab ore laud-
antis intrat in cor audientis amor ille? absit; sed
ex amante alio accenditur aliis. hinc enim amatetur

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

unto them. And I marked narrowly and perceived CHAP.
that in the bodies themselves there was one thing XIII
as it were the whole, which in that respect was
beautiful, and another thing that was therefore be-
coming, because it was aptly fitted to some thing,
as some part of the body, in respect of the whole
body, or a shoe in respect of the foot, and the like.
And this consideration sprang up in my mind even
out of the innermost of my heart, and I composed
certain books on the Beautiful and the Fitting, two
or three as I think. Thou knowest it, O Lord, for
'tis out of my memory. For I have them not now by
me, but lost they are, and I know not how.

XIV

Of his Book of Fair and Fit

WHAT was the cause, O Lord my God, that moved CHAP.
me to dedicate unto Hierius an Orator of Rome, XIV
these books of mine? whom as then I so much as
knew not by face, but upon love to the man merely
for the face of his learning, which was eminent in
him, and some words of his that I had heard, which
very well pleased me. But rather did he please
me, for that he pleased others, who highly extolled him, admiring much that a Syrian born,
brought up first in the Greek eloquence, should afterwards prove so wonderful a master in the Latin
also: being above all this, a most knowing man in
all the studies that pertain unto wisdom. He was
commended and loved even when he was absent.
Doth then this love enter the heart of the hearer
immediately from the mouth of the praiser? Nothing
so. But by one lover is another inflamed. Hence

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. qui laudatur, dum non fallaci corde laudatoris praedicti
XIV cari creditur, id est cum amans eum laudat.

Sic enim tunc amabam homines ex hominum iudicio; non enim ex tuo, deus meus, in quo nemo fallitur. sed tamen cur non sicut auriga nobilis, sicut venator studiis popularibus diffamatus, sed longe aliter et graviter, et ita, quemadmodum et me laudari vellem? non autem vellem ita laudari et amari me ut histriones, quamquam eos et ipse laudarem et amarem, sed eligens latere quam ita notus esse, et vel haberi odio quam sic amari. ubi distribuuntur ista pondera variorum et diversorum amorum in anima una? quid est, quod amo in alio, quod rursus nisi odissem, non a me detestarer et repellerem, cum sit uterque nostrum homo? non enim sicut equus bonus amatur ab eo qui nollet hoc esse, etiamsi posset, hoc et de histrione dicendum est, qui naturae nostrarae socius est. ergone amo in homine quod odi esse, cum sim homo? grande profundum est ipse homo, cuius etiam capillos tu, domine, numeratos habes et non minuuntur in te: et tamen capilli eius magis numerabiles quam affectus eius et motus cordis eius.

At ille rhetor ex eo erat genere, quem sic amabam, ut esse me vellem talem; et errabam tyfo, et circumferebar omni vento, et nimis occulte gubernabar

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

comes it that he is oft loved who is heard com- CHAP.
mended, when, namely, his worth is believed to be XIV
truly set forth by the unfeigned heart of the com-
mender ; that is, when he that loves him praises him.

Thus then loved I men, upon the judgment of men, but not upon thine, O my God, in which no man is deceived. But yet why not as that notable charioteer or huntsman, so famously spoken of by our vulgar affections ? No, but far otherwise and more seriously, and even as I would desire to be myself commended. For I would by no means have myself or commended or loved, in that kind that stage-players are, (though I myself did sometimes both command and love them) but I would choose rather to have lived concealed, than to be known that way ; and to be hated, than in that kind to be beloved. Where now are these overswayings of such various and divers kinds of loves distributed in one soul ? What is it that I am in love with in another man ? And what again is it, that did I not hate him for, I should not detest and keep him out of my company, seeing we are men either of us ? For the comparison holds not, that as a good horse is loved by him, who would not yet be that horse, no not though he might ; the same should likewise be affirmed of a stage-player, who is a fellow in nature with us. Do I therefore love that in a man, which I hate to be, seeing I am a man ? Man is a great deep, whose very hairs thou Matt. x. 30 numberest, O Lord, and they are not lost in thy sight ; and yet are the hairs of his head easier to be numbered than are his affections and the motions of his heart.

But that orator, whom I so loved, was of those that I would have wished myself to have been : and I erred through a swelling pride, and was tossed up and down with every wind, but I was governed by

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSONVM LIBER IV

CAP. abs te. et unde scio et unde certus confiteor tibi,
^{XIV} quod illum in amore laudantium magis amaveram
quam in rebus ipsis, de quibus laudabatur? quia
si non laudatum vituperarent eum idem ipsi et vitu-
perando atque spernendo ea ipsa narrarent, non
accenderer in eo et non excitarer, et certe res non
aliae forent nec homo ipse alias, sed tantummodo
alias affectus narrantium. ecce ubi iacet anima
infirma, nondum haerens soliditati veritatis. sicut
aurae linguarum flaverint a pectoribus opinantium,
ita fertur et vertitur, torquetur ac retorquetur, et
obnubilatur ei lumen et non cernitur veritas. et
ecce est ante nos. et magnum quiddam mihi erat,
si sermo meus et studia mea illi viro innotescerent:
quae si probaret, flagrarem magis; si autem impro-
baret, sauciaretur cor vanum et inane soliditatis tuae.
et tamen pulchrum illud atque aptum, unde ad eum
scripseram, libenter animo versabam ob os contem-
plationis meae, et nullo conlaudatore mirabar.

XV

CAP. SED tantae rei cardinem in arte tua nondum vide-
^{XV} bam, omnipotens, qui facis mirabilia solus, et ibat

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

thee very secretly. And how now do I know, and CHAP.
how can I upon a sure ground confess unto thee,XIV
that I loved that man more for the love of them
that commended him, than for the good parts them-
selves for which he was commended? Because if
the self same men should not have praised but dis-
praised him, and in dispraising and despising him
had they told the same things of him, I should never
have been so kindled and provoked to love him.
And certainly things would have been the same,
and the man himself not different, but only a
different feeling in the speakers. See where the
impotent soul lies along, that is not yet stayed up
by the solidity of truth! Just as the blasts of
tongues blow out of the breasts of those who think
they know, so is it carried this way and that way,
tumbled and tossed up and down, and the light is be-
clouded and it can never discern the truth. And yet
it is right before us. I conceived to purchase some
great credit by it, if my style and meditations might
but be known to that famous man; which should
he allow of, then were I more on fire, but if he dis-
approved, this vain heart of mine utterly void of thy
solidity, had been cut to the quick at it. And yet
that subject of Fair and Fit upon which I wrote to
him, my meditations gladly laboured upon, and
though I had no others to commend it, yet did I
myself admire it.

XV

*How his Understanding being overshadowed with
corporeal images, he could not discern the spiritual*

BUT I could not all this while discover the main CHAP.
point of the business in that skill of thine, O thouXV

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. animus meus per formas corporeas, et pulchrum,
^{XV} quod per se ipsum, aptum autem, quod ad aliquid
adcommodatum deceret, definiebam et distinguebam
et exemplis corporeis adstruebam. et converti me
ad animi naturam, et non me sinebat falsa opinio,
quam de spiritualibus habebam, verum cernere. et
inruebat in oculos ipsa vis veri, et avertebam pal-
pitantem mentem ab incorporeo re ad liniamenta
et colores et tumentes magnitudines, et quia non
poteram ea videre in animo, putabam me non posse
videre animum meum. et cum in virtute pacem
amarem, in vitiositate autem odissem discordiam, in
illa unitatem, in ista quandam divisionem notabam,
inque illa unitate mens rationalis et natura veritatis
ac summi boni mihi esse videbatur: in ista vero
divisione irrationalis vitae nescio quam substantiam,
et naturam summi mali, quae non solum esset sub-
stantia, sed omnino vita esset, et tamen abs te non
esset, deus meus, ex quo sunt omnia, miser opinabar.
et illam monadem appellabam tamquam sine ullo
sexu mentem, hanc vero dyadem, iram in facinoribus,
libidinem in flagitiis, nesciens quid loquerer. non
enim noveram neque didiceram nec ullam sub-
stantiam malum esse, nec ipsam mentem nostram
summum atque incommutabile bonum.

Sicut enim facinora sunt, si vitiosus est ille animi
motus, in quo est impetus, et se iactat insolenter ac

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

Omnipotent who only dost great wonders; and CHAP.
my conceit ranged through corporeal forms: and I XV
defined and distinguished as fair, what is so, abso-
lutely of itself; and fit, which becomes graceful when
applied to some other thing: and confirmed my
argument by corporeal examples. I set my studies
afterwards to consider of the nature of the soul,
but that false opinion which I had already enter-
tained concerning spiritual matters, would not let
me discover the truth, yet the force of truth did
ever and anon flash into mine eyes, but I turned
away my panting soul from all incorporeal substances,
setting it upon lineaments, and colours, and swelling
quantities. And for that I was not able to see all
these in my soul, I verily believed that I could not
see that soul of mine. And whereas in virtue I
loved peace, and in viciousness I abhorred discord: in
the first I observed an unity, but division ever to
be in this. And in that unity, I conceived to be the
rational intelligence, and the nature both of truth
and of our chiefest goodness: but in this division,
silly I imagined, I know not what substance of an
irrational life, and the nature of the greatest evil,
which should not only be a substance, but a very
true life also, and yet not at all depend on thee, O
my God, of whom are all things. And yet that
first I called Unity, as if it had been a soul without
sex; but the latter I styled a Duality, which should
be anger in cruelties, and lust in impurities; not
knowing what I talked of. For I had not as yet
either known or learned, that neither was evil a
substance, or that our own soul was not that chiefest
and unchangeable good.

For even as crimes are done, if so be that motion
of the soul in which the force of the appetite now is,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. turbide, et flagitia, si est inmoderata illa animae affectio,
^{XV} qua carnales hauriuntur voluptates, ita errores et falsae opiniones vitam contaminant, si rationalis mens ipsa vitiosa est. qualis in me tunc erat, nesciente alio lumine illam inlustrandam esse, ut sit particeps veritatis, quia non est ipsa natura veritatis, quoniam tu inluminabis lucernam meam, domine; deus meus, inluminabis tenebras meas, et de plenitudine tua omnes nos accepimus. es enim tu lumen verum, quod inluminat omnem hominem venientem in hunc mundum, quia in te non est transmutatio nec momenti obumbratio.

Sed ego conabar ad te et repellebar abs te, ut saperem mortem, quoniam superbis resistis. quid autem superbius, quam ut assererem mira dementia me id esse naturaliter, quod tu es? cum enim ego essem mutabilis, et eo mihi manifestum esset, quod utique ideo sapiens esse cupiebam, ut ex deteriore melior fierem, malebam tamen etiam te opinari mutabilem, quam me non hoc esse, quod tu es. itaque repellebar, et resistebas ventosae cervici meae, et imaginabar formas corporeas, et caro carnem accusabam et spiritus ambulans non revertebar ad te, et ambulando ambulabam in ea, quae non sunt neque in te neque in me neque in corpore, neque mihi creabantur a veritate tua, sed a mea vanitate fingebantur ex corpore, et dicebam parvulis fidelibus tuis, civibus

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

be corrupted, stirring itself insolently and unrulily : CHAP.
and vices arise, when that affection of the soul by XV
which carnal pleasures are taken into resolution,
be immoderate : thus do errors and false opinions
defile the life, if so be that the reasonable soul itself
be viciously disposed. So it was in me at that time,
when I was utterly ignorant that it must be en-
lightened by another light, to make it partaker of the
truth, since it is not itself the essence of truth. For
thou shalt light my candle, O Lord my God, thou Ps. xviii. 29
shalt enlighten my darkness : and of thy fulness have John i. 16,
we all received ; for thou art the true Light that i. 9
lighteth every man that cometh into the world ; for
that in thee there is no variableness, neither shadow
of change.

But I pressed towards thee, and was as fast thrust
from thee, that I might taste of death : for thou re-
sistest the proud. And what could be prouder, than
for me with a wonderful madness to maintain myself
to be that by nature which thou thyself art ? For
whereas myself was mutable, (so much appearing
manifestly unto me, in that I became so ambitious
to grow wiser, that of worse I might so prove better;) yet chose I rather to imagine thee to be mutable,
than myself not to be that which thou wert. Therefore gavest thou me the repulse, and thou resistedst
my inconsistent stiff-neckedness, and I fancied to
myself certain corporeal forms, and being flesh, I accused flesh ; and being a wayfaring spirit, I did
not turn towards thee, but went nuddling on and on
towards those fancies which have no being, neither
in thee, nor in me, nor in anybody, nor were
created for me by thy truth, but devised merely by
mine own vain conceit, fancying out a body. And
I demanded of thy faithful little ones, my fellow

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. meis, a quibus nesciens exulabam, dicebam illis gar-
^{XV} rulus et ineptus : “ cur ergo errat anima, quam fecit
deus ? ” et mihi nolebam dici : “ cur ergo errat
deus ? ” et contendebam magis inconmutabilem tuam
substantiam coactam errare, quam meam mutabilem
sponte deviasse, et poena errare confitebar.

Et eram aetate annorum fortasse viginti sex aut
septem, cum illa volumina scripsi, volvens apud me
corporalia figura obstrependia cordis mei auribus,
quas intendebam, dulcis veritas, in interiore melo-
diam tuam, cogitans de pulchro et apto, et stare cupiens
et audire te et gaudio gaudere propter vocem sponsi,
et non poteram, quia vocibus erroris mei rapiebar
foras, et pondere superbiae meae in ima decidebam.
non enim dabas auditui meo gaudium et laetitiam,
aut exultabant ossa, quae humiliata non erant.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

citizens, (from whom unbeknowing to myself I stood exiled) I put the question to them I say, (prating and foolish man that I was !) Why therefore doth the soul err, which God hath created ? But I would not that any one should demand of me, Why therefore doth God err ? And I stiffly maintained, that thy unchangeable substance rather did err upon constraint, than be brought to confess mine own changeable substance to have gone astray voluntarily, or that my error was my punishment.

CHAP.
XV

I was at that time perchance six or seven and twenty years old, when I composed those volumes ; canvassing up and down with myself these corporeal fictions, which were still buzzing in the ears of my heart, (which ears I was straining rather, O sweet truth, to hearken after thy inward melody) plodding all this time upon my Fair and Fit, and desiring to stand, and to hearken to thee, and to rejoice exceedingly at the voice of thy Spouse, but could not bring myself to it ; for by the calls of mine own errors, I was drawn out of myself, and oppressed with the weight of mine own proud conceit, I sunk into the lowest pit. For thou didst not make me to hear joy and gladness, nor did my bones rejoice, for they were not yet humbled.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

XVI

CAP. Et quid mihi proderat, quod annos natus ferme
^{XVI} viginti, cum in manus meas venissent Aristotelica
quaedam, quas appellant decem categorias—quarum
nomine, cum eas rhetor Carthaginiensis, magister
meus, buccis typho crepantibus commemoraret et alii
qui docti habebantur, tamquam in nescio quid magnum
et divinum suspensus inhiabam—legi eas solus et intel-
lexi? quas cum contulissesem cum eis, qui se dicebant vix
eas, magistris eruditissimis non loquentibus tantum,
sed multa in pulvere depingentibus, intellexisse, nihil
inde aliud mihi dicere potuerunt, quam ego solus apud
me ipsum legens cognoveram; et satis aperte mihi
videbantur loquentes de substantiis, sicuti est homo,
et quae in illis essent, sicuti est figura hominis, qualis
sit, et statura, quot pedum sit, aut cognatio, cuius
frater sit, aut ubi sit constitutus aut quando natus,
aut stet an sedeat, aut calciatus vel armatus sit, aut
aliquid faciat aut patiatur aliquid, et quaecumque in
his novem generibus, quorum exempli gratia quaedam
posui, vel in ipso substantiae genere innumerabilia
reperiuntur.

Quid hoc mihi proderat, quando et obserbat, cum
etiam te, deus meus, mirabiliter simplicem atque .

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

XVI

The admirable Aptness to Learning, and the great Understanding St. Augustine had

AND what was I the better for it, when scarce twenty CHAP.
years old, that book of Aristotle's Ten Categories falling into my hands, (of which my rhetoric master of Carthage, and others esteemed very good scholars, would be cracking with full mouths,) I earnestly and with such suspense gaped upon it at first, as upon I know not what deep and divine piece ; but read it over afterwards, yea, and attained the understanding of it, by myself alone ? And comparing my notes afterwards with theirs, who protesting how hardly they gat to understand the book from very able tutors, not dictating to them only by word of mouth, but taking pains also to delineate out in the dust the schemes and demonstrations of it ; they could teach me no more of it, than I had observed before upon mine own reading. And it seemed plain enough to my capacity, when they discoursed of substances, such as man is, and of the accidents inhering to these substances ; as for example, the figure of a man, how qualified he was, and of what shape and stature, how many foot high, and his relation to his kindred, whose brother he is, or where placed, or when born, or whether he stands or sits, or be shod or armed, or does or suffers anything : and whatsoever was to be learned besides in these nine classes, of which I have given these former examples ; or these other innumerable observations in that chief class of substance.

What now did all this further me, seeing withal it as much hindered me whenas I took pains to

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER IV

CAP. incommutabilem, illis decem praedicamentis putans
XVI quidquid esset omnino comprehensum, sic intellegere conarer, quasi et tu subiectum essem magnitudini tuae aut pulchritudini, ut illa essent in te quasi in subiecto, sicut in corpore: cum tua magnitudo et tua pulchritudo tu ipse sis, corpus autem non eo sit magnum et pulchrum, quo corpus est, quia etsi minus magnum et minus pulchrum esset, nihilominus corpus esset? falsitas enim erat, quam de te cogitabam, non veritas, et figmenta miseriae meae, non firmamenta beatitudinis tuae. iusseras enim, et ita fiebat in me, ut terra spinas et tribolos pareret mihi, et cum labore pervenirem ad panem meum.

Et quid mihi proderat, quod omnes libros artium, quas liberales vocant, tunc nequissimus malarum cupiditatum servus per me ipsum legi et intellexi, quoscumque legere potui? et gaudebam in eis, et nesciebam, unde esset quidquid ibi verum et certum esset. dorsum enim habebam ad lumen, et ad ea, quae inluminantur, faciem: unde ipsa facies mea, qua inluminata cernebam, non inluminabatur. quidquid de arte loquendi et disserendi, quidquid de dimensionibus figurarum et de musicis et de numeris, sine magna difficultate nullo hominum tradente intellexi, scis tu, domine deus meus, quia et celeritas intellegendi et dispiciendi acumen donum tuum est. sed non inde

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

understand thee; O my God (whose essence is most CHAP.
wonderfully simple and unchangeable): imagining ^{XVI} whatsoever had being, to be comprehended under those ten Predicaments; as if thyself had been subject to thine own greatness or beauty; and that these two had an inherence in thee, like accidents in their subject, or as in a body: whereas thy greatness and beauty is in thy essence; but a body is not great or fair in that regard as it is a body, seeing that though it were less great or fair, yet should it be a body notwithstanding. But it was a mere falsehood which of thee I had conceived, and no truth; a very fiction of mine own foolery, and no solid ground of thy happiness. For thou hadst given forth the command, and so it came to pass in me, that my earth should bring forth briars and thorns Gen. iii. 18 in me, and that in the sweat of my brow I should eat my bread.

And what was I the better, that I, the vile slave to wicked affections, read over by myself, and understood all the books of those sciences which they call liberal, as many as I could cast mine eyes upon? And that I took great delight in them, but knew not all this while whence all that came, whatsoever was true or certain in them? For I stood with my back to the light, and with my face towards these things which receive that light; and therefore my face, with which I discerned these things that were illuminated, was not in itself illuminated. Whatever was written, either of the art of rhetoric, of logic, whatever of geometry, music, and arithmetic, I attained the understanding of by myself without any great difficulty, or any instructor at all, as thou knowest, O Lord my God; even because the quickness of conceiving, and the sharpness of disputing is thy

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. sacrificabam tibi. itaque mihi non ad usum, sed ad
XVI perniciem magis valebat, quia tam bonam partem
substantiae meae sategi habere in potestate, et forti-
tudinem meam non ad te custodiebam, sed profectus
sum abs te in longinquam regionem, ut eam dissim-
parem in meretrices cupiditates. nam quid mihi
proderat bona res non utenti bene? non enim
sentiebam illas artes etiam ab studiosis et ingeniosis
difficillime intellegi, nisi cum eis eadem conabar ex-
ponere, et erat ille excellentissimus in eis, qui me
exponentem non tardius sequeretur.

Sed quid mihi hoc proderat putanti, quod tu,
domine deus veritas, corpus essem lucidum et in-
mensum, et ego frustum de illo corpore? nimia
perversitas! sed sic eram; nec erubesco, deus meus,
confiteri tibi in me misericordias tuas et invocare te,
qui non erubui tunc profiteri hominibus blasphemias
meas, et latrare adversum te. quid ergo tunc mihi
proderat ingenium, per illas doctrinas agile, et nullo
adminiculo humani magisterii tot nodosissimi libri
enodati, cum deformiter et sacrilega turpitudine in
doctrina pietatis errarem? aut quid tantum oberat
parvulis tuis longe tardius ingenium; cum a te longe
non recederent, ut in nido ecclesiae tuae tuti plu-
mescerent, et alas caritatis alimento sanae fidei
nutriren? o domine deus noster, in velamento
alarum tuarum speremus, et protege nos et porta

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

gift : and yet did I not sacrifice any part of it to thee. CHAP.
All this therefore served not me to any good em- XVI
ployment, but to my destruction rather, since I went
about to get so good a part of my portion into mine
own custody ; and I preserved not mine own abili-
ties entire for thy service, but wandered into a far
country, to spend it there upon my harlotries. For
what good did it me to have good abilities, and not
employ them to good uses ? For I understood not
that those arts were attained with difficulty, even
by those that were very studious and intelligent
scholars, until that myself going about to interpret
them in others' hearing, he was held the most ex-
cellent at them, who was able to follow me with
least slowness.

But what did all this benefit me, thinking all this
while that thou, O Lord God of Truth, wert nothing
but a vast and bright body, and myself some piece
of that body ? O extreme perverseness ! But in
that case was I then ; nor do I blush, O my God,
to confess thy mercies towards me, and to call upon
thee, who blushed not then openly to profess before
men mine own blasphemies, and to bark against
thee. What good did then my nimble wit, able to
run over all those sciences, and all those most knotty
volumes, made easy to me without help or light from
any tutor : seeing that I erred so foully, and with
so much sacrilegious shamefulness in the doctrine
of piety ? Or what hindrance was a far slower wit
to thy little ones ; seeing they straggled not so far
from thee, but that in the nest of thy Church they
might securely plume themselves, and nourish the
wings of charity, by the food of solid faith ? O
Lord our God, under the shadow of thy wings let us
hope ! Defend thou, and carry us. Thou wilt carry

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER IV

CAP. nos. tu portabis, tu portabis et parvulos et usque ad
XVI canos tu portabis: quoniam firmitas nostra quando
tu es, tunc est firmitas, cum autem nostra est, in-
firmitas est. vivit apud te semper bonum nostrum,
et quia inde aversi sumus, perversi sumus. revert-
amur iam, domine, ut non evertamur, quia vivit
apud te sine ullo defectu bonum nostrum,
quod tu ipse es: et non timemus, ne
non sit quo redeamus, quia nos
inde ruimus; nobis autem
absentibus non ruit do-
mus nostra, aeter-
nitas tua.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK IV

us, thou wilt so, both while we are little and until we CHAP.
are greyheaded : for our weakness, when 'tis from ^{XVI} thee, then is our strength ; but when 'tis of ourselves, then it is weakness indeed. Our good still lives with thee ; from which because we are averse, therefore are we perverse. Let us now at last, O Lord, return, that we do not overturn : because with thee our good lives without any defect, which good thou art. We shall not need to fear finding a place to return unto, because we fell headlong from it ; for however we have been long absent from thence, yet that house of ours shall not fall down, and that is thy Eternity.

BOOK V

LIBER QVINTVS

I

CAP. ACCIPE sacrificium confessionum mearum de manu
linguae meae, quam formasti et excitasti, ut confiteatur nomini tuo, et sana omnia ossa mea, et dicant: domine, quis similis tibi? neque enim docet te, quid in se agatur, qui tibi confitetur; quia oculum tuum non excludit cor clausum, nec manum tuam repellit duritia hominum: sed solvis eam, cum voles, aut miserans aut vindicans, et non est qui se abscondat a calore tuo. sed te laudet anima mea, ut amet te, et confiteatur tibi miserationes tuas, ut laudet te. non cessat nec tacet laudes tuas universa creatura tua, nec spiritus omnis hominis per os conversum ad te; nec animalia nec corporalia per os considerantium ea: ut exsurgat in te a lassitudine anima nostra, innitens eis, quae fecisti, et adtransiens ad te, qui fecisti haec mirabiliter: et ibi refectio et vera fortitudo.

THE FIFTH BOOK

I

He stirs his own Soul to praise God

RECEIVE here the sacrifice of confessions from the CHAP.
hand of my tongue, which thou hast formed and ^I
stirred up to confess unto thy name. Heal thou all
my bones and let them say, O Lord, Who is like unto ^{Ps. xxxv.}
thee? For neither does a man teach thee what is ¹⁰
done within himself when he confesses to thee; seeing a closed heart shuts not out thy eye, nor can
man's hard-heartedness thrust back thy hand: for
thou openest it when thou pleasest, either out of
pity or justice to us, and there is nothing can hide
itself from thy heat. But let my soul praise thee ^{Ps. xix. 6}
that it may love thee, and let it confess thine own
mercies to thee that it may praise thee. Thy whole
creation is never slack or silent in thy praises, nor the
spirit of any man by the praise of his mouth con-
verted to thee; no nor yet any animal or corporeal
creature, by the mouths of those that well consider
of them: that so our soul may toward thee rouse
itself up from weariness, leaning itself on those
things which thou hast created, and passing over to
thyself, who hast made them so wonderfully; where
refreshment and true fortitude is.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

II

CAP. EANT et fugiant a te inquieti iniqui. et tu vides eos
II et distinguis umbras, et ecce pulchra sunt cum eis
omnia, et ipsi turpes sunt. et quid nocuerunt tibi ?
aut in quo imperium tuum dehonestaverunt, a caelis
usque in novissima iustum et integrum ? quo enim
fugerunt, cum fugerent a facie tua ? aut ubi tu non
invenis eos ? sed fugerunt, ut non viderent te viden-
tem se, atque excaecati in te offenderent—quia non
deseris aliquid eorum, quae fecisti—in te offenderent
iniusti et iuste vexarentur, subtrahentes se lenitati
tuae, et offendentes in rectitudinem tuam, et cadentes
in asperitatem tuam. videlicet nesciunt, quod ubique
sis, quem nullus circuminscribit locus, et solus es
praesens etiam his, qui longe fiunt a te. convertan-
tur ergo et quaerant te, quia non, sicut ipsi deserue-
runt creatorem suum, ita tu deseruisti creaturam
tuam. ipsi convertantur, et ecce ibi es in corde
eorum, in corde confitentium tibi, et proicientium se
in te, et plorantium in sinu tuo post vias suas diffi-
ciles : et tu facilis tergens lacrimas eorum, et magis
plorant et gaudent in fletibus, quoniam tu, domine,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

II

God's presence can no man avoid, seeing he is everywhere

LET unquiet naughty people run and flee from thee CHAP.
as fast as they will; yet thou seest them well II
enough, and canst distinguish of shadows: and
behold, all seems gay to them, meanwhile themselves
be deformed. And what wrong have they done thee
by it, or how have they disparaged thy government,
which from the highest heavens to this lowest earth,
is most just and perfect? But whether are they fled, Ps. cxxxix.
when they fled from thy presence? Or in what 7
corner shalt thou not find them out? But they ran
away that they might not see thee, who well sawest
them, that being so blindfolded, they might stumble
upon thee, because thou forsakest nothing that thou
hast made; that the unjust, I say, might stumble
upon thee, and be justly vexed at it; withdrawing
themselves from thy lenity, and stumbling at thy
justice, to fall foul upon thy severity. Little know
they in truth, that thou art everywhere, whom no
place encompasses, and that thou alone art ever near,
even to those that set themselves furthest from thee.
Let them therefore be turned back, and seek thee;
because as they have forsaken thee their Creator,
thou hast not so given over thy creature. Let them
be turned back; and behold, thou art there in their
heart, in the heart of those that confess thee, and
that cast themselves upon thee, and that pour forth
their tears in thy bosom, after all their tedious wander-
ings. Then shalt thou most gently wipe away their
tears, and they do weep the more, yea, and delight in
their weeping; even for that thou, O Lord, and not any

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. non aliquis homo, caro et sanguis, sed tu, domine,
II qui fecisti, reficis et consolaris eos. et ubi ego eram,
quando te quaerebam? et tu eras ante me, ego
autem et a me discesseram nec me inveniebam:
quanto minus te!

III

CAP. PROLOQUOR in conspectu dei mei annum illum unde-
III tricensimum aetatis meae. iam venerat Carthaginem
quidam Manichaeorum episcopus, Faustus nomine,
magnus laqueus diaboli, et multi inplacabantur in
eo per inlecebram suaviloquentiae. quam ego iam
tametsi laudabam, discernebam tamen a veritate
rerum, quarum discendarum avidus eram, nec quali
vasculo sermonis, sed quid mihi scientiae comedendū
adponeret nominatus apud eos ille Faustus
intuebar. fama enim de illo praelocuta mihi erat,
quod esset honestarum omnium doctrinarum peri-
tissi muset adprime disciplinis liberalibus eruditus.

Et quoniam multa philosophorum legeram, memo-
riæ que mandata retinebam, ex eis quaedam compara-
bam illis Manichaeorum longis fabulis: et mihi proba-
bilia ista videbantur, quae dixerunt illi, qui tantum
potuerunt valere, ut possent aestimare saeculum,
quamquam eius dominum minime invenerint. quo-
niam magnus es, domine, et humilia respicis, excelsa

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

man of flesh and blood, but thou Lord, who madest CHAP.
them, canst refresh and comfort them. But where- II
abouts was I, when I sought after thee? Thou wert
directly before me, but I had gone back from thee;
nor did I then find myself, much less thee.

III

Of Faustus the Manichee : and of Astrologies

I LAY open before my God that nine and twentieth CHAP.
year of mine age. There came in those days unto III
Carthage a certain Bishop of the Manichees, Faustus
by name: a great snare of the Devil he was, and
many were entangled by him in that gin of his smooth
language: which though myself did much commend
in him, yet I was able to discern betwixt it, and the
truth of those things which I then was earnest to
learn: nor had I an eye so much to the curious dish of
oratory, as what substance of science their so famous
Faustus set before me to feed upon. Report had be-
forehand highly spoken of him to me; as, that he was
a most knowing man in all points of honest learning,
and exquisitely skilled in all the liberal sciences.

And for that I had sometimes read many books of
the philosophers, and had fresh in memory much of
theirs; I presently fell to compare some points of
theirs to those long fables of the Manichees: and
those things verily which the philosophers had taught,
(who could only prevail so far as to make judgment
of this lower world, though the Lord of it they could
by no means find out) seemed far more probable unto
me. For great art thou, O Lord, and hast respect Ps. cxxxviii.
unto the humble, but the proud thou beholdest afar 6

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP. autem a longe agnoscis : nec propinquas nisi obtritis
III corde, nec inveniris a superbis, nec si illi curiosa

peritia numerent stellas et harenam, et dimetiantur
sidereas plagas, et vestigent vias astrorum. mente
sua enim quaerunt ista et ingenio, quod tu dedisti
eis, et multa invenerunt, et praenuntiaverunt ante
multos annos defectus luminarium solis et lunae,
quo die, qua hora, quanta ex parte futuri essent,
et non eos fefellit numerus. et ita factum est, ut
praenuntiaverunt; et scripserunt regulas indagatas,
et leguntur hodie; atque ex eis praenuntiatur, quo
anno et quo mense anni et quo die mensis et qua
hora diei et quota parte luminis sui defectura sit
luna vel sol: et ita fiet, ut praenuntiatur. et
mirantur haec homines et stupent, qui nesciunt
ea, et exultant atque extolluntur qui sciunt, et per
impiam superbiam recedentes, et deficientes a lumine
tuo, tanto ante solis defectum futurum praevident, et
in praesentia suum non vident—non enim religiose
quaerunt, unde habeant ingenium, quo ista quaerunt—
et invenientes, quia tu fecisti eos, non ipsi se dant tibi,
se, ut serves quod fecisti, et quales se ipsi fecerant
occidunt se tibi, et trucidant exaltationes suas sicut
volatilia, et curiositates suas sicut pisces maris, quibus
perambulant secretas semitas abyssi, et luxurias suas

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

off. Nor dost thou draw near, but to the contrite in CHAP.
heart, nor art thou found by those that be proud, no, ^{III}
not though they had the curious skill to number the
stars and the sand, and to quarter out the houses
of the heavenly constellations, and to find out the
courses of the planets. For with their understanding
and wit, which thou bestowedst on them, do they
search out these things : much they have found out,
and foretold many a year, before the eclipses of the
lights of the sun and moon, what day and what hour,
and how many digits they should be so, nor hath
their calculation failed them : and just thus came all
to pass as they foretold ; and they committed to
writing the rules found out by them, which are read
this day, and out of them do others foretell in what
year, and month of the year, and what day of the
month, and what hour of the day, and what part
of its light, the moon or the sun is to be eclipsed :
and so it shall come to pass as it is foreshewed.
At these things men wonder and are astonished,
that know not this art ; and they that know it,
triumph and are extolled ; and out of a wicked pride
turning back from thee, failing thereby of thy light,
they foresee an eclipse of the sun so long beforehand,
but perceive not their own which they suffer in the
present. For they enquire not religiously enough
from whence they are enabled with the wit to seek
all this withal : and finding that 'tis thou that made
them, they resign not themselves up unto thee, that
thou mayest preserve what thou hast made, nor do
they kill in sacrifice unto thee, what they have made
themselves to be ; nor slay their own exalted imagina-
tions, like as the fowls of the air ; and their own Ps. viii. 8
curiosities, like as the fishes of the sea, in which they
wander over the unknown paths of the bottomless

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. sicut pecora campi, ut tu, deus, ignis edax, consumas
III mortuas curas eorum, recreans eos immortaliter.

Sed non neverunt viam, verbum tuum, per quod fecisti ea quae numerant, et ipsos qui numerant, et sensum, quo cernunt quae numerant, et mentem, de qua numerant; et sapientiae tuae non est numerus. ipse autem unigenitus factus est nobis sapientia et iustitia et sanctificatio, et numeratus est inter nos, et solvit tributum Caesari. non neverunt hanc viam, qua descendant ad illum a se, et per eum ascendant ad eum. non neverunt hanc viam, et putant se excelsos esse cum sideribus et lucidos, et ecce ruerunt in terram, et obscuratum est insipiens cor eorum. et multa vera de creatura dicunt, et veritatem, creaturae artificem, non pie quaerunt, et ideo non inveniunt, aut si inveniunt, cognoscentes deum, non sicut deum honorant, aut gratias agunt, et evanescunt in cogitationibus suis, et dicunt se esse sapientes sibi tribuendo quae tua sunt, ac per hoc student perversissima cæcitate etiam tibi tribuere quae sua sunt, mendacia scilicet in te conferentes, qui veritas es, et immutantes gloriam incorrupti dei in similitudinem imaginis corruptibilis hominis et volucrum et quadrupedum et serpentium, et convertunt veritatem tuam in mendacium, et colunt et serviunt creaturae potius quam creatori.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

pit ; and their own luxuriousness, like as the beasts CHAP.
of the field ; that thou Lord, who art a consuming ^{III} fire, mayest burn up those dead cares of theirs, and Deut. iv. 24
renew themselves immortally.

But they know not that way, (thy Word) by which thou madest these things which themselves can calculate, and the calculators themselves, and the sense by which they see what they number, and the understanding, out of which they do number it : and of thy wisdom there is no number. But the Only Begotten himself is made unto us Wisdom, and ^{1 Cor. i. 30} Righteousness, and Sanctification, and was numbered as one of us, and paid tribute unto Caesar. This way have not these men known, by which they should descend from themselves unto him, and by him again ascend unto him. They verily know not this way, and they conceit themselves to move in an high orb, and to shine amongst the stars ; whereas behold they grovel upon the ground, and their foolish heart ^{Rom. i. 21} is darkened. They discourse truly of many things concerning the creature ; but the truth, the Architect of the creature, they do not religiously seek after ; and therefore do they not find him. Or if they do find him, acknowledging him to be God, yet they glorify ^{Rom. i. 21} him not as God, neither are thankful, but become vain in their imaginations. They give out themselves to be wise, attributing thy works unto their skill : and in this humour with a most perverse blindness, study they on the other side to impute to thee their own follies ; entitling thee, who art the Truth itself, unto their lies ; changing thus the glory of the un- ^{Rom. i. 23,} corruptible God into an image like to corruptible man, and to birds, and to four-footed beasts, and creeping things : changing thy truth into a lie, and serving the creature more than the Creator. ²⁵

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. Multa tamen ab eis ex ipsa creatura vera dicta
III retinebam, et occurrebat mihi ratio per numeros et
ordinem temporum et visibiles attestations siderum,
et conferebam cum dictis Manichaei, quae de his rebus
multa scripsit copiosissime delirans, et non mihi
occurrebat ratio nec solistitorum et aequinoctiorum
nec defectuum luminarium nec quidquid tale in libris
saecularis sapientiae didiceram. ibi autem credere
iubebat, et ad illas rationes numeris et oculis meis
exploratas non occurrebat, et longe diversum erat.

IV

CAP. NUMQUID, domine deus veritatis, quisquis novit ista,
IV iam placet tibi? infelix enim homo, qui scit illa
omnia, te autem nescit; beatus autem, qui te scit,
etiamsi illa nesciat. qui vero et te et illa novit, non
propter illa beatior, sed propter te solum beatus est,
si cognoscens te, sicut te glorificet, et gratias agat et
non evanescat in cogitationibus suis. sicut enim
melior, qui novit possidere arborem et de usu eius
tibi gratias agit, quamvis nesciat vel quot cubitis alta
sit vel quanta latitudine diffusa, quam ille, qui eam
metitur et omnes ramos eius numerat et neque
216

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

But yet divers observations concerning the creature truly delivered by these philosophers, did I retain in memory, yea, and I found there a reasonable explanation by calculations, the order of times, and the visible testimonies of the stars: and all this I compared with the sayings of Manichaeus, who had written much of these subjects, doting most abundantly; but I found there no reason either of the solstices, or equinoxes, or of the eclipses of the greater lights, nor of any such point as I had learned in the books of secular philosophy. But in his writings was I commanded to believe all, but it did not answer unto those reasons, which had been found true, both by mine own calculatings and eyesight; from all which his was quite contrary.

IV

Only the Knowledge of God makes happy

TELL me, O Lord God of Truth, is whosoever is skilful in these philosophical things thereby acceptable unto thee? Surely most unhappy is the man that knows all these things, and is ignorant of thee: but happy is he that knows thee, though ignorant of these. And he that knows both thee and them, is not the happier for them, but for thee only; upon condition that as he knows thee, so he glorifies thee as thou art, and is thankful, and becomes not vain in his own imaginations. For as he is better that knows how to possess a tree, and returns thanks unto thee for the commodities of it, although he knows not how many cubits high it rises, or how broad it spreads; than he that hath the skill to measure it, and keeps

IV

Rom. i. 21

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP. possidet eam, neque creatorem eius novit aut diligit;
^{IV} sic fidelis homo, cuius totus mundus divitiarum est, et
quasi nihil habens omnia possidet inhaerendo tibi,
cui serviunt omnia, quamvis nec saltem septentrionum
gyros noverit, dubitare stultum est, quin utique melior
sit quam mensor caeli et numerator siderum et pensor
elementorum, et neglegens tui, qui omnia in mensura
et numero et pondere disposuisti.

V

CAP. ^V SED tamen quis quaerebat Manichaeum nescio quem
etiam ista scribere, sine quorum peritia pietas disci
poterat? dixisti enim homini: ecce pietas est sapientia.
quam ille ignorare posset, etiamsi ista perfecte
nosset: ista vero quia non noverat, impudentissime
audens docere, prorsus illam nosse non posset.
vanitas est enim mundana ista etiam nota profiteri,
pietas autem tibi confiteri. unde ille devius ad hoc
ista multum locutus est, ut convictus ab eis, qui ista
vere didicissent, quis esset eius sensus in ceteris,
quae abditiora sunt, manifeste cognosceretur. non
218

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

an account of all the boughs of it, and is neither owner of it, nor knows nor loves him that created it : even so, a faithful man, whose right all this world of wealth is, and who having nothing, yet doth as it were possess all things, even by cleaving unto thee, to whom all things serve, though he knows not so much as the circles of the north, yet it is folly to doubt but he is in better estate than he that can quarter out the heavens and number the stars, and poises the elements, and yet is negligent of thee, who hast made all things in number, weight, and measure.

CHAP.
IV
Wisdom
xi. 20

V

The rashness of Faustus, in teaching what he knew not

BUT yet who requested I know not what Manichean to write even these things, without the skill of which true piety might well have been learned ? For thou hast said unto man, Behold, piety is wisdom ; of which the Manichean might be utterly ignorant, though perfect at the knowledge of these things : but these things because he knew not, most impudently daring to teach them, he was not able plainly to attain the knowledge of that piety. A great vanity it is verily to profess these worldly things even when known ; but it is a pious thing to confess unto thee. From this he had gone astray, and all he got by prating much of these things, was to be confuted by those who had learned the truth of these things, and to be evidently discovered what understanding he had in points that were abstruser. For

219

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP.
V enim parvi se aestimari voluit, sed spiritum sanctum,
consolatorem et ditatorem fidelium tuorum, auctoritate
plenaria personaliter in se esse persuadere conatus est. itaque cum de caelo ac stellis et de solis ac
lunae motibus falsa dixisse deprehenderetur, quamvis ad doctrinam religionis ista non pertineant, tamen ausus eius sacrilegos fuisse satis emineret, cum ea non solum ignorata, sed etiam falsa, tam vesana superbiae vanitate diceret, ut ea tamquam divinae personae tribuere sibi niteretur.

Cum enim audio Christianum aliquem fratrem, illum aut illum, ista nescientem et aliud pro alio sentientem, patienter intueor opinantem hominem; nec illi obesse video, cum de te, domine creator omnium, non credat indigna, si forte situs et habitus creaturae corporalis ignoret. obest autem, si hoc ad ipsam doctrinae pietatis formam pertinere arbitretur, et pertinacius affirmare audeat quod ignorat. sed etiam talis infirmitas in fidei cunabulis a Caritate matre sustinetur, donec assurgat novus homo in virum perfectum, et circumferri non possit omni vento doctrinae. in illo autem, qui doctor, qui auctor, qui dux et princeps eorum, quibus illa suaderet, ita fieri ausus est, ut qui eum sequerentur non quemlibet hominem, sed spiritum tuum sanctum se sequi arbitrarentur, quis tantam dementiam, sicubi falsa dixisse

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

the man would not have himself meanly thought of, CHAP.
but went about forsooth, to persuade, that the Holy ^V
Ghost, the Comforter and Enricher of the faithful
ones, was with full authority resident within him.
Whereas therefore he was found out to have taught
falsely of the heavens and stars, and of the courses
of the sun and moon, (although those things pertain
little to the doctrine of religion), that his presumptions
were sacrilegious was apparent enough, seeing that
he delivered those things not only which he knew
not, but which himself had falsified, and that with so
mad a vanity of pride, that he went about to claim
them for himself, as the words of a divine person.

Whenever now I hear a Christian brother, (either
one or other) that is ignorant enough of these
philosophical subtleties, and that mistaketh one
thing for another, I can patiently behold such a man
delivering his opinion ; nor do I see how it can
much hinder him, wheras he does not believe any-
thing unworthy of thee, O Lord, the Creator of all,
if perchance he be less skilled in the situation or
condition of the corporeal creature. But then it
hurts him, if so be he imagines this to pertain to the
very essence of the doctrine of piety, and will stand
too stiffly in a thing he is utterly ignorant of. And
yet is even such an infirmity in the infancy of a
man's faith withal borne by our Mother Charity, till
such time as this new convert grow up into a perfect Eph. iv. 13,
¹⁴ man, and not to be carried about with every wind
of doctrine : whereas in that Faustus, who was so
presumptuous as to make himself the doctor and
authority, the ringleader and chief man of all those
whom he had inveigled, to the opinion, that whoever
became his follower, did not imagine himself to
follow a mere man, but thy Holy Spirit ; who would

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP. ^Vconvinceretur, non detestandam longeque abiciendam esse iudicaret? sed tamen nondum liquido conpereram, utrum etiam secundum eius verba vicissitudines longiorum et breviorum dierum atque noctium, et ipsius noctis et diei, et deliquia luminum, et si quid eius modi in aliis libris legeram, posset exponi, ut, si forte posset, incertum mihi fieret, utrum ita se res haberet an ita, sed ad fidem meam illius auctoritatem propter creditam sanctitatem praeponerem.

VI

CAP. ^{VI}ET per annos ferme ipsos novem, quibus eos animo vagabundus audivi, nimis extento desiderio venturum expectabam istum Faustum. ceteri enim eorum, in quos forte incurrissem, qui talium rerum quaestionibus a me obiectis deficiebant, illum mihi promittebant, cuius adventu conlatoque conloquio facillime mihi haec, et si qua forte maiora quaererem, enodatissime expedirentur. ergo ubi venit, expertus sum hominem gratum et iucundum verbis, et ea ipsa, quae illi solent dicere, multo suavius garrientem. sed quid

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

not judge but that so high a degree of madness, CHAP.
when once he had been convicted to have taught
falsities, were not to be detested, and utterly re-
jected? But I had not clearly as yet found out,
whether the interchanged alterations of the length
and shortness of days and nights, yea of the day and
night itself, with the eclipses and wanings of the
greater lights, and other things of the like kind
which I had read of in other books, might also be
so expounded as to stand with his determination of
them: but though peradventure it might so be, yet
should it remain uncertain to me, whether it were
so or not; however, for the great sanctity supposed
to be in the man, I was ready to propound to
myself his authority, which ought to be enough to
make me believe him.

VI

Faustus was eloquent by Nature, rather than by Art

AND by the space almost of those nine years, wherein CHAP.
with an unsettled mind I had been a disciple of the VI
Manichees, with a desire set upon the tenter-hooks
had I expected the coming of this Faustus. For all
the rest of that sect whom by chance I had lit upon,
and had put to a nonplus with my questions and
objections about these things, still promised me this
Faustus, upon whose coming and conference all these,
and greater difficulties, if I had them, would most
easily and clearly be satisfied. So soon therefore as
he was come, I quickly tasted him to be a very
pleasing-languaged man, and one that could prate
a great deal more delightfully of those points that

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. ad meam sitim pretiosorum poculorum decentissimus
^{VI} ministrator? iam rebus talibus satiatae erant aures
meae; nec ideo mihi meliora videbantur, quia melius
dicebantur; nec ideo vera, quia diserta; nec ideo
sapiens anima, quia vultus congruus et decorum
eloquium. illi autem, qui eum mihi promittebant, non
boni rerum existimatores erant; et ideo illis videbatur
prudens et sapiens, quia delectabat eos loquens.

Sensi autem aliud genus hominum etiam veri-
tatem habere suspectam, et ei nolle acquiescere, si
compto atque uberi sermone promeretur. me autem
iam docueras, deus meus, miris et occultis modis, et
propterea credo, quod tu me docueris; quoniam
verum est, nec quisquam praeter te alias doctor
est veri, ubicumque et undecumque claruerit. iam
ergo abs te didiceram, nec eo debere videri aliquid
verum dici, quia eloquenter dicitur, nec eo falsum,
quia incomposite sonant signa labiorum; rursus nec
ideo verum, quia inpolite enuntiatur, nec ideo
falsum, quia splendidus sermo est: sed perinde esse
sapientiam et stultitiam, sicut sunt cibi utiles et
inutiles; verbis autem ornatis et inornatis, sicut
vasis urbanis et rusticannis utrosque cibos posse
ministrari.

Igitur aviditas mea, qua illum tanto tempore
expectaveram hominem, delectabatur quidem motu
affectuque disputantis, et verbis congruentibus atque

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V.

they were wont to talk of. But how should the most spruce cup-bearer slake the thirst I had after those precious cups? Mine ears had been cloyed already with such trash, which did not now therefore seem better to me, because better said; nor therefore true, because eloquent; nor seemed the soul wise, because the face had a good garb, and the language a sweet tone. As for them who had made such promises of him to me, they plainly were no good judges of things; and therefore to them he appeared prudent and wise, for that he could please them in the speaking.

Another sort of people I had also met withal, who become presently suspicious of the truth itself, and refuse to acknowledge it so, if delivered in a picked and fluent discourse. But thou, O my God, hadst taught me by wonderful and secret ways, and therefore I believe, even because thou hast taught me: for that is the very truth, nor is there besides thee any other teacher of truth, wheresoever or whencesoever he may be famous. Of thyself, therefore, had I now learned, that nothing ought to seem to be truly spoken, because eloquently set off; nor false therefore, because delivered with an untunable pronunciation. Again, nor therefore true, because roughly delivered; nor therefore false, because graced in the speaking: but it fares with wisdom and folly, as it doth with wholesome and unwholesome diet; and with neat and undressed phrases, as with courtly or country vessels; either kind of meats may be served up in either kind of dishes.

That greediness therefore of mine, with which I had so long expected that man, was delighted verily with his carriage and feeling in dispute, and the apt words and fluent which set out his thoughts. I

VI

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP. ad vestiendas sententias facile occurrentibus. delect-

VI

abar autem, et cum multis vel etiam prae multis laudabam ac ferebam; sed moleste habebam, quod in coetu audientium non sinerer ingerere illi, et partiri cum eo curas quaestiónum mearum, conferendo familiariter et accipiendo ac reddendo sermonem. quod ubi potui, et aures eius cum familiaribus meis eoque tempore occupare coepi, quo non dedeceret alternis disserere, et protuli quaedam, quae me movebant, expertus sum prius hominem expertem liberalium disciplinarum, nisi grammaticae, atque eius ipsius usitato modo. et quia legerat aliquas Tullianas orationes, et paucissimos Seneca libros, et nonnulla poetarum, et suae sectae si qua volumina latine atque composite conscripta erant, et quia aderat cotidiana sermocinandi exercitatio; inde suppeditabat eloquium, quod fiebat acceptius magisque seductorium moderamine ingenii et quodam lepore naturali. itane est, ut recolo, domine deus meus, arbiter conscientiae meae? coram te cor meum et recordatio mea; qui mecum tunc agebas abdito secreto providentiae tuae, et in honestos errores meos iam convertebas ante faciem meam, ut viderem et odissem.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

was indeed much taken with him ; and with others CHAP.
many, yea and more than those many, did I both VI
praise and extoll him. But this I took ill from him,
that in the assembly of his auditors, I might not be
suffered to put in now and then, and communicate
those questions that troubled me, by a familiar con-
ferring and exchange of arguments with him. Which
when I gat opportunity to do, I, with other of my
friends, both began to busy his ears, and that at such
times too, as had not been undecent for him to have
exchanged an argument with me ; and I opened my-
self in such things as did sway much with me : but
the man I found at once unskilful in the liberal
sciences, save of grammar only, and but ordinarily
in that neither. And because he had read some of
Tully's Orations, some few books of Seneca, divers of
the poets, and those volumes of his own sect which
had been written in the Latin tongue, and something
handsomely ; and for that he was daily practised in
speaking upon a subject ; thence became he furnished
with eloquence, which proved the more pleasing and
inveigling, being governed by a good wit, and set off
with a kind of gracefulness that was natural unto him.
Is it not thus, as I recall, O Lord my God, thou Judge of
my conscience ? Before thee my heart still is, and my
remembrance too ; thou who didst at that time direct
me by the hidden secret of thy Providence, and didst
turn those shameful errors of mine before my face, Ps. l. 21
that I might see and hate them.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

VII

CAP VII NAM posteaquam ille mihi imperitus earum artium, quibus eum excellere putaveram, satis apparuit, desperare coepi posse mihi eum illa, quae me movebant, aperire atque dissolvere ; quorum quidem ignarus posset veritatem tenere pietatis, sed si Manichaeus non esset. libri quippe eorum pleni sunt longissimis fabulis de caelo et de sideribus et sole et luna : quae mihi eum, quod utique cupiebam, conlatis numerorum rationibus, quas alibi ego legeram, utrum potius ita essent, ut Manichaei libris continebatur, an certe vel par etiam inde ratio redderetur, subtiliter explicare posse iam non arbitrabar. quae tamen ubi consideranda et discutienda protuli, modeste sane ille nec ausus est subire ipsam sarcinam. noverat enim se ista non nosse, nec eum puduit confiteri. non erat de talibus, quales multos loquaces passus eram, conantes ea me docere et dicentes nihil. iste vero cor habebat, etsi non rectum ad te, nec tamen nimis incautum ad se ipsum. non usquequaque imperitus erat imperitiae suae, et noluit se temere disputando in ea coartari, unde nec exitus ei ullus nec facilis esset redditus. etiam hinc mihi amplius placuit : pulchrior est enim temperantia confitentis animi, quam illa, quae nosse cupiebam. et

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

VII

He falls off from the Manichees

FOR after that he had sufficiently appeared to me to CHAP.
be thus ignorant of those arts in which I thought he VII
had excelled ; I began to despair that he should ever
open and untie these difficulties which so much per-
plexed me ; of which though a man were ignorant,
he might yet hold fast the truth of piety, provided he
were not a Manichee. For their books are fraught
with far-fetched fables, of the heaven, and the stars,
of the sun and of the moon ; which I, having com-
pared with the calculations I had read of otherwhere,
did not hereafter hold him any ways able exactly to
resolve me in (which I much desired), whether those
things should be rather so, as in the Manichees'
books they were contained, or that some as sufficient
reason might at least be fetched out of them. Which
queries when I had offered to be considered upon and
discussed, he, modestly, to say truth, had not the
boldness to undergo that burden ; for he knew of
his own ignorance in these arts, nor was he ashamed
to confess as much. For none of those prating fellows
he was, many of which I had been troubled withal,
that would undertake to instruct me in these arts, and
at last say nothing to the purpose. But this man
bare a mind, though not right towards thee, yet not
too rash towards himself : for he was not altogether
ignorant of his own ignorance ; nor was he willing
rashly to engage himself in a dispute, whence he
could neither get off, nor retire fairly. And even
for this did I like the better of him : for fairer
appears the modesty of a confessing mind, than those
things which I then desired to be informed of. And

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP^{VII} eum in omnibus difficilioribus et subtilioribus quaest^{VII} questionibus talem inveniebam.

Refracto itaque studio, quod intenderam in Manichaei litteras, magisque desperans de ceteris eorum doctoribus, quando in multis, quae me movebant, ita ille nominatus apparuit, coepi cum eo pro studio illius agere vitam, quo ipse flagrabat in eas litteras, quas tunc iam rhetor Karthaginis adulescentes docebam; et legere cum eo, sive quae ille audita desideraret, sive quae ipse tali ingenio apta existimarem. ceterum conatus omnis meus, qui proficere in illa secta statueram, illo homine cognito prorsus intercidit; non ut ab eis omnino separarer, sed quasi melius quicquam non inveniens eo, quo iam quoquo modo inrueram, contentus interim esse decreveram, nisi aliquid forte, quod magis eligendum esset, eluceret. ita ille Faustus, qui multis laqueus mortis extitit, meum quo captus eram relaxare iam cooperat nec volens nec sciens. manus enim tuae, deus meus, in abdito providentiae tuae, non deserebant animam meam, et sanguine cordis matris meae per lacrimas eius diebus et noctibus pro me sacrificabatur tibi, et egisti mecum miris modis. tu illud egisti, deus meus. nam a domino gressus hominis diriguntur, et viam eius volet. aut quae procuratio salutis praeter manum tuam reficientem quae fecisti?

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

at this guard I found him lying, in all those more difficult and more subtle questions.

CHAP.
VII

My edge being thus taken off, which I had keenly directed towards the Manichee's doctrine ; and despairing more of the performance of their other doctors ; seeing in divers things which had stumbled me, this so famous Faustus had so appeared ; I began with him to take the same course of life, according to that study which he was very hot upon, in that kind of learning, in which at that time being a rhetoric reader in Carthage, I instructed young students ; and I began to read with him, either what himself desired to hear, or such stuff as I judged fit for such a wit. But all my endeavour, by which I purposed to proceed in that sect, upon knowledge of that man, began utterly to faint in me ; not that I as yet brake with them altogether ; but as one not finding anything better than that course, upon which I had some way or other thrown myself, I resolved to stay where I was awhile, until by chance something else might appear, which I should see more cause to make choice of. And thus that Faustus, who had been the very snare of death unto divers, had now, nor willing nor knowing, begun to unbind the snare in which I was fettered. For thy hands, O Lord my God, out of the secret of thy providence, did not now forsake my soul ; and out of the blood of my mother's heart, through her tears night and day poured out, hadst thou a sacrifice made for me ; and thou proceededst with me by strange and secret ways. It was thy doing, O my God : for the steps of a man are directed by the Lord, and he shall dispose his way. For how shall we procure salvation, but from thy hand, that repairs whatsoever thou hast made ?

Ps. xxxvii
23

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

VIII

CAP. EGISTI ergo mecum, ut mihi persuaderetur Romam
^{VIII} pergere, et potius ibi docere quod docebam Carthagini. et hoc unde mihi persuasum est, non praeteribo confiteri tibi; quoniam et in his altissimi tui recessus et praesentissima in nos misericordia tua cogitanda et praedicanda est. non ideo Romam pergere volui, quod maiores quaestus maiorque mihi dignitas ab amicis, qui hoc suadebant, promittebatur— quamquam et ista ducebant animum tunc meum— sed illa erat causa maxima et paene sola, quod audiebam quietius ibi studere adulescentes et ordinatiore disciplinae cohercitione sedari, ne in eius scholam, quo magistro non utuntur, passim et proterve inruant, nec eos admitti omnino, nisi ille permiserit.

Contra apud Carthaginem foeda est et intemperans licentia scholasticorum: intrumpunt inpudenter et prope furiosa fronte perturbant ordinem, quem quisque discipulis ad proficiendum instituerit. multa iniuriosa faciunt, mira hebetudine et punienda legibus, nisi consuetudo patrona sit, hoc miseriores eos ostendens, quo iam quasi liceat faciunt, quod

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

VIII

He takes a Voyage to Rome, against the will of his Mother

THOU dealtest with me therefore, that I should be CHAP.
persuaded to go to Rome, and teach there, rather ^{VIII}
than at Carthage. And how I came to be persuaded
to this, I will not neglect to confess unto thee ;
because hereby thy most profound secrets, and thy
most ready mercy towards us, may be considered
upon and professed. I had no intent for this cause
to go towards Rome, that greater gettings, and
higher preferments were warranted me by my friends
which persuaded me to the journey, (though these
hopes likewise drew on my mind at that time) ; but
there was another great reason for it, which was
almost the only reason, that I had heard how young
men might follow their studies there more quietly,
and were kept under a stricter course of discipline ;
that they might not at their pleasure, and in insol-
lent manner, rush in upon that man's school, where
their own master professed not, no nor come within
the doors of it, unless he permitted it.

But at Carthage, on the other side, reigns a
most uncivil and unruly licentiousness amongst the
scholars. They break in audaciously, and almost
with Bedlam looks, disturb all order which any
master hath propounded for the good of his scholars.
Divers outrages do they commit, with a wonderful
stupidness, deserving soundly to be punished by the
laws, were not custom a defendress of them ; declar-
ing them to be the more miserable, because they do

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. per tuam aeternam legem numquam licebit; et impune
VIII se facere arbitrantur, cum ipsa faciendi caecitate
punitantur, et incomparabiliter patiantur peiora, quam
faciunt. ergo quos mores cum studerem meos esse
nolui, eos cum docerem cogebar perpeti alienos; et
ideo placebat ire, ubi talia non fieri omnes qui
noverant indicabant. verum autem tu, spes mea et
portio mea in terra viventium, ad mutandum terrarum
locum pro salute animae meae et Carthagini stimu-
los, quibus inde avellerer, admovebas, et Romae in-
lecebras, quibus adtraherer, proponebas mihi, per
homines, qui diligunt vitam mortuam, hinc insana
facientes, inde vana pollicentes: et ad corrigendos
gressus meos utebaris occulte et illorum et mea
perversitate. nam et qui perturbabant otium meum,
foeda rabie caeci erant, et qui invitabant ad aliud,
terram sapiebant. ego autem, qui detestabar hic
veram miseriam, illic falsam felicitatem appetebam.

Sed quare hinc abirem et illuc irem, tu sciebas,
deus, nec indicabas mihi nec matri, quae me pro-
fectum atrociter planxit, et usque ad mare secuta est.
sed fefelli eam violenter me tenentem, ut aut re-
vocaret aut mecum pergeret, et finxi me amicum
nolle deserere, donec vento facto navigaret. et

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

as if it were lawful, what by thy eternal law shall never CHAP.
be so: and they suppose they escape unpunished VIII
all this while, whereas they be enough punished
with the blindness which they do it with, and that
they already suffer things incomparably worse than
what they do. These men's manners therefore when
I was a student, I would never fashion myself unto,
though when I set up school I was fain to endure
them from others: and for this cause was I desirous
to go, where all those that knew it, assured me,
that there were no such insolencies committed.
But thou, O my Refuge and my Portion in the land Ps. cxlii. 3
of the living, to force me to change my dwelling for
the salvation of my soul, didst prick me forward with
goads at Carthage, with which I might be driven
thence, and madest proffer of certain allurements at
Rome, by which I might be drawn thither: even by
men who were in love with a dying life, now playing
mad pranks, then promising vain hopes: and, for
the reforming of my courses, didst thou make secret
use both of their perverseness and of mine own too.
For both they that disturbed my quiet, were blinded
with a base madness, and those that invited me to
another course, savoured merely of earth. But I
myself, who here detested true misery, aspired there
to a false felicity.

But the cause why I went from thence, and
went thither, thou knewest, O God; yet didst thou
neither discover it to me, nor to my mother, who
heavily bewailed my journey, and followed me as far
as the seaside. But I deceived her, though holding
me by force, that either I should go back with her,
or she might go along with me: for I feigned that
I had a friend whom I could not leave, till I saw
him with a fair wind under sail. Thus I made a lie

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. mentitus sum matri, et illi matri, et evasi ; quia et hoc
VIII

tu dimisisti mihi misericorditer servans me ab aquis
maris plenum exsecrandis sordibus usque ad aquam
gratiae tuae ; qua me abluto siccarentur flumina
maternorum oculorum, quibus pro me cotidie tibi
rigabat terram sub vultu suo. et tamen recusanti
sine me redire vix persuasi, ut in loco, qui proximus
nostrae navi erat, memoria beati Cypriani, maneret
ea nocte. sed ea nocte clanculo ego profectus sum,
illa autem non ; mansit orando et flendo. et quid
a te petebat, deus meus, tantis lacrimis, nisi ut
navigare me non sineres ? sed alte consulens, et
exaudiens cardinem desiderii eius, non curasti quod
tunc petebat, ut me faceres quod semper petebat.
flavit ventus et implevit vela nostra, et litus sub-
traxit aspectibus nostris, in quo mane illa insanie-
bat dolore et querellis et gemitu implebat aures tuas
contemnentis ista, cum et me cupiditatibus raperes
ad finiendas ipsas cupiditates, et illius carnale deside-
rium iusto dolorum flagello vapularet. amabat enim
secum praesentiam meam more matrum, sed multis
multo amplius ; et nesciebat, quid tu illi gaudiorum
facturus essem de absentia mea. nesciebat, ideo flebat
et eiulabat, atque illis cruciatibus arguebatur in ea

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

to my mother, and to so good a mother too, and so CHAP.
got away from her: for this also hast thou mercifully ^{VIII} forgiven me, preserving me from the waters of the sea, then full of execrable filthiness, landing me safe at the water of thy Grace; that so soon as I were purged with this, those floods of my mother's eyes should be dried up, with which for my sake she daily watered the ground under her face, in prayer unto thee. Yet refusing to return without me, I with much ado persuaded her to stay that night in a place hard by our ship, where there was an oratory erected in memory of St. Cyprian. That night I privily stole aboard, but she did not: she tarried behind in weeping and prayer. And what, O Lord, requested she with those tears, but that thou wouldest not suffer me to sail away from her? But thou profoundly providing, and fearing the main point of her desire, didst not at that time regard her petition, that thou mightest bring that to pass in me, which she had always begged of thee. The wind blew fair, and swelled our sails, and the shore withdrew itself from our sight. There on the morrow she fell into an extreme passion of sorrow, and with complaints and lamentations she even filled thine ears, which did for that little seem to regard them: when through the strength of mine own desires, thou didst hurry me away, that thou mightest at once put an end to those same desires: and that her carnal affection towards me might be justly punished by the scourge of sorrows. For she much doted on my company, as mothers use to do, yea much more fondly than many mothers: and little knew she how great a joy thou wert about to work for her out of my absence. She knew nothing of it, therefore did she weep and lament; proving herself by those tortures to be guilty of what Eve left

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. reliquiarium Evae, cum gemitu quaerens quod cum
VIII gemitu pepererat. et tamen post accusationem falla-
ciarum et crudelitatis meae, conversa rursum ad de-
precandum te pro me abiit ad solita, et ego Romam.

IX

CAP. Et ecce excipior ibi flagello aegritudinis corporalis,
IX et ibam iam ad inferos, portans omnia mala, quae
commiseram et in te et in me et in alios, multa et
gravia super originalis peccati vinculum, quo omnes
in Adam morimur. non enim quicquam eorum mihi
donaveras in Christo, nec solverat ille in cruce sua
inimicitias, quas tecum contraxeram peccatis meis.
quomodo enim eas solveret in cruce phantasmatis,
quod de illo credideram? quam ergo falsa mihi vide-
batur mors carnis eius, tam vera erat animae meae;
et quam vera erat mors carnis eius, tam falsa vita
animae meae, quae id non credebat. et ingravescen-
tibus febribus, iam ibam et peribam. quo enim irem,
si hinc tunc abirem, nisi in ignem atque tormenta
digna factis meis in veritate ordinis tui? et hoc illa
nesciebat, et tamen pro me orabat absens. tu autem,
ubique praesens, ubi erat exaudiebas eam, et ubi eram
miserebaris mei, ut recuperarem salutem corporis

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

behind her; with sorrow seeking, what she had CHAP.
brought forth in sorrow. But having at last made VIII
an end of accusing me of false and hard dealing with
her, she betook herself again to entreat thy favour
for me, and returned home: and I went on towards
Rome.

IX

Of a shrewd Fever that he fell into

But lo, there was I welcomed with the rod of bodily CHAP.
sickness, and I was even ready to go to hell, carrying IX
with me all those sins which I had committed, both
against thee, and myself, yea, many and grievous
offences against others, over and above that bond of
original sin, whereby we all die in Adam. For thou
hadst not yet forgiven me any of them in Christ, nor
had he yet slain that enmity by his Cross which by Eph. ii. 16
my sins I had incurred against thee: and how indeed
could he on the cross of a phantom, which was my
belief of it? How false therefore the death of his flesh
seemed unto me, so true was the death of my soul;
and how true the death of his body was, so false was
the life of my soul, which did not believe the death
of his body. My fever now growing more violent
upon me, I was at the point of going and perishing:
for whither should I have gone, had I died at that
time, but into fire and torments such as my misdeeds
were worthy of in the truth of thy decree? Of all
this nothing knew my mother, yet continued she to
pray for me although in absence. But thou who art
present everywhere, heardest her where she was, and
hadst compassion upon me whereas I was; so that I

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP. adhuc insanus corde sacrilego. neque enim desiderabam in illo tanto periculo baptismum tuum, et melior eram puer, quo illum de materna pietate flagitavi, sicut iam recordatus atque confessus sum. sed in dedecus meum creveram, et consilia medicinae tuae demens irridebam, qui non me sisisti talem bis mori. quo vulnere si feriretur cor matris, numquam sanaretur. non enim satis eloquor, quid erga me habebat animi et quanto maiore sollicitudine me parturiebat spiritu, quam carne pepererat. non itaque video, quomodo sanaretur, si mea talis illa mors transverberasset viscera dilectionis eius. et ubi essent tantae preces, tam crebrae sine intermissione? nusquam nisi ad te. an vero tu, deus misericordiarum, sperneres cor contritum et humiliatum viduae castae ac sobriae, frequentantis elemosynas, obsequentis atque servientis sanctis tuis, nullum diem praetermittentis oblationem ad altare tuum, bis die, mane et vespere, ad ecclesiam tuam sine ulla intermissione venientis, non ad vanas fabulas et aniles loquacitates, sed ut te audiret in tuis sermonibus et tu illam in suis orationibus? hu iusne tu lacrimas, quibus non a te aurum et argentum petebat nec aliquod nutabile aut volubile bonum, sed salutem animae filii sui, tu, cuius munere talis erat, contemneres et repelleres ab auxilio tuo? nequaquam, domine, immo

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

recovered health of body thereupon, though sorely CHAP.
crazed as yet in my sacrilegious heart. For I had IX
not in that danger desired thy baptism, and I was
better affected being but a youth when I had begged
it of my mother's devotion, as I have before recited and
confessed. But I had from thenceforth grown worse
and worse, to my own shame : and now stark mad I
scoffed at those precepts of that physic of thine, by
which thou wouldest not suffer me to die two deaths at
once : with which wound should my mother's heart
have been gored, it could never have been cured. For
I want words to express the affection she bare to-
wards me, and with how much vehementer anguish
she was now in labour of me in the spirit, than she
had been at her childbearing in the flesh. I cannot
possibly see, therefore, how she could have been
cured, had so unchristian a death of mine once
strucken through the bowels of her love. And where
should then have been those passionate prayers of
hers, so frequent and incessant in all places? No-
where but with thee. But wouldest thou, O God of
Mercies, have despised that contrite and humble ^{1 Tim. v. 10}
heart of that chaste and sober widow, so frequent in
alms-deeds, so obsequious and serviceable to thy
saints, who passed no day without her oblation at
thine Altar, never missing twice a day morning and
evening to come to church ; not to listen after idle
tales and old wives' chat, but that she might hear
thee speaking to her in thy sermons, and thou her,
in her prayers? Couldst thou despise and reject
without succour those tears of hers, with which she
begged no gold or silver of thee, nor any mutable or
fading good ; but the salvation of her son's soul only ?
Couldst thou do it, by whose grace she was inspired
to do this ? By no means, Lord. Yea, thou wert

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP^o vero aderas et exaudiebas et faciebas ordine, quo
^{IX} praedestinaveraſ esse faciendum. absit, ut tu falleres
eam in illis visionibus et responsionibus tuis, quae
iam commemoravi et quae non commemoravi, quae
illa fideli pectore tenebat et semper orans tamquam
chirographa tua ingerebat tibi. dignaris enim, quoniam
in saeculum misericordia tua, eis quibus omnia debita
dimittis, etiam promissionibus debtor fieri.

X

CAP^o. RECREASTI ergo me ab illa aegritudine, et salvum
^X fecisti filium ancillae tuae tunc interim corpore, ut
esset cui salutem meliorem atque certiore dare. et
iungebar etiam tunc Romae falsis illis atque fallen-
tibus sanctis: non enim tantum auditoribus eorum,
quorum e numero erat etiam is, in cuius domo aegro-
taveram et convalueram, sed eis etiam, quos electos
vocant. adhuc enim mihi videbatur non esse nos,
qui peccamus, sed nescio quam aliam in nobis peccare
naturam, et delectabat superbiam meam extra culpam
esse, et cum aliquid mali fecisset, non confiteri me
fecisse, ut sanares animam meam, quoniam peccabat

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

still at hand, and thou heardest her, and thou didst CHAP.
all in the selfsame order thou hadst predestinated IX
it should be done in. Let it never be thought thou
shouldst deceive her in those visions and answers
she had of thee; both those which I have already
mentioned, and those which I have not mentioned;
all which she laid up in her faithful heart, which in
her prayers ever and anon she would press thee
withal, as with thine own handwriting. For thou
(because thy mercy endureth for ever) vouchsafest
unto those whose debts thou forgivest thoroughly,
even to become a kind of debtor by thy promises.

X

His Errors before his receiving the Doctrine of the Gospel

THOU recoveredst me therefore of that sickness, and CHAP.
healedst the son of thy handmaid at that time in his X
body, that he might remain, for thee to bestow upon
him a health far better and more certain. And I joined
myself in Rome even at that time with those deceiving
and deceived holy ones: not only with their disciples,
(of whom mine host was one, in whose house I fell sick
and recovered) but also with those whom they call
the elect. For I was hitherto of the opinion, that
it was not we ourselves that sinned, but I know not
what other nature in us; and it much delighted
my proud conceit, to be set outside of fault; and
when I had committed any sin, not to confess I had
done any, that thou mightest heal my soul when
I had sinned against thee: but I loved to excuse

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP. tibi, sed excusare me amabam, et accusare nescio
^X quid aliud, quod mecum esset et ego non essem.
verum autem totum ego eram, et adversus me inpietas
mea me divisorat : et id erat peccatum insanabilius,
quo me peccatorem non esse arbitrabar ; et execrabilis
iniquitas, te, deus omnipotens, te in me ad perniciem
meam, quam me a te ad salutem, malle superari.

Nondum ergo posueras custodiam ori meo et
ostium continentiae circum labia mea, ut non declinaret cor meum in verba mala, ad excusandas
excusationes in peccatis cum hominibus operantibus
iniquitatem, et ideo adhuc combinabam cum electis
eorum : sed tamen desperans in ea falsa doctrina me
posse proficere, eaque ipsa, quibus, si nil melius reperirem, contentus esse decreveram, iam remissius
neglegentiusque retinebam.

Etenim suborta est etiam mihi cogitatio, prudenter
tiores illos ceteris suis philosophos, quos Academicos
appellant, quod de omnibus dubitandum esse censuerant, nec aliquid veri ab homine comprehendi posse
decreverant. ita enim et mihi liquido sensisse videbantur, ut vulgo habentur, etiam illorum intentionem
nondum intelligenti. nec dissimulavi eundem hospitem
meum reprimere a nimia fiducia, quam sensi eum
habere de rebus fabulosis, quibus Manichaei libri
pleni sunt. amicitia tamen eorum familiarius utebar
quam ceterorum hominum, qui in illa haeresi non

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

myself, and to accuse I know not what other corruption that I bare about me, and that was not I. But verily it was I myself altogether, and mine own impiety had made the division in me: and that sin of mine was the more incurable, for that I did not judge myself to be a sinner; and most execrable iniquity it was, that I had rather have thee, O God Almighty, even thee I say, to be overcome by me to mine own destruction, than myself to be overcome of thee, to mine own salvation.

Thou hadst not yet therefore set a watch before my mouth, and kept the door of my lips, that my heart might not incline to wicked speeches, to the making of those excuses of my sins with the men that work iniquity: and even therefore continued I still combined with their elect ones. But yet now as it were despairing much to profit myself in that false doctrine, even those opinions of theirs (with which if I could chance upon no better, I was resolved to rest contented) I began to be something more remiss and careless in the holding.

For there rose a conceit in me that those philosophers which they call Academics, should be wiser than the rest, for that they held men ought to make a doubt upon everything, and decreed that no truth can be comprehended by man: for thus to me they seemed clearly to have thought, as it is commonly received, even though I did not yet understand their meaning. And as free and open I was to dissuade that host of mine, from that too much confidence, which I perceived him to settle upon those fabulous opinions which the Manichees' books are full of. And yet I made more familiar use of their friendship, than I did of other men's that were not of this heresy. Yet did I not maintain it with my ancient fire,

CHAP.
X

Pa. cxli.
3, 4

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP. fuissent. nec eam defendebam pristina animositate,
^X sed tamen familiaritas eorum—plures enim eos Roma
occultabat—pigrius me faciebat aliud quaerere, prae-
sertim desperantem in ecclesia tua, domine caeli et
terrae, creator omnium visibilium et invisibilium,
posse inveniri verum, unde me illi averterant: mul-
tumque mihi turpe videbatur credere figuram te
habere humanae carnis, et membrorum nostrorum
lineamentis corporalibus terminari. et quoniam cum
de deo meo cogitare vellem, cogitare nisi moles cor-
porum non noveram—neque enim videbatur mihi
esse quicquam, quod tale non esset—ea maxima et
prope sola causa erat inevitabilis erroris mei.

Hinc enim et mali substantiam quandam credebam
esse talē, et habere suam molem, tetram et deformem
sive crassam, quam terram dicebant, sive tenuem atque
subtilem, sicuti est aeris corpus: quam malignam
mentem per illam terram repentem imaginantur. et
quia deum bonum nullam malam naturam creasse
qualiscumque me pietas credere cogebat, constitue-
bam ex adverso sibi duas moles, utramque infinitam,
sed malam angustius, bonam grandius, et ex hoc initio
pestilentioso me cetera sacrilegia sequebantur. cum
enim conaretur animus meus recurrere in catholicam
fidem, repercutiebatur, quia non erat catholica fides,
quam esse arbitrabar. et magis pius mihi videbar,
si te, deus meus, cui confitentur ex me miserations

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

but yet did my familiarity with that sect (of whom CHAP.
Rome shelters many) make me slower to seek out ^X
any other way: especially seeing I now despaired,
O Lord of heaven and earth, Creator of all visible
and invisible things, to find the truth in thy Church,
which they had quite put me out of conceit with.
And it then seemed a very unseemly thing to believe
thee to have the shape of our human flesh, and to be
girt up in the bodily lineaments of our members.
And because that when I had a desire to meditate
upon my God, I knew not how to think of him, but as
of a bulk of bodies, (for that seemed to me not to be
anything, which was not such) this was the greatest,
and almost the only cause of my inevitable mis-
prision.

For hence it was that I believed evil to have been
a kind of substance, and had a bulk of earth belonging
to it, either deformed and gross, which they called
earth; or else thin and subtle, (like the body of the
air): which they imagine to be some ill-natured mind
gliding through the earth. And for that I know
not what imperfect piety, constrained me to believe
that the good God never created any evil nature; I
supposed two bulks, contrary to one another, both
infinite, but the evil to be lesser, and the good
larger: and out of this pestilent foundation, other
sacrilegious conceits followed upon me. For when
my mind endeavoured to have recourse back unto
the Catholic faith, I was still staved off again, for
that that indeed was not the Catholic faith which
I believed to have been. And I thought myself
more reverent, if I should have believed thee, O my
God, (to whom thy mercies wrought in me do now
confess) to be infinite in other parts, although on that
side by which evil was set in opposition unto thee, I

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. tuae, vel ex ceteris partibus infinitum crederem, quamvis ex una, qua tibi moles mali opponebatur, cogerer finitum fateri, quam si ex omnibus partibus in corporis humani forma te opinarer finiri. et melius mihi videbar credere nullum malum te creasse—quod mihi nescienti non solum aliqua substantia, sed etiam corporea videbatur, quia et mentem cogitare non noveram nisi eam subtile corpus esse, quod tamen per loci spatia diffunderetur—quam credere abs te esse qualem putabam naturam mali. ipsum quoque salvatorem nostrum, unigenitum tuum, tamquam de massa lucidissimae molis tuae porrectum ad nostram salutem ita putabam, ut aliud de illo non crederem nisi quod possem vanitate imaginari. talem itaque naturam eius nasci non posse de Maria virgine arbitrabar, nisi carni concerneretur. concerni autem et non coinquinari non videbam, quod mihi tale figurabam. metuebam itaque credere incarnatum, ne credere cogerer ex carne inquinatum. nunc spiritales tui blande et amanter ridebunt me, si has confusiones meas legerint; sed tamen talis eram.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

was constrained to confess thee to be finite, than if CHAP.
in all parts I should imagine thee to be finitely con- X
cluded within the shape of an human body. And it seemed safer for me to believe thee to have never created any evil, (which to ignorant me seemed not some substance only, but to be corporeal also: for that I could not hit to think of any mind, unless it should be a subtle body, and that diffused too through space) than to believe anything could come from thee of that condition, which I imagined the nature of evil to be. Yea, and our Saviour himself, thy only Begotten, I thought of as thrust out, as it were, for our salvation, from the most bright mass of thy Substance, in such a way that I could believe no other thing of him, than that I was able to imagine by mine own vain fancy. Such a nature therefore I thought could never be born of the Virgin Mary, unless it were incorporated into her flesh: and how that which I had on this fashion figured out to myself should be incorporated, and not therewithal defiled, I saw not. I feared therefore to believe Christ to be born in the flesh, lest I should be enforced also to believe that he was defiled by the flesh. Now will thy spiritual children in a mild and loving manner laugh at me, when they shall read these my confusions. But such a man I then was.

XI

CAP. DEINDE quae illi in scripturis tuis reprehenderant
^{XI} defendi posse non existimabam : sed aliquando sane cupiebam cum aliquo illorum librorum doctissimo conferre singula, et experiri, quid inde sentiret. iam enim Elpidii cuiusdam adversus eosdem Manichaeos coram loquentis et disserentis sermones etiam apud Carthaginem movere me cooperant, cum talia de scripturis proferret, quibus resisti non facile posset. et inbecilla mihi responsio videbatur istorum ; quam quidem non facile palam promebant, sed nobis secretius : cum dicerent scripturas novi testamenti falsatas fuisse a nescio quibus, qui Iudeorum legem inserere Christianae fidei voluerunt, atque ipsi incorrupta exemplaria nulla proferrent. sed me maxime captum et offocatum quodam modo, deprimebant corporalia cogitantem moles illae, sub quibus anhelans in auram tuae veritatis liquidam et simplicem respirare non poteram.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

XI

How he compared the Manichees' Tenets with the Catholics'

FURTHERMORE, whatever these Manichees had found fault withal in thy Scriptures, I thought not possible to be defended: but yet verily had I a good will now and then to confer upon these several points with some man that were best skilled in those books, and to make experience what he thought of the matter. For the speech of one Elpidius, speaking and disputing face to face against the said Manichees, had already begun to stir me, even whilst I was at Carthage: when namely he produced such texts out of the Scriptures, which were not easily to be withheld. And the Manichees' answer seemed but very weak unto me: which answer they would not willingly deliver in public hearing, but amongst ourselves only in private: namely whenas they said, that the Scriptures of the New Testament had been corrupted by I know not whom, who were desirous to insert the Law of the Jews into the Christian faith: whereas themselves all this while brought not out any copies that had not been so corrupted. But me, strongly captivated, and stifled, as it were, with my thoughts about these corporeal phantasies, did these bulks keep down; under which struggling for the breath of thy truth, I was not able to take it in pure and untainted.

XI

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

XII

CAP. SEDULO ergo agere cooperam, propter quod veneram,
XII ut docerem Romae artem rhetorican : et prius domi
congregare aliquos, quibus et per quos innotescere
cooperam. et ecce cognosco alia Romae fieri, quae
non patiebar in Africa. nam re vera illas eversiones
a perditis adulescentibus ibi non fieri manifestatum
est mihi : "sed subito" inquiunt "ne mercedem
magistro reddant, conspirant multi adulescentes et
transferunt se ad alium, desertores fidei et quibus
prae pecuniae caritate iustitia vilis est." oderat etiam
istos cor meum, quamvis non perfecto odio. quod enim ab eis passurus eram, magis oderam fortasse
quam eo, quod cuilibet inlicita faciebant. certe tamen
turpes sunt tales, et fornicantur abs te, amando vola-
tica ludibria temporum et lucrum luteum, quod cum
adprehenditur manum inquinat, et amplectendo
mundum fugientem, contemnendo te, manentem et
revocantem, et ignoscentem redeunti ad te meretrici
humanae animae. et nunc tales odi pravos et distor-
tos, quamvis eos corrigendos diligam, ut pecuniae
252

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

XII

The cunning Tricks put at Rome by Scholars upon their Masters

DILIGENTLY therefore began I to put in practice CHAP.
that for which I came to Rome: that is, to teach XII
rhetoric: and first of all, to draw some to my
lodging, to whom, and through whose means, I
began to be made known abroad: when lo, I came to
know how that other misdemeanours were committed
in Rome, which I did not endure in Africa. For those
overturnings, 'tis true, committed by desperate young
fellows, were not here practised, as it was plain to
me: "but yet, said they, to avoid payment of their
master's stipend, divers young scholars plot together,
and all on a sudden, to avoid due payment to
their masters, these promise-breakers, who for the
love of money make no account of just dealing,
remove themselves to another." These sharking
companions my heart hated also, though not with a Ps. cxxxix.
perfect hatred: for I more hated them, perchance,
for that myself was to suffer by them, than for that
they played such dishonest pranks with every man.
Such verily be but base fellows, and they play
false with thee, in loving these fleeting mockeries of
the times, and in gripping after this dirty gain,
which when it is got hold of, bemires the hand; and
in embracing this fleeing world, and in despising
thee, who abidest ever, and who callest back, and
grantest pardon to man's adulterated soul that returns
unto thee. And now I much hate such wicked
and perverse natures, though I could well love them

22

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. doctrinam ipsam, quam discunt, präferant, ei vero
^{XII} te, deum, veritatem et ubertatem certi boni et
pacem castissimam. sed tunc magis eos pati nolle-
bam malos propter me, quam fieri propter te bonos
volebam.

XIII

CAP. ITAQUE posteaquam missum est a Mediolanio Romam
^{XIII} ad präfectum urbis, ut illi civitati rhetoricae magister
provideretur, in pertita etiam evectione publica, ego
ipse ambivi, per eos ipsos Manichaeis vanitatibus
ebrios—quibus ut carerem ibam, sed utrique nescie-
bamus—ut dictione proposita me probatum präfectus
tunc Symmachus mitteret. et veni Mediolanium ad
Ambrosium episcopum, in optimis notum orbi terrae,
pium cultorem tuum, cuius tunc eloquia strenue
ministrabant adipem frumenti tui, et laetitiam olei, et
sobriam vini ebrietatem, populo tuo. ad eum autem
ducebar abs te nesciens, ut per eum ad te sciens
ducerer. suscepit me paterne ille homo dei et pere-
grinationem meam satis episcopaliter dilexit. et eum
amare coepi primo quidem non tamquam doctorem

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

were they to be amended ; that they might prefer CHAP.
learning before their money ; and above their learn- XII
ing esteem of thee, O God, the Truth and Fulness
of all assured good, and the most chaste peace. But
in those days I was even for mine own sake more
unwilling to bear with those that dealt ill with
me, than desirous that they should at last become
good for thy sake.

XIII

*He goes to Milan to teach Rhetoric, and how
St. Ambrose there entertains him.*

WHEN therefore they of Milan had sent to Rome CHAP.
to the Prefect of the City, desiring to be furnished XIII
thence with a rhetoric master for their city, tak-
ing order also for the accommodating him in his
journey upon the public charges, I put on to stand
for the place, by means of those very men, drunken
with Manichean vanities, (to be rid of whom I went
away, yet did neither of us know it), and I procured
that upon my making a public oration for the place,
Symmachus (then Prefect of the City) should so far
approve of me, as to send me thither. Well; unto
Milan I came, to Bishop Ambrose, a man of the best
fame all the world over, and thy devout servant;
whose eloquent discourse did in those days plentifully
dispense the fatness of thy wheat, the gladness of Ps. i . 7,
thy oil, and the sober overflowings of thy wine, unto civ. 15
the people. To him was I led by thee, unknowing,
that by him I might be brought to thee, knowing it.
That man of God entertained me fatherly, and ap-
proved of the cause of my coming, as became a bishop.
I thenceforth began to love him : not at first verily

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER V

CAP. veri, quod in ecclesia tua prorsus desperabam, sed
XIII tamquam hominem benignum in me. studiose audie-
bam disputantem in populo, non intentione, qua-
debui, sed quasi explorans eius facundiam, utrum
conveniret famae suae, an maior minorve proflueret,
quam praedicabatur; et verbis eius suspendebar
intentus, rerum autem incuriosus et contemptor ad-
stabam: et delectabar sermonis suavitate, quamquam
eruditioris, minus tamen hilarescentis atque mul-
centis, quam Fausti erat, quod attinet ad dicendi
modum. ceterum rerum ipsarum nulla comparatio:
nam ille per Manichaeas fallacias aberrabat, ille
autem saluberrime docebat salutem. sed longe est
a peccatoribus salus, qualis ego tunc aderam. et
tamen propinquabam sensim, et nesciens.

XIV

CAP. CUM enim non satagerem discere quae dicebat, sed
XIV tantum quemadmodum dicebat audire—ea mihi
quippe, desperanti ad te viam patere homini, inanis
cura remanserat—veniebant in animum meum simul
cum verbis, quae diligebam, res etiam, quas neglege-
bam. neque enim ea dirimere poteram. et dum
256

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

as a teacher of the truth, (which I utterly despaired CHAP.
to find in thy Church), but as a man of courteous XIII
usage to me. I very diligently heard him preaching
to the people; although, not with so good a frame
of mind as I ought, but as it were, trying his elo-
quence, whether it were answerable to the fame that
went of him, or whether the stream were more or
less than was said of him; and I weighed every
word of his very attentively, but of the matter I
was careless and scornful. And verily with the
sweetness of his discourse I was much delighted:
which, however it were more learned, yet was it not
so pleasing and inveigling as Faustus his was, the
manner of the oratory I mean, though for the matter
there was no comparison. For Faustus did but rove
up and down amongst his Manichean fallacies; but
Ambrose taught salvation most soundly. But salva-
tion is far enough from sinners, such as I was at that
instant; and yet I drew by little and little nearer
toward it; but how, I knew not.

XIV

*Upon his hearing of St. Ambrose, he by little and
little falls off from his errors*

FOR though I took little heed to hearken to what he CHAP.
spake, but merely to the way how he delivered them:
(for that empty care was now only left in me, I
despairing utterly to find a way how man should
come unto thee): yet together with his words which I
liked, the things also themselves which I neglected,
stole in upon my mind; for I knew not how to part
them: and whilst I opened my heart to entertain,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. cor aperirem ad excipiendum, quam diserte diceret,
^{XIV} pariter intrabat et quam vera diceret, gradatim quidem. nam primo etiam ipsa defendi posse mihi iam coeperunt videri, et fidem catholicam, pro qua nihil posse dici adversus oppugnantes Manichaeos putaveram, iam non inpudenter asseri existimabam, maxime auditio uno atque altero, et saepius aenigmata soluto de scriptis veteribus, ubi, cum ad litteram acciperem, occidebar. spiritaliter itaque plerisque illorum librorum locis expositis, iam reprehendebam desperationem meam illam dumtaxat, qua credideram legem et prophetas detestantibus atque irridentibus resisti omnino non posse. nec tamen iam ideo mihi catholicam viam tenendam esse sentiebam; quia et ipsa poterat habere doctos assertores suos, qui copiose et non absurde obiecta refellerent: nec ideo iam damnandum illud, quod tenebam, quia defensionis partes aequabantur. ita enim catholica non mihi victa videbatur, ut nondum etiam victrix appareret. tunc vero fortiter intendi animum, si quo modo possem certis aliquibus documentis Manichaeos convincere falsitatis. quod si possem spiritalem substantiam cogitare, statim machinamenta illa omnia solverentur et abicerentur ex animo meo: sed non poteram.

Verum tamen de ipso mundi huius corpore, omni-que natura, quam sensus carnis attingeret, multo probabiliora plerosque sensisse philosophos magis

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

how eloquently he expressed it, there also entered with CHAP.
it, only by degrees, how truly he proved it. For first XIV
of all the things began to appear unto me as possible
to be defended : and the Catholic faith, in defence of
which I thought nothing could be answered to the
Manichees' arguments, I now concluded with myself,
might well be maintained without absurdity : espe-
cially after I had heard one or two hard places of
the Old Testament resolved now and then ; which
when I understood literally, I was slain. Many places
therefore of those books having been spiritually
expounded, I blamed mine own desperate conceit,
whereby I had believed, that the Law and the
Prophets could no way be upheld against those that
hated and scorned them. Yet did I not resolve for
all this, that the Catholic way might be held safely ;
seeing it might have its teachers and maintainers,
which might be able both copiously and not absurdly,
to answer some objections made against it : nor yet
did I conceive that my former way ought to be con-
demned, because that both sides of the defence were
equal. For although the Catholic party seemed to
me not to be overthrown, yet it appeared not to be
altogether victorious. Earnestly hereupon did I bend
my mind, to see if it were possible upon certain proofs
to convince the Manichees of falsehood : and could I
but once have taken into my thoughts that there
should be any spiritual substance, all their strongholds
had been beaten down, and cast utterly out of my
mind ; but I was not able.

Notwithstanding, concerning the body of this
world, and the whole frame of nature, which the
senses of our flesh can reach unto, I now more
seriously considering upon, and comparing things
together, judged divers of the Philosophers to have

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER V

CAP. magisque considerans atque comparans iudicabam.
^{XIV} itaque Academicorum more, sicut existimantur,
dubitans de omnibus atque inter omnia fluctuans,
Manichaeos quidem relinquendos esse decrevi; non
arbitrans eo ipso tempore dubitationis meae in illa
secta mihi permanendum esse, cui iam nonnullos
philosophos praeponet: quibus tamen philosophis,
quod sine salutari nomine Christi essent, cura-
tionem languoris animae meae committere
omnino recusabam. statui ergo tamdiu
esse catechumenus in catholica
ecclesia mihi a parentibus
commendata, donec ali-
quid certi eluceret,
quo cursum
dirigerem.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK V

held much the more probable opinions. After the CHAP.
manner therefore of the Academics (as they are
supposed) doubting now of everything, and wavering
up and down between all, I absolutely resolved, that
the Manichees were to be abandoned; judging in
that very time of my doubt, that I could not safely
continue in that sect, before which I now preferred
divers of the Philosophers: to which Philosophers
notwithstanding, for that they were without the
saving Name of Christ, I utterly refused to commit
the curing of my languishing soul. This there-
fore I determined, so long to be a cate-
chumen in the Catholic Church, (which
had been so much commended
unto me by my parents) till
such time as some certain
mark should appear,
whereto I might
steer my
course.

BOOK VI

LIBER SEXTVS

I

CAP. SPES mea a iuventute mea, ubi mihi eras et quo
I recesseras? an vero non tu feceras me, et dis-
creveras me a quadrupedibus, et volatilibus caeli
sapientiorem me feceras? et ambulabam per tene-
bras et lubricum, et quaerebam te foris a me, et non
inveniebam deum cordis mei; et veneram in pro-
fundum maris et diffidebam et desperabam de in-
ventione veri. iam venerat ad me mater pietate
fortis, terra marique me sequens, et in periculis om-
nibus de te secura. nam et per marina discrimina
ipsos nautas consolabatur, a quibus rudes abyssi
viantores, cum perturbantur, consolari solent, pollicens
eis perventionem cum salute, quia hoc ei tu per
visum pollicitus eras. et invenit me periclitantem
quidem graviter desperatione indagandae veritatis:
sed tamen ei cum indicassem non me quidem iam esse
Manichaeum, sed neque Catholicum Christianum,
non, quasi inopinatum aliquid audierit, exiluit laetitia,
cum iam secura fieret ex ea parte miseriae meae, in
qua me, tamquam mortuum, resuscitandum tibi flebat,

THE SIXTH BOOK

I

*How St. Augustine was neither Manichee, nor
good Catholic*

O THOU my Hope even from my youth, where wert CHAP.
thou all this while, and whither wert thou gone? I
For hadst not thou created me, and set a distinction
betwixt me and the beasts of the field, and made
me wiser than the fowls of the air? Yet did I
wander through the dark, and over the slippery,
and I groped out of myself after thee, but found not
the God of my heart; and drew near even to the
bottom of the sea, and I distrusted, and despaired
of ever finding out the truth. By this time came my
mother unto me, (whom motherly piety had made
adventurous) following me over sea and land, confi-
dent upon thee in all perils. For in the dangers upon
the sea, she comforted even the mariners, (by whom
the inexperienced passengers of the deep, use rather
to be comforted) assuring them of a safe landing:
because so much hadst thou assured her by a vision.
She found me grievously endangered by a despair
of ever finding out the truth. But when I had
once discovered to her that I was no longer now a
Manichee, nor fully yet a Catholic Christian, she
did not leap for joy, as if she had heard of some
unlooked-for news, seeing she had been satisfied
before concerning that part of my misery, for
which she bewailed me, as one dead, but as if
there were good hopes of his reviving: laying me

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. et feretro cogitationis offerebat, ut dices filio
^I viduae; Iuvenis, tibi dico, surge: et revivesceret
et inciperet loqui, et traderes illum matri suaे.
nulla ergo turbulenta exultatione trepidavit cor
eius, cum audisset ex tanta parte iam factum, quod
tibi cotidie plangebat ut fieret, veritatem me non-
dum adeptum, sed falsitati iam ereptum: immo
vero quia certa erat et quod restabat te daturum,
qui totum promiseras, placidissime et pectore pleno
fiduciae respondit mihi, credere se in Christo, quod
priusquam de hac vita emigraret, me visura esset
fidelem catholicum. et hoc quidem mihi. tibi
autem, fons misericordiarum, preces et lacrimas
densiores, ut accelerares adiutorium et inluminares
tenebras meas: et studiosius ad ecclesiam currere et
in Ambrosi ora suspendi, ad fontem salientis aquae
in vitam aeternam. diligebat autem illum virum
sicut angelum dei, quod per illum cognoverat me
interim ad illam ancipitem fluctuationem iam esse
perductum, per quam transiturum me ab aegritudine
ad sanitatem, intercurrente artiore periculo, quasi per
accessionem, quam criticam medici vocant, certa
praesumebat.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

forth upon the bier before thee, that thou mightest CHAP.
say unto the son of the widow, Young man, I say ^I unto thee, arise ; and he should sit up, and begin to Luke vii. 14 speak, and thou shouldest deliver him to his mother. Her heart, therefore, panted not in any tumultuous kind of rejoicing, when she heard that to be already in so great part done, which she daily with tears desired of thee might be wholly done ; namely, that though I had not yet attained the truth, yet that I was rescued from falsehood. Yea, rather, for that she was most certain, that thou wouldest one day perform the rest, who hadst promised the whole ; most calmly, and with an heart full of confidence, she replied unto me ; how she believed in Christ, that she should yet before she died, see me a true Catholic. And thus much said she to me. But to thee, O Fountain of Mercies, poured she forth more frequent prayers and tears, that thou wouldest hasten thy help, and enlighten my darkness : and more eagerly than ever would she run unto the church, and hang upon the lips of Ambrose, as a fountain of water that springeth up into life everlasting. For that man she loved as an angel of God, because she had heard that I had been brought by him in the mean time to that doubtful state of faith I was now in ; and she felt sure that through this I was to pass from sickness unto health, some sharper conflict coming between, in another fit, as it were, which the physicians call the crisis.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

II

CAP. ITAQUE cum ad memorias sanctorum, sicut in Africa
II solebat, pultes et panem et merum adtulisset, atque
ab ostiario prohiberetur : ubi hoc episcopum vetuisse
cognovit, tam pie atque oboedienter amplexa est, ut
ipse mirarer, quam facile accusatix potius consuetu-
dinis suae quam disceptatrix illius prohibitionis effecta
sit. non enim obsidebat spiritum eius vinulentia
eamque stimulabat in odium veri amor vini, sicut
plerosque mares et feminas, qui ad canticum sobrie-
tatis sicut ad potionem aquatam madidi nausiant.
sed illa cum attulisset canistrum cum sollemnibus
epulis, praegustandis atque largiendis, plus etiam
quam unum pocillum pro suo palato satis sobrio tem-
peratum, unde dignationem sumeret, non ponebat : et
si multae essent quae illo modo videbantur honoran-
dae memoriae defunctorum, idem ipsum unum, quod
ubique poneret, circumferebat, quo iam non solum
aquatissimo, sed etiam tepidissimo cum suis praesen-
tibus per sorbitones exiguae partiretur, quia pietatem
ibi quaerebat, non voluptatem.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

II

His Mother is turned from her country Superstitions

WHENAS my mother therefore had one time brought CHAP.
unto the oratories erected in memory of the saints, as II
she was wont to do in Africa, certain cheesecakes,
and bread and wine ; and had been forbidden to do
it by the sexton : so soon as ever she knew that the
Bishop had forbidden this, she did so piously and
obediently embrace the motion, that I myself won-
dered at it, that she should so easily be brought
rather to blame her own country-custom, than to
call the present countermand in question. For no
wine bibbing besotted her spirit, nor did the love of
wine provoke her to the hatred of the truth, as it
doth to many, both men and women, who being a Certain dis-
little whittled once, turn the stomach at a song of orders at
sobriety, as they would do at a draught of water. the memo-
But she, when she had brought her basket of these rial feasts
usual junkets, which she meant to eat a little of had caused
first, and to give the rest away ; never used to allow a service of
herself above one small pot of wine, well allayed song to be
with water, for her own sober palate, whence she put in their
might sip a mannerly draught. And if there were place
many oratories of the departed saints, that ought
to be honoured in like manner, she still carried the
selfsame pot about with her, to be used every-
where, which should not only be low allayed with
water, but very lukewarm with carrying about : and
this would she distribute to those that were about
her by small sups : for she came to those places to
seek devotion, and not pleasure.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. II Itaque ubi comperit a praeclaro praedicatore atque
antistite pietatis praeceptum esse, ista non fieri, nec
ab eis qui sobrie facerent, ne ulla occasio se ingurgi-
tandi daretur ebriosis; et quia illa quasi parentalia
superstitioni gentilium essent simillima, abstinuit se
libentissime: et pro canistro pleno terrenis fructi-
bus, plenum purgatiōribus votis pectus ad memorias
martyrum afferre didicerat, ut et quod posset daret
egentibus, et sic communicatio dominici corporis illic
celebraretur, cuius passionis imitatione immolati et
coronati sunt martyres.

Sed tamen videtur mihi, domine deus meus—et ita
est in conspectu tuo de hac re cor meum—non facile
fortasse de hac amputanda consuetudine matrem
meam fuisse cessuram, si ab alio prohiberetur, quem
non sicut Ambrosium diligebat. quem propter salu-
tem meam maxime diligebat, eam vero ille, propter
eius religiosissimam conversationem, qua in bonis
operibus tam fervens spiritu frequentabat ecclesiam,
ita ut saepe erumperet, cum me videret, in eius
praedicationem, gratulans mihi, quod talem matrem
haberem, nesciens, qualem illa filium, qui dubitabam
de illis omnibus et inveniri posse viam vitae minime
putabam.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

So soon therefore as she found this custom to be countermanded by that most famous preacher, and the most pious prelate Ambrose, yea, forbidden even to those that would use it but soberly, that so no occasion of riot might thereby be given to such as loved drinking too well; and for that these funeral anniversary feasts, as it were, in honour of our dead fathers, did too nearly resemble the superstition of the Gentiles, she most willingly forbore it ever after: and instead of a basket filled with the fruits of the earth, she now had learned to present a breast replenished with purer petitions, at the oratories of the Martyrs; that she might give away what she could spare among the poor, and that the Communion of the Lord's Body might in that place be rightly celebrated, where, after the example of his Passion, these Martyrs had been sacrificed and crowned.

But for all this it seems to me, O Lord my God, and thus thinks my heart of it in thy sight: that my mother would not easily have given way to the breaking of her country-custom, had it been forbidden her by some other man, whom she had not loved so well as she did Ambrose; whom in regard of my salvation, she very entirely affected, and he her again, for her most religious conversation, whereby so full of good works, so fervent in the spirit, she frequented the church. Yea, so well he affected her, that he would very often when he saw me, break forth into her praises; congratulating with me, in that I had such a mother: little knowing in the mean time what a son she had of me; who doubted of all these things, and least of all imagined the way to life could possibly be found out.

II

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

III

CAP. NEC iam ingemescebam orando, ut subvenires mihi,
^{III} sed ad quaerendum intentus et ad disserendum inquietus erat animus meus, ipsumque Ambrosium felicem quendam hominem secundum saeculum opinabar, quem sic tantae potestates honorarent: caelibatus tantum eius mihi laboriosus videbatur. quid autem ille spei gereret, adversus ipsius excellentiae temptamenta quid luctaminis haberet, quidve solaminis in adversis, et occultum os eius, quod erat in corde eius, quam sapida gaudia de pane tuo ruminaret, nec conicere noveram nec expertus eram. nec ille sciebat aestus meos, nec foveam periculi mei. non enim querere ab eo poteram quod volebam, sicut volebam, secludentibus me ab eius aure atque ore catervis negotiosorum hominum, quorum infirmitatibus serviebat: cum quibus quando non erat, quod perexiguum temporis erat, aut corpus reficiebat necessariis sustentaculis aut lectione animum. sed cum legebat, oculi ducebantur per paginas et cor intellectum rimabatur, vox autem et lingua quiescebant. saepe, cum adessemus—non enim vetabatur quisquam ingredi aut ei venientem nuntiari mos erat—sic eum legentem vidimus tacite et aliter numquam, sedentesque in diuturno silentio—quis enim tam intento esse oneri

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

III

The Employments and Studies of St. Ambrose

NOR did I hitherto groan in my prayers that thou CHAP.
wouldest help me ; but my unquiet mind was alto- III
gether intentive to seek for learning, and to dispute
upon it. As for Ambrose himself, I esteemed him a
very happy man according to the world, whom per-
sonages of such authority so much honoured ; only
his remaining a bachelor seemed a painful course
unto me. But what hopes he carried about him, what
strugglings he felt against the temptations his very
eminence was subject unto, or what comfort he found
in his adversities, and how savoury joys that mouth
hidden in his heart fed upon in thy Bread, I neither
knew how to guess at, nor had I yet any feeling of.
As little on the other side knew he of my private
heats, nor of the pit of my danger. For I had not
the opportunity to make my demands unto him, what
I would, or how I would ; for that multitude of people
full of business, whose infirmities he gave up himself
unto, debarred me both from hearing and speaking
with him. With whom when he was not taken up,
(which was but a little time altogether) he either
refreshed his body with necessary sustenance, or his
mind with reading. But when he was reading, he
drew his eyes along over the leaves, and his heart
searched into the sense, but his voice and tongue were
silent. Ofttimes when we were present (for no man
was debarred of coming to him, nor was it his fashion
to be told of anybody that came to speak with him) we
still saw him reading to himself, and never otherwise :
so that having long sat in silence (for who durst be so

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. auderet?—discedebamus; et coniectabamus eum parvo
^{III} ipso tempore, quod reparandae menti suaे nancise-
batur, feriatum ab strepitu causarum alienarum, nolle
in aliud avocari; et cavere fortasse, ne auditore sus-
penso et intento, si qua obscurius posuisset ille quem
legeret, etiam exponere esset necesse aut de aliqui-
bus difficilioribus dissertare quaestionibus; atque huic
operi temporibus impensis minus quam vellet volu-
minum evolveret: quamquam et causa servandae
vocis, quae illi facillime obtundebatur, poterat esse
iustior tacite legendi. quolibet tamen animo id
ageret, bono utique ille vir agebat.

Sed certe mihi nulla dabatur copia sciscitandi quae
cupiebam de tam sancto oraculo tuo, pectore illius,
nisi cum aliquid breviter esset audiendum. aestus
autem illi mei otiosum eum valde, cui refunderentur,
requirebant, nec umquam inveniebant. et eumquidem
in populo verbum veritatis recte tractantem omni die
dominico audiebam; et magis magisque mihi con-
firmabatur omnes versutarum calumniarum nodos,
quos illi deceptores nostri adversus divinos libros in-
nectebant, posse dissolvi. ubi vero etiam conperi ad
imaginem tuam hominem a te factum ab spiritalibus
filiis tuis, quos de matre catholica per gratiam re-
generasti, non sic intellegi, ut humani corporis forma
te terminatum¹ crederent atque cogitarent, quamquam

¹ MSS. determinatum.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

bold as to interrupt him, so intentive to his study?) CHAP.
we were fain to depart. We conjectured, that the III
small time which he gat for the repairing of his mind,
he retired himself from the clamour of other men's
businesses, being unwilling to be taken off for any
other employment: and he was wary perchance too,
lest some hearer being struck into suspense, and eager
upon it, if the author he read should deliver anything
obscurely, he should be put to it to expound it, or to
discuss some of the harder questions; so that spend-
ing away his time about this work, he could not turn
over so many volumes as he desired: although per-
adventure the preserving of his voice (which a little
speaking used to weaken) might be a just reason for
his reading to himself. But with what intent soever
he did it, that man certainly had a good meaning
in it.

But verily no opportunity could I obtain of pro-
ounding my demands, as I desired, to that so holy
an oracle of thine, his breast, unless the thing might
be heard very briefly. But those commotions in me,
required to find him at his best leisure, that I might
pour them out before him; but never could they find
him so. Yet heard I him every Sunday, preaching
the word of truth rightly to the people: by which
that apprehension of mine was more and more con-
firmed in me, that all those knots of crafty calumnies,
which those our deceivers had knit in prejudice of
the Holy Books, might well enough be untied. But
so soon as I understood withal, that man, created
by thee after thine own image, was not so under-
stood by thy spiritual sons, (whom of our Catholic
Mother thou hast regenerated by thy Grace) as if
they once believed or imagined thee to be confined
in an human shape: although I had not the least

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. quomodo se haberet spiritalis substantia, ne quidem
^{III} tenuiter atque aenigmate suspicabar, tamen gaudens
erubui non me tot annos adversus catholicam fidem,
sed contra carnalium cogitationum figmenta latrasse.
eo quippe temerarius et impius fueram, quod ea quae
debebam querendo discere, accusando dixeram. tu
autem, altissime et proxime, secretissime et praesentis-
tissime, cui membra non sunt alia maiora et alia
minora, sed ubique totus es et nusquam locorum es,
non es utique forma ista corporea, tamen fecisti homi-
nem ad imaginem tuam, et ecce ipse a capite usque
ad pedes in loco est.

IV

CAP. Cum ergo nescirem, quomodo haec subsisteret imago
^{IV} tua, pulsans proponerem, quomodo credendum esset,
non insultans opponerem, quasi ita creditum esset.
tanto igitur acrior cura rodebat intima mea, quid certi
retinerem, quanto me magis pudebat, tam diu inlusum
et deceptum promissione certorum, puerili errore et
animositate tam multa incerta quasi certa garrisce.
quod enim falsa essent, postea mihi claruit. certum
tamen erat, quod incerta essent et a me aliquando

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

suspicion, nor so much as a confused notion, in what CHAP.
strange manner a spiritual substance should be: yet III
blushing did I rejoice, that I had not so many years
barked against the Catholic faith, but against the
fictions of carnal imaginations. But herein had I been
rash and impious, that what I ought to have learned
by inquiry, I had spoken of as condemning. For thou,
O the most High, and the most Near; the most Secret
and yet the most present with us; hast not such
limbs, of which some be bigger, and some smaller;
but art wholly everywhere, circumscribed in no cer-
tain place; nor art thou of such corporeal shape;
yet hast thou made man after thine own image, and
behold from head to foot is he contained in space.

IV

Of the Letter and the Spirit

BEING thus ignorant therefore in what manner this CHAP.
image of thine should subsist; I should have knocked IV
and propounded the doubt, how that was to be
believed; not triumphingly to have opposed against
it, as if it were so believed. The anxiety therefore
of resolving what certainty I was to hold, did so much
the more sharply even gnaw my very bowels, by how
much the more ashamed I was, that having been so
long deceived by the promise of certainties, I had
with a childish error and rashness, prated up and down
of so many uncertainties, and that as confidently as
if they had been certainties. For that they were mere
falsehoods, it clearly appeared to me afterwards: yet
even already was I certain, that they were at least

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. pro certis habita fuissent, cum catholicam tuam
IV caecis contentionibus accusarem, etsi nondum compertam vera docentem, non tamen ea docentem, quae graviter accusabam. itaque confundebar et convertebar, et gaudebam, deus meus, quod ecclesia unica, corpus unici tui, in qua mihi nomen Christi infanti est inditum, non saperet infantiles nugas; neque hoc haberet in doctrina sua sana, quod te creatorem omnium in spatiū loci, quamvis summum et amplum, tamen undique terminatum, membrorum humanorum figura contruderet.

Gaudebam etiam, quod vetera scripta legis et prophetarum iam non illo oculo mihi legenda propone-rentur, quo antea videbantur absurdā, cum arguebam tamquam ita sentientes sanctos tuos; verum autem non ita sentiebant. et tamquam regulam diligentissime commendaret, saepe in popularibus sermonibus suis dicentem Ambrosium laetus audiebam: Littera occidit, sp̄itus autem vivificat, cum ea, quae ad litteram perversitatem docere videbantur, remoto mystico velamento spiritualiter aperiret, non dicens quod me offenderet, quamvis ea diceret, quae utrum vera essent adhuc ignorarem. tenebam cor meum ab omni adsensione, timens praecipitum; et suspendio magis necabar. volebam enim eorum quae non vi-derem ita me certum fieri, ut certus essem, quod septem et tria decem sint. neque enim tam insanus

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

uncertain, and that I had all this while believed them CHAP.
for certain ; whenas, namely out of a blind and contentious humour, I accused thy Catholic Church, which though I had not yet found to teach truly, yet found I it not to teach what I heartily accused it for teaching. In this manner was I first confounded, and then converted : and I much rejoiced, O my God, that thy only Church, the Body of thine only Son, (wherein the name of Christ had been put upon me being yet an infant), did not relish these childish toys ; nor maintained any such tenets in her sound doctrine as to crowd up the Creator of this all under the shape of human members, into any proportions of a place, which, though never so great and so large, should yet be terminated and surrounded.

And for this I rejoiced also, for that the Old Scriptures of the Law and the Prophets, were laid before me now, to be perused, not with that eye to which they seemed most absurd before, whenas I disliked thy holy ones for thinking so and so : but indeed they did not think so. And with joyful heart I heard Ambrose in his sermons to the people, most diligently oftentimes recommend this text for a rule unto them, The letter killeth, but the spirit giveth 2 Cor. iii. 6 life : whilst those things which taken according to the letter seemed to teach perverse doctrines, he spiritually laid open to us, having taken off the veil of the mystery ; teaching nothing in it that offended me, though such things he taught, as I knew not yet whether they were true or not. For I all this while kept my heart firm from assenting to anything, fearing to fall headlong ; but by this hanging in suspense I was the worse killed : for my whole desire was to be made so well assured of those things which I saw not, as I was certain that seven and three make ten.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. eram, ut ne hoc quidem putarem posse comprehendendi,
^{IV} sed sicut hoc, ita cetera cupiebam, sive corporalia, quae
coram sensibus meis non adessent, sive spiritalia, de
quibus cogitare nisi corporaliter nesciebam. et sanari
credendo poteram, ut purgatior acies mentis meae
dirigeretur aliquo modo in veritatem tuam, semper
manentem et ex nullo deficientem; sed, sicut evenire
assoleat, ut malum medicum expertus etiam bono
timeat se committere, ita erat valetudo animae meae,
quae utique nisi credendo sanari non poterat, et ne
falsa crederet, curari recusabat, resistens manibus
tuis, qui medicamenta fidei confecisti, et sparsisti
super morbos orbis terrarum, et tantam illis auctori-
tatem tribuisti.

V

CAP. Ex hoc tamen quoque, iam praeponens doctrinam
^V Catholicam, modestius ibi minimeque fallaciter sentie-
bam iuberi, ut crederetur quod non demonstrabatur—
sive esset quid, sed cui forte non esset, sive nec quid
esset—quam illic temeraria pollicitatione scientiae
credulitatem inrideri, et postea tam multa fabulosis-
sima et absurdissima, quia demonstrari non poterant,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

For I was not so mad yet, as to think that not even CHAP.
this last proposition might by demonstration be com- IV
prehended: but I desired to have other things as
clearly demonstrated as this; both those things cor-
poreal which were not present before my senses; and
spiritual, whereof I knew not yet how to conceive,
but after a corporeal manner. But by believing
might I have been cured, that so the eyesight of my
soul being cleared, might some way or other have
been directed toward thy truth, which is the same
eternally, and in no point failing. But as it happens
usually to him that having had experience of a bad
physician, is fearful afterwards to trust himself with
a good: so it was with the state of my soul, which
could no ways be healed but by believing; and lest
it should believe falsehoods, it refused to be cured:
resisting in the mean time thy hands, who first pre-
pared for us the medicines of faith, and hast applied
them to the diseases of the whole world, and given
unto them so great authority.

V

Of the Authority and necessary Use of the Holy Bible

FROM henceforth therefore I began first of all to CHAP.
esteem better of the Catholic doctrine, and also to V
think that it did with more modesty, and without any
deceit, command that to be believed, which was not
demonstrated (whether it could be so, but not to
all, or whether it could not), than the Manichees'
doctrine, which with its rash promise of great know-
ledge, exposed my easiness of belief first of all unto
derision, and afterwards commanded me to believe so

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. credenda imperari. deinde paulatim tu, domine,
^V manu mitissima et misericordissima pertractans et
conponens cor meum, consideranti, quam innume-
rabilia crederem, quae non viderem neque cum gere-
rentur affuissem : sicut tam multa in historia gentium,
tam multa de locis atque urbibus, quae non videram,
tam multa amicis, tam multa medicis, tam multa
hominibus aliis atque aliis, quae nisi crederentur,
omnino in hac vita nihil ageremus, postremo quam
inconcusse fixum fide retinerem, de quibus parentibus
ortus essem, quod scire non possem, nisi audiendo
credidissem : persuasisti mihi, non qui crederent libris
tuis, quos tanta in omnibus fere gentibus auctoritate
fundasti, sed qui non crederent, esse culpados ; nec
audiendos esse, si qui forte mihi dicerent : “ unde scis
illos libros unius veri et veracissimi dei spiritu esse
humano generi ministratos ? ” id ipsum enim maxime
credendum erat : quoniam nulla pugnacitas calum-
niosarum quaestionum, per tam multa quae legeram
inter seconfidentium philosophorum, extorquere mihi
potuit, ut aliquando non crederem te esse quidquid
esses, quod ego nescirem, aut administrationem rerum
humanarum ad te pertinere.

Sed id credebam aliquando robustius, aliquando
exilius, semper tamen credidi et esse te et curam
nostrri gerere, etiamsi ignorabam vel quid sentiendum

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

many most fabulous and absurd things, because they CHAP.
could not be demonstrated. Next of all, thou Lord,^V
by little and little, with a gentle and most merciful
hand working and rectifying my heart ; even while I
took into my consideration how innumerable things I
otherwise believed, which I had never seen, nor was
present at while they were in doing : like as those
many reports in the history of several nations, those
many relations of places and of cities, which I had
never seen : so many reports likewise of friends, so
many of physicians, so many of these and these
men, which unless we should believe, we should do
nothing at all in this life : last of all, I considered,
with how unalterable assurance I believed of what
parents I was descended ; which I could not other-
wise come to know, had I not believed it upon hear-
say : persuadedst me at last, that not they who be-
lieved thy Bible, (which with so great authority thou
hast settled among all nations) but those who be-
lieved it not, were to be blamed, nor were those
men to be listened unto, who would say perchance,
How knowest thou those Scriptures to have been
imparted unto mankind by the Spirit of the only
true and most high God ? For this fundamental
point was above all the rest to be believed ; because
no wrangles of all those cavilling questions, whereof
I had read so much amongst the Philosophers con-
tradiciting each other, could so far enforce me, as
that I should at any time not believe thee to be
whatsoever thou wert, (though what I knew not) or
that the government of human businesses should
not belong unto thee.

Thus much though I sometimes believed more
strongly, and more weakly other whiles, yet I ever
believed, both that thou wert God, and hadst a

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. esset de substantia tua, vel quae via duceret aut
reduceret ad te. ideoque cum essemus infirmi ad in-
veniendam liquida ratione veritatem, et ob hoc nobis
opus esset auctoritate sanctorum litterarum, iam cre-
dere cooperam nullo modo te fuisse tributurum tam
excellentem illi scripturae per omnes iam terras
auctoritatem, nisi et per ipsam tibi credi et per ipsam
te quaeri voluisses. iam enim absurditatem, quae me
in illis litteris solebat offendere, cum multa ex eis
probabiliter exposita audissem, ad sacramentorum
altitudinem referebam; eoque mihi illa venerabilior et
sacrosancta fide dignior apparebat auctoritas, quo et
omnibus ad legendum esset in promptu, et secreti sui
dignitatem in intellectu profundiore servaret, verbis
apertissimis et humillimo genere loquendi se cunctis
praebens, et exercens intentionem eorum, qui non
sunt leves corde; ut exciperet omnes populari sinu, et
per angusta foramina paucos ad te traiceret, multo
tamen plures, quam si nec tanto apice auctoritatis
emineret, nec turbas gremio sanctae humilitatis hau-
riret. cogitabam haec et aderas mihi, suspirabam et
audiebas me, fluctuabam et gubernabas me, ibam per
viam saeculi latam nec deserebas.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

care of us, though I were utterly ignorant, either CHAP.
what was to be thought of thy substance, or what way led or brought back again towards thee. Seeing therefore mankind would prove too weak to find out the truth by the way of evident reason, and for this cause was there need of the authority of Holy Writ : I began now to believe that thou wouldest by no means have stated such excellency of authority upon that book all the world over, had it not been thy express pleasure to have thine own self both believed in by means of it, and sought by it also. For those absurdities which in those Scriptures were wont to offend me, after I had heard divers of them expounded probably, I referred now to the depth of the mystery : yea, and the authority of that Book appeared so much the more venerable, and so much the more worthy of our religious credit, by how much the readier at hand it was for all to read upon, preserving yet the majesty of the secret under the profoundness of the meaning, offering itself unto all in words most open, and in a style of speaking most humble, and exercising the attention of such as are not light of heart; that it might by that means receive all into its common bosom, and through narrow passages, waft over some few towards thee : yet are these few a good many more than they would have been, had it not obtained the eminency of such high authority, nor allureed on those companies with a bosom of holy humility. These things then I thought upon, and thou wert with me : I sighed, and thou heardest me : I wavered up and down, and thou didst guide me : I wandered through the broad way of this world, yet didst thou not forsake me.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

VI

CAP. INHIABAM honoribus, lucr^o, coniugio, et tu inridebas.

VI

patiebar in eis cupiditatibus amarissimas difficultates, te propitio tanto magis, quanto minus sinébas mihi dulcescere quod non eras tu. vide cor meum, domine, qui voluisti, ut hoc recordarer et confiterer tibi. nunc tibi inhaereat anima mea, quam de visco tam tenaci mortis exuisti. quam misera erat ! et sensum vulneris tu pungebas, ut relictis omnibus converteretur ad te, qui es super omnia et sine quo nulla essent omnia, converteretur et sanaretur. quam ergo miser eram, et quomodo egisti, ut sentirem miseriam meam, die illo, quo, cum pararem recitare imperatori laudes, quibus plura mentirer, et mentienti faveretur ab scientibus, easque curas anhelaret cor meum et cogitationum tabificarum febris aestuaret, transiens per quandam vicum Mediolanensem, animadverti pauperem mendicum, iam, credo, saturum iocantem atque laetantem. et ingemui et locutus sum cum amicis, qui mecum erant, multos dolores insaniarum nostrarum ; quia omnibus talibus conatibus nostris,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

VI

The Misery of the ambitious, shewn by the example of a Beggar

I GAPED after honours, gains, wedlock ; and thou CHAP.
laughedst at me. In these desires of mine I under- VI
went most bitter hardships : wherein thou wert so
much the more gracious unto me, as thou didst less
suffer anything to grow sweet unto me, which was
not thou thyself. Behold now my heart, O Lord,
who wouldest I should remember all this, that I might
now confess it unto thee. Let now my soul cleave
fast unto thee, which thou hast freed from that fast-
holding birdlime of death. (How wretched was it
at that time ! Thou didst pierce the wound on the
quick, that forsaking all other things, it might turn
to thee, who art above all, and without whom all
things would turn to nothing : that it might, I say,
turn and be healed. How miserable therefore was I !
And how didst thou deal with me, to make me sensi-
ble of my misery ! That same day, namely, when
I was preparing an oration in praise of the Emperor,
wherein I was to deliver many an untruth, and to be
applauded for my untruth, even by those that knew
I did so. Whilst my heart panted after these cares,
and boiled again with the feverishness of these con-
suming thoughts ; walking along one of the streets
of Milan, I observed a poor beggar man, half drunk
I believe, very jocund and pleasant upon the matter :
but I looking mournfully at him, fell to discourse
with my friends then in company with me, about
the many sorrows occasioned by our own madness ;

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. (qualibus tunc laborabam, sub stimulis cupiditatum
^{VI} trahens infelicitatis meae sarcinam, et trahendo
exaggerans) nihil vellemus aliud nisi ad securam laeti-
tiam pervenire, quo nos mendicus ille iam praeces-
sisset, numquam illuc fortasse venturos. quod enim
iam ille pauculis et emendicatis nummulis adeptus erat,
ad hoc ego tam aerumnosis anfractibus et circuitibus
ambiebam, ad laetitiam scilicet temporalis felicitatis.

Non enim verum gaudium habebat: sed et ego
illis ambitionibus multo falsius quaerebam. et certe
ille laetabatur, ego anxius eram, securus ille, ego
trepidus. et si quisquam percontaretur me, utrum
mallem exultare an metuere, responderem: “exulta-
re”; rursus si rogaret, utrum me talem mallem,
qualis ille, an qualis ego tunc essem, me ipsum curis
timoribusque confectum eligerem, sed perversitate;
numquid veritate? neque enim eo me praeponere
illi debebam, quo doctior eram, quoniam non inde
gaudebam, sed placere inde quaerebam hominibus,
non ut eos docerem, sed tantum et placerem. prop-
terea et baculo disciplinae tuae confringebas ossa
mea.

Recedant ergo ab anima mea qui dicunt ei: “in-
terest, unde quis gaudeat.” gaudebat mendicus ille
vinulentia, tu gloria. qua gloria, domine? quae
non est in te. nam sicut verum gaudium non erat,
ita nec illa vera gloria; et amplius vertebat mentem

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

for that by all such endeavours of ours, (under CHAP.
which I then laboured, and galled by the spurs of VI
desire, dragged after me the burden of mine own
infelicity, increasing it by the dragging) we had mind
of nothing but how to attain some joy without care,
whither that beggar man had arrived before us,
who should never perchance come at all thither.
For that which he had attained unto by means of a
few pence, (and those begged too) the same was I
now plotting for, by many a troublesome turning
and winding ; namely, to compass the joy of a
temporary felicity.

For that beggar man verily enjoyed no true joy ;
but yet I with those my ambitious designs, hunted
after a much uncertainer. And certainly that fellow
was jocund, but I perplexed ; he void of care, I full
of fears. But should any man demand of me,
whether I had rather be merry or fearful ? I would
answer, Merry. Again, were I asked, whether I had
rather be in that beggar man's case, or in mine own
at that time ? I would make choice of mine own,
though thus overgone with cares and fears ; yet was
this upon a wilfulness. For was it out of any true
reason ? For I ought not to prefer myself before that
beggar, because I was more learned than he, seeing
my learning was not it that made me joyful : but I
sought rather to please men by it; not to instruct them,
but merely to delight them. For this cause didst thou
even break my bones with the staff of thy correction.

Away with those therefore from my soul, who say
unto it ; There is much difference betwixt the occa-
sions of a man's rejoicing. That beggar man rejoiced
in his drunkenness ; thou in glory. What glory,
Lord ? That which is not in thee. For even as his
was no true joy, no more was mine any true glory :

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. meam. et ille ipsa nocte digesturus erat ebrietatem
^{VI} suam, ego cum mea dormieram et surrexeram, et dormitus et resurrectus eram; vide quot dies! interest vero, unde quis gaudeat, scio, et gaudium spei fidelis incomparabiliter distat ab illa vanitate. sed et tunc distabat inter nos: nimirum quippe ille felicior erat, non tantum quod hilaritate perfundebatur, cum ego curis eviscerarer, verum etiam quod ille bene optando adquisiverat vinum, ego mentiendo quaerebam typhum. dixi tunc multa in hac sententia caris meis; et saepe advertebam in his, quomodo mihi esset, et inveniebam male mihi esse; et dolebam et conduplicabam ipsum male; et si quid adrississet prosperum, taedebat adprehendere, quia paene priusquam teneretur avolabat.

VII

CAP. CONGEMESCEBAMUS in his, qui simul amice vivebamus,
^{VII} et maxime cum Alypio et Nebridio ista conloquebar. quorum Alypius ex eodem quo ego eram ortus municipio, parentibus primatibus municipalibus, me minor natu. nam et studuerat apud me, cum in nostro
290

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

and it turned my head even more. He was that CHAP.
night to digest his drunkenness ; but many a night VI
had I slept with mine, and had risen again with it,
and was to sleep again, and again to rise with it, how
many days ! But there is indeed a difference in the
grounds of a man's rejoicing. I know there is,
and that the joy of a faithful hope is incomparably
beyond such a vanity. Yea, and at that very time
was there much difference betwixt him and me : for
he verily was the happier man ; not only for that
he was thoroughly drenched in mirth, wheras my
bowels were gripped with cares : but also for that
by his wishing good luck, he had gotten good store
of wine ; whereas I, by a flattering oration, sought
after a mere puff of pride. Much to this purpose
said I at that time to my dear companions : and I
marked by them how it fared with me ; and I found
myself in an ill taking : I grieved for it, by which I
doubled my ill taking ; and when any prosperity
smiled upon me, it irked me to catch at it ; for that
almost before I could lay hand upon it, away it flew
from me.

VII

*He dissuades Alypius from his excessive delight in
the Circensian Games*

We jointly bemoaned ourselves for this, who lived CHAP.
like friends together ; but chiefly and most familiarly VII
did I speak hereof with Alypius and Nebridius : of
whom Alypius was born in the same town with me,
whose parents were of the chief rank there, and him-
self younger than I. For he had also studied under me,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. oppido docere coepi, et postea Carthagini: et dili-
^{VII} gebat multum, quod ei bonus et doctus viderer, et
ego illum, propter magnam virtutis indolem, quae in
non magna aetate satis eminebat. gurges tamen
morum Carthaginensium, quibus nugatoria fervent
spectacula, absorbuerat eum in insaniam circensium.
sed cum in eo miserabiliter volveretur, ego autem
rhetoricam ibi professus publica schola uterer, non-
dum me audiebat ut magistrum propter quandam
simultatem, quae inter me et patrem eius erat
exorta. et compereram, quod circum exitiabiliter
amaret, et graviter angebar, quod tantam spem per-
diturus vel etiam perdidisse mihi videbatur. sed
monendi eum et aliqua coercitione revocandi nulla
erat copia, vel amicitiae benevolentia vel iure magis-
terii. putabam enim eum de me cum patre sentire,
ille vero non sic erat. itaque postposita in hac re
patris voluntate, salutare me cooperat veniens in
auditorium meum, et audire aliquid atque abire.

Sed enim de memoria mihi lapsum erat agere cum
'illo, ne vanorum ludorum caeco et praecipiti studio
tam bonum interimeretur ingenium. verum autem,
domine, tu, qui praesides gubernaculis omnium, quae
creasti, non eum oblitus eras, futurum inter filios tuos
antistitem sacramenti tui: et ut aperte tibi tribuere-
tur eius correctio, per me quidem illam, sed nescien-
tem, operatus es. nam quodam die cum sederem
292

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

first, when I set up school in our own town, and CHAP.
at Carthage afterwards. He loved me very much,
because I seemed of a good disposition to him, and
well learned : and I loved him again, for his great
towardness to virtue, which was eminent enough for
one of no great years. But that whirlpit of those
Carthaginian fashions, amongst whom those idle
spectacles are hotly followed, had already swallowed
up him in immoderate delight of the Circensian
sports. But mean while that he was miserably
tumbled up and down that way, and I professing
rhetoric there, had set up a public school : he made
no use of me as his master, by reason of some un-
kindness risen betwixt his father and me. Although
therefore I had found how dangerously he doted upon
the race-place, and that I were grievously perplexed
that he took the course to undo so good a hope as
was conceived of him, or rather as methought he had
already undone it: yet had I no means, either privately
to advise him, and by way of constraint to reclaim
him, or by interest of a friendship, or the awe of a
master. For I supposed verily, that he had the
same opinion of me with his father ; but he was not
of that mind. Laying aside therefore his father's
quarrel, he began to salute me, coming sometimes
into my school, to hear a little and be gone.

However, I had forgotten to deal with him, that he
should not for a blind and headstrong desire of such
vain pastimes undo so good a wit. But thou, O Lord,
thou who sittest at the helm of all thou hast created,
hadst not forgotten him, who was one day to prove a
chief priest of thy Sacraments ; and that his amend-
ment might plainly be attributed to thyself, thou
truly broughtest it about by my means, who yet knew
nothing of it. For whenas one day I sat in my

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. loco solito, et coram me adessent discipuli, venit,
^{VII} salutavit, sedit, atque in ea quae agebantur intendit
animum. et forte lectio in manibus erat, quam
dum exponerem et oportune mihi adhibenda vide-
retur similitudo circensium, quo illud quod insinua-
bam et iucundius et planius fieret, et cum inrisione
mordaci eorum, quos illa captivasset insania, scis tu,
deus noster, quod tunc de Alypio ab illa peste
sanando non cogitaverim. at ille in se rapuit, me-
que illud non nisi propter se dixisse credidit; et
quod alius acciperet ad suscensendum mihi, accepit
honestus adulescens ad suscensendum sibi, et ad me
ardentius diligendum. dixeras enim tu iam olim
et innexueras litteris tuis: corripe sapientem, et
amabit te.

At illum ego non corripueram, sed utens tu
omnibus et scientibus et nescientibus, ordine quo
nosti—et ille ordo iustus est—de corde et lingua
mea carbones ardentes operatus es, quibus mentem
spei bonae adureres tabescentem ac sanares. taceat
laudes tuas, qui miserations tuas non considerat,
quae tibi de medullis meis confitentur. etenim vero
ille post illa verba proripuit se ex fovea tam alta, qua
libenter demergebatur et cum mira voluptate cae-
cabatur, et excussit animum forti temperantia, et
resiluerunt omnes circensium sordes ab eo, amplius-
que illuc non accessit. deinde patrem reluctantem

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

accustomed place, with my scholars before me, in came CHAP.
he, saluted me, sat him down, and applied his mind to VII
what I then handled. I had by chance a passage
then in hand, which that I might the better illus-
trate, it seemed very seasonable to me to make use of
a similitude borrowed from the Circensian races ; both
to make that which I insinuated more pleasant and
more plain, and to give a biting quip withal, at those
whom that madness had enthralled. God, thou
knowest, that I little thought at that time of curing
Alypius of that pestilence. But he took it to him-
self, and conceived that I merely intended it towards
him ; and what another man would have made an
occasion of being angry with me, that good young
man made a reason of being offended at himself, and
to love me the more fervently. For thou hadst said
it long ago, and put it into thy Book, Rebuke a wise Prov. ix. 8
man, and he will love thee.

But for my part, I meant no rebuke towards him :
but 'tis thou who makest use of all men, both
knowing or not knowing, in that order which thy-
self knowest, and that order is just. Out of my
heart and tongue thou wroughtest burning coals, by
which thou mightest set on fire that languishing
disposition of his, of which so good hopes had been
conceived, and mightest cure it. Let such a one
conceal thy praises, who considereth not of thy
mercies, which my very marrow confesses unto thee.
For he upon that speech, heaved himself out of that
pit so deep, wherein he had wilfully been plunged,
and was hoodwinked with the wretched pastime
of it ; and roused up his mind with a well re-
solved moderation ; whereupon all those filths of
the Circensian pastimes flew off from him, nor came
he ever at them afterwards. Upon this, prevailed

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. evicit, ut me magistro uteretur: cessit ille atque
^{VII} concessit. et audire me rursus incipiens, illa mecum
superstitione involutus est, amans in Manichaeis
ostentationem continentiae, quam veram et ger-
manam putabat. erat autem illa vecors et seduc-
toria, pretiosas animas captans nondum virtutis altitu-
dinem scientes tangere, et superficie decipi faciles,
sed tamen adumbratae simulataeque virtutis.

VIII

CAP. Non sane relinquens incantatam sibi a parentibus
^{VIII} terrenam viam, Romam praecesserat, ut ius disceret,
et ibi gladiatorii spectaculi hiatu incredibili et in-
credibiliter abreptus est. cum enim aversaretur et
detestaretur talia, quidam eius amici et condiscipuli,
cum forte de prandio redeuntibus pervium esset,
recusantem vehementer et resistentem, familiari vio-
lentia duxerunt in amphitheatum crudelium et
funestorum ludorum diebus, haec dicentem: "si
corpus meum in locum illum trahitis, numquid et
animum et oculos meos in illa spectacula potestis
intendere? adero itaque absens, ac sic et vos
et illa superabo." quibus auditis illi nihilo setius
eum adduxerunt secum, id ipsum forte explorare
296

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

he with his unwilling father, that he might be one CHAP.
of my scholars. He yielded and condescended : so VII
that Alypius beginning to be my auditor again,
was bemuddled in the same superstition with me,
loving that ostentation of continity in the Mani-
chees, which he supposed to be true and unfeigned.
But verily no better it was than a senseless and a
seducing continity, ensnaring precious souls, not
able yet to reach to the height of virtue, and easy to
be beguiled with a fair outside, of that which was
but a shadowed and a feigned virtue.

VIII

*Alypius is taken with a delight of the Sword-plays,
which before he hated*

HE not forsaking that worldly course which his CHAP.
parents had charmed him to pursue, went before me VIII
to Rome, to study the laws, where he was incredibly
carried away with an incredible greediness for the
sword players. For being utterly against and de-
testing such spectacles, when he was one day by
chance met withal by divers of his acquaintance
and fellow-students coming from dinner, they with
a familiar kind of violence, haled him (vehemently
denying and resisting them) along into the Amphi-
theatre, on a time when these cruel and deadly
shows were exhibited ; he thus protesting : " Though
you hale my body to that place, and there set me,
can you after that force me to give my mind, and
lend my eyes to these shows ? I shall therefore be
absent even while I am present, and so shall I over-
come both you and them too." His companions
hearing these words, led him on never the slower,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. cupientes, utrum posset efficere. quo ubi ventum est
VIII et sedibus quibus potuerunt locati sunt, fervebant
omnia inmanissimis voluptatibus. ille clausis foribus
oculorum interdixit animo, ne in tanta mala pro-
cederet. atque utinam et aures opturasset! nam
quodam pugnae casu, cum clamor ingens totius
populi vehementer eum pulsasset, curiositate victus,
et quasi paratus, quidquid illud esset, etiam visum
contemnere et vincere, aperuit, et percussus est
graviore vulnere in anima quam ille in corpore, quem
cernere concupivit, ceciditque miserabilius quam ille,
quo cadente factus est clamor: qui per eius aures
intravit et reseravit eius lumina, ut esset, qua feri-
retur et deiceretur audax adhuc potius quam fortis
animus, et eo infirmior, quo de se praesumpserat, qui
debuit de te. ut enim vidit illum sanguinem, in-
manitatem simul ebibit; et non se avertit, sed fixit
aspectum, et hauriebat furias et nesciebat, et delecta-
batur scelere certaminis, et cruenta voluptate inebria-
batur. et non erat iam ille, qui venerat, sed unus de
turba, ad quam venerat, et verus eorum socius, a
quibus adductus erat. quid plura? spectavit,
clamavit, exarsit, abstulit inde secum insaniam, qua
stimularetur redire, non tantum cum illis, a quibus

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

desirous perchance to try, whether he could be as good as his word or no. When they were come thither, and had taken their places as they could, all that round grew hot with hideous gloating. But Alypius closing up the doors of his eyes, forbade his mind to range abroad after such mischiefs; and I would that he had stopped his ears also. For upon the fall of one in the fight, a mighty cry of the people beating strongly upon him, he (being overcome by curiosity, and as it were prepared, whatsoever it were, to contemn it even when seen, and to overcome it) opened his eyes, and was struck with a deeper wound in his soul, than the other was in his body, whom he desired to behold: and he presently fell more miserably than the sword-player did, upon whose fall that mighty noise was raised. Which noise entered through his ears, and unlocked his eyes, to make way for the striking and beating down of his soul, which was bold rather than valiant heretofore; and so much the weaker, for that it had trusted on itself, which ought only to have trusted on thee. For so soon as he saw the blood, he at the very instant drunk down a kind of savageness; nor did he turn away his head, but fixed his eye upon it, drinking up unawares the very Furies themselves; being much taken with the barbarousness of the sword-fight, and even drunk again with that bloodthirsty joy. Nor was he now the man he was when he came first thither, but become one of the throng he came unto; yea, an entire companion of theirs that brought him thither. What shall I say more? He looked on, he cried out for company, he was inflamed with it, carried home such a measure of madness as spurred him on to come another time: and that not only in their

CHAP.
VIII

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. abstractus est, sed etiam piae illis et alios trahens.
VIII et inde tamen manu validissima et misericordissima
eruisti eum tu, et docuisti eum non sui habere, sed
tui fiduciam ; sed longe postea.

IX

CAP. VERUM tamen iam hoc ad medicinam futuram in eius
IX memoria reponebatur. nam et illud, quod, cum
adhuc studeret iam me audiens apud Carthaginem, et
medio die cogitarat in foro quod recitaturus erat,
sicut exerceri scholastici solent, sivisti eum comprehendi
ab aeditimis fori tamquam furem, non arbitror
aliam ob causam te permisisse, deus noster, nisi ut
ille vir tantus futurus iam inciperet discere, quam
non facile in noscendis causis homo ab homine damnandus
esset temeraria credulitate. quippe ante tribunal deambulabat solus cum tabulis ac stilo, cum
ecce adulescens quidam ex numero scholasticorum,
fur verus, securim clanculo apportans, illo non sentiente,
ingressus est ad cancellos plumbeos, qui vico
argentario desuper praeminent, et praecidere plum-
bum coepit. sono autem securis audito submurmura-
verunt argentarii, qui subter erant, et miserunt qui
adprehenderent quem forte invenissent. quorun

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

company who first haled him on, but to run before CHAP.
them too, yea, and hale on others also. Yet out of ^{VIII} all this didst thou with a most strong and merciful hand pluck him notwithstanding, and taughtest him to repose no more confidence in himself, but upon thee only. But this was not till a great while after.

IX

Alypius was apprehended for suspicion of thievery

BUT thus much laid he up in his memory for a CHAP. medicine hereafter: as that also which fell out when ^{IX} he was yet my scholar at Carthage: where meditating at noon time once in the market place, upon something he was to say by heart (as scholars use to be exercised) thou sufferedst him to be apprehended by the officers of the market place for a thief. For no other cause, I suppose, didst thou, O our God, suffer it, but that he, who was hereafter to prove so great a man, should now begin to learn, that in judging of causes man was not to be condemned by man out of a rash credulity. For as he was walking by himself before the place of judgment, with his noting tables and his pen, behold a young man of the number of the students, (who was the right thief indeed) privily bringing a hatchet with him (Alypius never perceiving him) gat in as far as the leaden grate-works which cover the street of the silversmiths, and began to chop in sunder the lead. But the noise of the hatchet being heard, the silversmiths that were underneath began to mutter, and sent forth to apprehend whom ever they should find. But the thief hearing their voices, ran away, leaving his hatchet behind

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. vocibus auditis, relicto instrumento, ille discessit
^{IX} timens, ne cum eo teneretur. Alypius autem, qui non viderat intrantem, exeuntem sensit et celeriter vidi abeuntem, et causam scire cupiens ingressus est locum; et inventam securim stans atque admirans considerabat, cum ecce illi, qui missi erant, reperiunt eum solum ferentem ferrum, cuius sonitu exciti venerant: tenent, adtrahunt, congregatis inquilinis fori tamquam furem manifestum se comprehendisse gloriantur, et inde offerendus iudiciis ducebatur. sed hactenus docendus fuit. statim enim, domine, adfuisti innocentiae, cuius testis eras tu solus. cum enim duceretur, vel ad custodiam vel ad supplicium, fit eis obviam quidam architectus, cuius maxima erat cura publicarum fabricarum. gaudent illi eum potissimum occurrisse, cui solebant in suspicionem venire ablatarum rerum, quae perissent de foro, ut quasi tandem iam ille cognosceret, a quibus haec fierent. verum autem viderat homo saepe Alypium in domo cuiusdam senatoris, ad quem salutandum ventitabat; statimque cognitum manu adprehensa semovit a turbis, et tanti mali causam quaerens, quid gestum esset, audivit, omnesque tumultuantes, qui aderant, et minaciter frementes iussit venire secum. et venerunt ad domum illius adulescentis, qui rem commiserat. puer vero erat ante ostium, et tam parvus erat, ut nihil exinde domino suo metuens, facile posset

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

him, fearing to be taken with it. Alypius now, who CHAP.
spied him not when he came in, perceived him as IX
he went out, and with what speed he made away,
and being desirous to know what the matter was, went
into the place ; where finding the hatchet, he stood
still a while, admiring and considering upon it ; when
behold, those that were sent, find him alone with the
hatchet in his hand, startled by the noise whereof
they had made thither : they lay hold upon him, hale
him away, and gathering the neighbours dwelling in
the market place about them, they congratulate one
another for taking so notorious a felon, leading him
away to the justice thereupon. But no further was
Alypius to be instructed. For presently, O Lord,
camest thou to the succour of his innocence, whereof
thou wert the only witness. For as he was led along,
(either to prison or execution) there encountered
them a certain architect, who had the charge of
the public buildings. Glad they were to meet him
of all the rest, for that they were used to fall under
his suspicion of stealing goods, lost out of the
market place ; that he might take notice at length by
whom these kind of cheats were used to be played.
But that party had divers times seen Alypius at a
certain Senator's house, whom he often came to
visit ; who presently taking knowledge of him, took
him aside by the hand, and privately enquiring the
occasion of that mischance, heard the whole carriage
of the business from him ; and bade all that rabble
(all in an uproar, and threatening of Alypius) to go
along with him. And to the house they came of
that young man who had committed the fact : where,
behold, there was a boy before the door, who was so
little, as having not the wit to fear doing his master
any hurt by it, was likely enough to disclose the

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. totum indicare ; cum eo quippe in foro fuit pedisecus.

IX quem posteaquam recoluit Alypius, architecto intimavit. at ille securim demonstravit puero quaerens ab eo, cuius esset. qui confestim "nostra" inquit ; deinde interrogatus aperuit cetera. sic in illam domum translata causa, confusisque turbis, quae de illo triumphare iam cooperant, futurus dispensator verbi tui, et multarum in ecclesia tua causarum examinator, experientior instructiorque discessit.

X

CAP. HUNC ergo Romae inveneram, et adhaesit mihi for-

X tissimo vinculo, mecumque Mediolanium profectus est, ut nec me desereret, et de iure, quod didicerat, aliquid ageret secundum votum magis parentum quam suum. et ter iam adsederat mirabili continentia ceteris, cum ille magis miraretur eos, qui aurum innocentiae praeponerent. temptata est quoque eius indoles, non solum de inlecebra cupiditatis sed etiam stimulo timoris. Romae asidebat comiti largitionum Italicianarum. erat eo tempore quidam potentissimus senator, cuius et beneficiis obstricti multi et terrori subditi erant. voluit sibi licere

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

whole matter unto them : for he had followed his master to the market place. Whom so soon as ever Alypius remembered, he told the architect of him : and he showing the hatchet to the boy, asked him whose that was ? "Ours," quoth he presently ; and being further questioned upon the matter, he discovered everything. Thus was the burglary laid upon the master of that house, and the rude multitude ashamed, which had already begun to triumph over Alypius, who was hereafter to be a dispenser of thy Word, and an examiner of many causes in thy Church : who went away now, better experienced and instructed by this accident.

X

Of the great Integrity of Alypius, and of Nebridius' coming

THIS Alypius therefore I afterwards lit upon at Rome ; where he knit in with me with a most strong tie ; whence he went with me to Milan, both that he might not break company with me, and that he might withal practise something in the law he had applied himself unto : rather to fulfil his parents' desire, than his own. There had he thrice already sat as an Assessor for Justice, with a freedom from bribery that was the wonder of the rest : he wondering at others rather, who preferred gold before honesty. His disposition was tested besides, not only with a bait of covetousness, but with the spur of fear also. At Rome he had been Assessor to the Count of the Italian Bounties. There was at that time a most potent Senator, to whose favours many stood engaged, whom many also were much afraid of.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. nescio quid ex more potentiae suae, quod esset
X per leges inlicitum; restitit Alypius. promissum
est praemium; inrisit animo. praetentae minae;
calcavit, mirantibus omnibus inusitatam animam, quae
hominem tantum, et innumerabilibus praestandi no-
cendique modis ingenti fama celebratum, vel amicum
non optaret vel non formidaret inimicum. ipse
autem iudex, cui consiliarius erat, quamvis et ipse
fieri nollet, non tamen aperte recusabat, sed in istum
causam transferens ab eo se non permitti adserebat,
quia et re vera, si ipse faceret, iste discederet. hoc
solo autem paene iam inlectus erat studio litterario,
ut pretiis praetorianis codices sibi conficiendos
curaret; sed consulta iustitia, deliberationem in
melius vertit, utiliorem iudicans aequitatem, qua
prohibebatur, quam potestate, qua sinebatur.
parvum est hoc; sed qui in parvo fidelis est, et in
magno fidelis est, nec ullo modo erit inane, quod
tuae veritatis ore processit: si in iniusto mamona
fideles non fuistis, verum quis dabit vobis? et si in
alieno fideles non fuistis, vestrum quis dabit vobis?
tal is tunc ille inhaerebat mihi, mecumque nutabat in
consilio, quisnam esset tenendus vitae modus.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

This great man would needs by his usual power, CHAP.
have a thing pass the court, which by the laws was

X

utterly forbidden: Alypius crossed it. A bribe was promised him, he with all his heart despised it. Threats were used, he trampled them under foot: all men in the mean time admiring so rare a spirit, which either desired not such a man (so infinitely famed for the innumerable means he had, either to do a man a good or a shrewd turn) to be his friend, or feared not to have him for his enemy. As for the Judge himself, in whose court Alypius was Assessor, although for his own part he were unwilling to have it pass, yet did he not openly cross it, but put the matter off to this Alypius; pretending that by him he was not suffered to do it: for verily if he should have offered it, Alypius would have gone off the bench. But one thing there was that did almost tempt him by his love of learning; that, namely, he might get himself a library at such under-prices as the Praetors had their books at. But consulting with justice, he altered his purpose to the better; esteeming equity to be more gainful, by which he was prohibited that course, than power could be, upon which he might take the liberty. All this hitherto said of him, is but little: but he that is faithful in that

Luke xvi.

10

which is least, is faithful also in much. Nor can that possibly be to no purpose spoken, which proceeded

out of the mouth of thy Truth: If ye have not been Luke xvi.

11

faithful in the unrighteous mammon, who will commit

to your trust true riches? And if ye have not been Luke xvi.

12

faithful in that which is another man's, who shall give

you that which is your own? Such a man as I have

described, did he at that time join himself unto me;

and wavered in his purpose as I did, what course of life was to be taken.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. Nebridius etiam, qui relicta patria vicina Carthagini atque ipsa Carthagine, ubi frequentissimus erat, relicto paterno rure optimo, relicta domo et non secutura matre, nullam ob aliam causam Mediolanium venerat, nisi ut mecum viveret in flagrantissimo studio veritatis atque sapientiae, pariter spirabat pariterque fluctuabat, beatae vitae inquisitor ardens, et quaestionum difficillimarum scrutator acerrimus. et erant ora trium egentium, et inopiam suam sibimet invicem anhelantium, et ad te expectantium, ut dares eis escam in tempore opportuno. et in omni amaritudine, quae nostros saeculares actus de misericordia tua sequebatur, intuentibus nobis finem, cur ea pateremur, occurrabant tenebrae, et aversabamur gementes et dicebamus: "quamdiu haec?" et hoc crebro dicebamus et dicentes non relinquebamus ea, quia non elucebat certum aliquid, quod illis relictis adprehenderemus.

XI

CAP. Et ego maxime mirabar satagens et recolens, quam longum tempus esset ab undevicensimo anno aetatis meae, quo fervore cooperam studio sapientiae,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

Nebridius also, who having left his native country CHAP.
near Carthage, yea and Carthage itself, where for
the most part he lived; leaving his father's lands,
which were very rich; leaving his own house, and a
mother behind, who was not ready to follow after
him; was by this time come to Milan, and for no
other reason neither, but that he might bestow
himself with me in a most ardent desire after truth
and wisdom. Together with me he sighed, and with
me he wavered; still continuing a most ardent
searcher after happiness, and a most acute examiner
of the difficultest questions. Thus were there now
gotten together the mouths of three beggars, sighing
out their wants one to another, and waiting upon
thee, that thou mightest give them their meat in Ps. cxlv. 15
due season. And in much anguish of spirit (which
by the disposing of thy mercy, still followed our
worldly affairs) looking towards the end, why we
should suffer all this, darkness beclouded us: where-
upon we turned away mourning to ourselves, saying:
How long will things continue at this stay? This
we often said, but in saying so, we yet forsook not
our errors; for that we yet discovered no certainty,
which when we had forsaken them, we might betake
ourselves unto.

XI

*He deliberates what course of life he were best
to take*

AND I admired extremely (pondering earnestly with CHAP.
myself, and examining of my memory) what a deal
of time I had consumed since that nine and twen-
tieth year of mine age, in which I began first to be XI

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

CAP. disponens, ea inventa, relinquere omnes vanarum cupiditatum spes inanes et insanias mendaces. et ecce

iam tricenariam aetatem gerebam, in eodem luto haesitans aviditate fruendi praesentibus, fugientibus et dissipantibus me, dum dico : “ cras inveniam ; ecce manifestum apparebit, et tenebo ; ecce Faustus veniet et exponet omnia. o magni viri Academici ! nihil ad agendam vitam certi comprehendi potest ? immo quaeramus diligentius et non desperemus. ecce iam non sunt absurdia in libris ecclesiasticis, quae absurdia videbantur, et possunt aliter atque honeste intellegi. figam pedes in eo gradu, in quo puer a parentibus positus eram, donec inveniatur perspicua veritas. sed ubi quaeretur ? quando quaeretur ? non vacat Ambrosio, non vacat legere. ubi ipsos codices quaerimus ? unde aut quando conparamus ? a quibus sumimus ? deputentur tempora, distribuantur horae pro salute animae. magna spes oborta est : non docet catholica fides, quod putabamus et vani accusabamus. nefas habent docti eius credere deum figura humani corporis terminatum. et dubitamus pulsare, quo aperiantur cetera ? antemeridianis horis discipuli occupant ; ceteris quid facimus ? cur non id agimus ? sed quando

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

inflamed with the love of wisdom : resolving, when I CHAP
had found that, to let pass all those empty hopes,
and lying frenzies of vain desires. And behold I
was now going of my thirtieth year, still sticking in
the same clay ; still possessed with a greediness of
enjoying things present, they as fast flitting and
wasting my soul ; I still saying to myself, To-morrow
I shall find it out, it will appear very plainly, and
I shall understand it : and behold, Faustus the
Manichee will come, and clear everything. O you
great men, of the Academics' opinion : can no cer-
tain course for the ordering of our lives possibly be
comprehended ? nay, let us rather search the more
diligently, and not despair of finding : for behold
those things in the ecclesiastical books are not absurd
to us now, which sometimes seemed so : for they
may be otherwise, yea, and that honestly under-
stood. I will henceforth pitch my foot upon that
step, on which, being yet a child, my parents placed
me, until such time as the clear truth may be found.
But where about shall it be sought for ? when shall
it be sought for ? Ambrose is not at leisure, nor
have we ourselves any spare time to read. But
where shall we find the books to read in ? Whence,
or when can we procure them, or from whom borrow
them ? Let set times be appointed, and certain hours
distributed for the health of our souls. We now
begin to conceive great hopes : the Catholic faith
teaches not what we thought it had, whereof we
vainly accused it : the learned men of that faith
hold it for a detestable opinion, to believe God to be
contained under the figure of a human body : and
do we doubt to knock, that all the other mysteries
may also be opened unto us ? All the forenoons our
scholars take up, what shall we do the rest of the

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. salutamus amicos maiores, quorum suffragiis opus
XI

habemus? quando praeparamus quod emant scho-
lastici? quando reparamus nos ipsos relaxando animo
ab intentione curarum? pereant omnia et dimitta-
mus haec vana et inania: conferamus nos ad solam
inquisitionem veritatis. vita misera est, mors incerta
est; subito obrepatur—quomodo hinc exhibimus? et
ubi nobis discenda sunt quae hinc negleximus? ac
non potius huius neglegentiae supplicia luenda?
quid, si mors ipsa omnem curam cum sensu am-
putabit et finiet? ergo et hoc quaerendum. sed
absit, ut ita sit. non vacat, non est inane, quod
tam eminens culmen auctoritatis Christianae fidei toto
orbe diffunditur. numquam tanta et talia pro nobis
divinitus agerentur, si morte corporis etiam vita
anima consumeretur. quid cunctamur igitur, relicta
spe saeculi, conferre nos totos ad quaerendum deum et
vitam beatam? sed expecta: iucunda sunt etiam ista,
habent non parvam dulcedinem suam; non facile ab
eis praecidenda est intentio, quia turpe est ad ea
rursum redire. ecce iam quantum est, ut inpetretur
aliquis honor. et quid amplius in his desiderandum?
suppetit amicorum maiorum copia: ut nihil aliud

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

day? Why go we not about this? But when then shall we visit our greater friends, of whose favours we stand in need? What time shall we have to compose some discourse to sell to scholars? When shall we recreate ourselves, and unbend our minds from those cares they are too earnest upon? Let all these thoughts perish, let us give over these vain and empty fancies, and betake ourselves solely to search out the truth. Life is miserable; death uncertain; if it steals upon us on the sudden, in what case shall we go out of the world, and where shall we then learn what we have here neglected? Or rather, shall we not there suffer the due punishment of our negligence? If it be objected, that death will quite cut off both care and sense of all these things, and there's an end of them: then let that be first enquired into. But God forbid that it should be so. It is not for no purpose, 'tis no idle toy, that so eminent a height of authority which the Christian faith hath, is diffused all the world over. Never would such and so great blessings be by the Divine Providence wrought for us, if so be that together with the death of the body, the life of the soul should be brought to nothing also. Wherefore then delay we time any longer, that giving over our hopes of this world, we might give up ourselves wholly to seek after God and a happy life? But stay a while: even these worldly things are sweet, and they have some, and that no small, pleasure. We are not too lightly to divorce our purposes from them, for that it were a foul shame to make love again to them. See, 'tis no such great matter to obtain some office of honour; and what should a man desire more in this world? We have store of potent friends: not to push on for anything too

XI

313

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. multum festinemus, vel praesidatus dari potest. et
^{XI} ducenda uxor cum aliqua pecunia, nesumptum nostrum
gravet, et ille erit modus cupiditatis. multi magni
viri et imitatione dignissimi sapientiae studio cum
coniugibus dediti fuerunt."

Cum haec dicebam et alternabant hi venti et
inpellebant huc atque illuc cor meum, transibant
tempora, et tardabam converti ad dominum; et differe-
bam de die in diem vivere in te, et non differebam
cotidie in memet ipso mori: amans beatam vitam
timebam illam in sede sua, et ab ea fugiens quaerebam
eam. putabam enim me miserum fore nimis, si femi-
nae privarer amplexibus, et medicinam misericordiae
tuae ad eandem infirmitatem sanandam non cogita-
bam, quia expertus non eram; et propriarum virium
credebam esse continentiam, quarum mihi non eram
conscius, cum tam stultus essem, ut nescirem, sicut
scriptum est, neminem posse esse continentem, nisi
tu dederis. utique dares, si gemitu interno pul-
sarem aures tuas et fide solida in te iactarem curam
meam.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

much, even a governor's place may be bestowed upon us: then a wife should be wedded with a good portion to ease our charges; and this shall be the full point of our desires. Many great persons, and those worthy of our imitation, have addicted themselves to the study of wisdom in the state of marriage.

CHAP.
XI

Whilst these things I discoursed of, and these winds of uncertainties changed up and down, and drove my heart this way and that way: the time still passed on, but I was slow to be converted to my Lord God; and from one day to another I deferred to live in thee, but deferred not daily to die within myself. Being thus in love with an happy life, yet feared I to find it in its proper place, and fleeing from it, I sought after it. I thought I should be too miserable, should I be debarred of the embracements of a woman: as for that medicine of thy mercy which should cure that infirmity, I never thought of it; and all because I had no experience of it. As for continency, I supposed it to be in the liberty of our own power, which I for my part felt that I had not; being so foolish withal, that I knew not it was written, that no man can preserve his chastity unless thou give it. And thou verily wouldest have given it, if with cordial groanings I should have knocked at thine ears, and with a settled faith have cast my cares upon thee.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

XII

CAP PROHIBEBAT me sane Alypius ab uxore ducenda,
XII cantans nullo modo nos posse securo otio simul in amore sapientiae vivere, sicut iam diu desideraremus, si id fecissem. erat enim ipse in ea re etiam tunc castissimus, ita ut mirum esset; quia vel experientiam concubitus ceperat in ingressu adulescentiae sua, sed non haeserat, magisque doluerat et spreverat, et deinde iam continentissime vivebat. ego autem resistebam illi exemplis eorum, qui coniugati coluisserant sapientiam, et promeruisserant deum, et habuissent fideliter ac dilexisserant amicos. a quorum ego granditate quidem animi longe aberam: et deligatus morbo carnis mortifera suavitate trahebam catenam meam, solvi timens, et quasi concusso vulnere, repellens verba bene suadentis tamquam manum solventis.

Insuper etiam per me ipsi quoque Alypio loquebatur serpens, et innectebat atque spargebat per linguam meam dulces laqueos in via eius, quibus illi honesti et expediti pedes implicarentur. cum enim me ille miraretur, quem non parvi penderet, ita haerere visco illius voluptatis, ut me adfirmarem, quotienscumque inde inter nos quaereremus, caelibem vitam nullo modo posse degere, atque ita

XII

*A Contention between Alypius and Augustine, about
Marriage and Single Life*

ALYPIUS indeed was the man that kept me from marrying of a wife; alleging, that by no means could we enjoy so much undistracted leisure as to live together in the love of wisdom (as we long since had desired) should I take that course. For he himself was so chaste that way, that it was a wonder to see: for he had made a trial of that act in the beginning of his youth; but having not engaged himself by it, he was sorry for it rather, and despised it; living from that time until this present most continently. For my part I opposed him with the examples of such men as in the state of matrimony had professed wisdom, and were acceptable unto God, and conversed faithfully and lovingly with their acquaintances: of the greatness of whose spirit I was far enough short. Thus I, bound fast with the disease of the flesh, and with the deadly sweetness of it, drew my shackles along with me, much afraid to have them knocked off: and as if my wound had been too hard rubbed by it, I put back his good persuasions, as it were the hand of one that would unchain me.

Moreover, even by me did the serpent speak unto Alypius, preparing and laying by my tongue most pleasurable snares in his way, in which his honest and yet free feet might be entangled. For whenas he much admired at me, (whom he slightly esteemed not of) for sticking so fast in the birdlime of that pleasure, as resolutely to affirm, so oft as we had speech about it, that I could by no means lead a single life: and

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. me defenderem, cum illum mirantem viderem, ut di-
XII cerem multum interesse inter illud, quod ipse raptim
et furtim expertus esset, quod paene iam ne memi-
nisset quidem atque ideo nulla molestia facile con-
temneret, et delectationes consuetudinis meae; ad
quas si accessisset honestum nomen matrimonii, non
eum mirari oportere, cur ego illam vitam nequirem
spernere: cooperat et ipse desiderare coniugium, ne-
quaquam victus libidine talis voluptatis, sed curiositatis.
dicebat enim scire se cupere, quidnam esset illud,
sine quo vita mea, quae illi sic placebat, non mihi
vita, sed poena videretur. stupebat enim liber ab
illo vinculo animus servitutem meam, et stupendo
ibat in experiendi cupidinem, venturus in ipsam ex-
perientiam atque inde fortasse lapsurus in eam quam
stupebat servitutem, quoniam sponsonem volebat
facere cum morte, et qui amat periculum, incidet in
illud. neutrum enim nostrum, si quod est coniugale
decus in officio regendi matrimonii et suscipiendorum
liberorum, ducebat nisi tenuiter. magna autem ex
parte atque vehementer consuetudo satiandae insatia-
bilis concupiscentiae me captum excruciatbat, illum
autem admiratio capiendum trahebat. sic eramus,
donec tu, altissime, non deserens humum nostram,
miseratus miseros, subvenires miris et occultis modis.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

that I used this for an argument (when I saw him so CHAP
much wonder at the matter) that there was a great ^{XII} difference betwixt the pleasure which he had tried by stealth and snatches, (which he scarce now remembered, and might easily therefore despise) and the delights of my daily habit: into which might but the honest name of marriage be added, he should not wonder then, why I had not the power to contemn that course of living: even he began to desire to be married; not as if overcome with the lust of so poor a pleasure, as all out of a curiosity: for he desired, as he said, to know what manner of content that should be, without which my life, which pleased him so, seemed not a life but a punishment unto me. For his mind, that was free as yet from that clog, stood amazed at my thraldom; and out of that amazement, he proceeded to an itch of trying: like enough to have come to the experience of it, and from the bare experience, to fall perchance into that bondage he in me so much admired at; seeing he was so willing to enter into a covenant with death; and he that loves danger shall fall into it. For the conjugal honour (if there be any) in the office of well ordering the duties of a married life, and of having of children, moved neither of us but little. But that which for the most part did most violently afflict me, already made a slave to it, was the custom of satisfying an insatiable lust; but him, that was hereafter to be enslaved, did an admiration screw up to it. In this case we continued, until thou, O most High, not forsaking our lowness, having compassion of us that stood in need of it, didst at length fetch us off, by admirable and secret devices.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

XIII

CAP. Et instabatur in pigre, ut ducerem uxorem. iam
XIII petebam, iam promittebatur, maxime matre dante operam, quo me iam coniugatum baptismus salutaris ablueret, quo me in dies gaudebat aptari, et vota sua ac promissa tua in mea fide conpleri animadvertebat. cum sane et rogatu meo et desiderio suo forti clamore cordis abs te deprecaretur cotidie, ut ei per visum ostenderes aliquid de futuro matrimonio meo, numquam voluisti. et videbat quaedam vana, et phantastica, quo cogebat in petus de hac re satagentis humani spiritus, et narrabat mihi non cum fiducia, qua solebat, cum tu demonstrabas ei, sed contemnens ea. dicebat enim discernere se nescio quo sapore, quem verbis explicare non poterat, quid interesset inter revelantem te et animam suam somniantem. instabatur tamen, et puella petebatur, cuius aetas ferme biennio minus quam nubilis erat, et quia ea placebat, exspectabatur.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

XIII

Augustine lays out for a Wife

AND much ado there was to get me a wife. Now CHAP.
went I a wooing, and then was the wench promised XIII
me: my mother taking most pains to beat the bar-
gain: her purpose in it being, that when I were
once married, the wholesome waters of Baptism might
cleanse me, towards which she much rejoiced to see
me daily fitting myself; observing that all her own
desires, and thy promises, were to be fulfilled in my
embracing of the faith. At which time verily, both
by mine own entreaties, and her desires, and with
very strong cries of her heart, did she daily beg of
thee, that thou wouldest vouchsafe by some vision to
discover something unto her concerning my future
marriage, but thou wouldest never do it. Yet saw she
indeed certain vain and fantastical things, driven by
the earnestness of the human spirit, so busied about
this matter. These she told me of; yet not with that
confidence she was wont when thyself afforded any
visions unto her, but slighting them, as it were. For
she could, as she said, (through I know not what
relish she had, which in words she could not express)
easily enough discern how much difference there
was betwixt thy revelations, and the dreams of her
own spirit. Yet went she forward earnestly, and
the parents' goodwill was asked; but the maid
wanted two years of being marriageable. Yet, for
that I had a good liking to her, I was content to stay
so long for her.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VI

XIV

CAP. ET multi amici agitaveramus animo, et conloquentes
XIV ac detestantes turbulentas humanae vitae molestias,
paene iam firmaveramus remoti a turbis otiose vivere,
id otium sic moliti, ut, si quid habere possemus,
conferremus in medium, unamque rem familiarem
conflaremus ex omnibus, ut per amicitiae sinceritatem
non esset aliud huius et aliud illius, sed quod ex
cunctis fieret unum, et universum singulorum esset
et omnia omnium; cum videremur nobis esse posse
decem ferme homines in eadem societate, essentque
inter nos praedivites, Romanianus maxime com-
municeps noster, quem tunc graves aestus nego-
tiorum suorum ad comitatum adtraxerant, ab ineunte
aetate mihi familiarissimus. qui maxime instabat huic
rei, et magnam in suadendo habebat auctoritatem,
quod ampla res eius multum ceteris anteibat. et
placuerat nobis, ut bini annui tamquam magistratus
omnia necessaria curarent, ceteris quietis. sed poste-
quam coepit cogitari, utrum hoc mulierculae sinerent,
quas et alii nostrum iam habebant et nos habere vole-
bamus, totum illud placitum, quod bene formabamus,
dissiluit in manibus, atque confractum et abiectum
est. inde ad suspiria et gemitus et gressus ad
322

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

XIV

A new Plot is laid and broken

AND we were many friends, which debated together, CHAP.
conferring about the detesting these turbulent XIV
molestationes of human life ; and we had now almost
resolved to sequester ourselves from company, and
to live at peace : we hoped so to obtain that peace,
by putting together what stock every man was able
to make, and making one household of all : that
through the plain dealing of a common friendship,
one thing should not be this man's, and another
thing that man's ; but what stock should be made
up out of every man's particular, should in the whole
belong unto the interest of every single person,
and all together, unto all in general. It seemed
to us, that there might near be some ten persons
in this brotherhood : some of which were very rich
men ; and Romanianus especially, our townsman
(from his childhood a very familiar friend of mine)
whom the hot pursuit of his business had brought up
to Court : who was most earnest of all for this pro-
ject : and therein was his voice of great authority,
because his wealth was much greater than the rest.
And we had set it down that two officers should
be yearly chosen, for the making of necessary pro-
visions, whilst the rest were quiet. But so soon as
we began to consider better of it, whether our wives,
(which some of us had already, and I resolved to
have shortly) would endure all this or no ; all that
so well laid plot fell to pieces in our hands, and was
utterly dashed and cast aside. Thence returned
we again to our old sighings, and groanings, and

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. sequendas latas et tritas vias saeculi, quoniam multae
XIV

cogitationes erant in corde nostro, consilium autem
tuum manet in aeternum. ex quo consilio deridebas
nostra et tua praeparabas nobis, datus escam in
opportunitate, et aperturus manum, atque impleturus
animas nostras benedictione.

XV

CAP. INTEREA mea peccata multiplicabantur, et avulsa a
XV

latere meo, tamquam impedimento coniugii, cum qua
cubare solitus eram, cor, ubi adhaerebat, concisum
et vulneratum mihi erat et trahebat sanguinem. et
illa in Africam redierat, vovens tibi alium se virum
nescitaram, relieto apud me naturali ex illa filio
meo. at ego infelix nec feminae imitator, dilationis
inpatiens, tamquam post biennium accepturus eam
quam petebam, quia non amator coniugii sed libi-
dinis servus eram, procuravi aliam, non utique
coniugem, quo tamquam sustentaretur et perduce-
retur, vel integer vel auctior, morbus animae meae
satellitio perdurantis consuetudinis in regnum
uxorium. nec sanabatur vulnus illud meum, quod

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

wanderings, and to our former following those broad CHAP.
and beaten ways of the world : for that many thoughts XIV
were in our hearts, but thy counsel standeth for Matt. vii. 13
ever. Out of which counsel didst thou deride ours, Ps. xxxiii.
and laid the groundwork for thine own ; purposing 11
to give us meat in due season, and to open thy hand, Ps. cxlv. 15,
and to fill our souls with thy blessing. 16

XV

*How his old Concubine goes away from him, and
he gets another*

My sins in the mean time were multiplied, and that CHAP.
mistress of mine which was wont to be my bedfellow, XV
the hinderer as it were of my marriage, being plucked
away from my side, my heart cleaving unto her, was
broken by this means, and wounded, yea, and blood
drawn from it. Home again went she into Africa,
(vowing to thee never to know man more) leaving a
bastard son with me, which I had begotten of her.
But unhappy I, who had not the heart to imitate a
woman, impatient now of all delay as if it were two
long years before I was to enjoy her whom I went a
wooing to, (being not so much a lover of wedlock
as a slave to lust) quickly procured another (though
not a wife) by whom that disease of my soul
might be nursed up, and kept alive, either as
vigorous as it was, or more fierce upon it, under
the convoy of inveterate custom into the king-
dom of marriage. Nor was that wound of mine as
yet cured, which had been made by the cutting
away of my former concubine ; but after most

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP. prioris praecisione factum erat, sed post fervorem
^{XV} doloremque acerrimum putrescebat, et quasi frigidius,
sed desperatus dolebat.

XVI

CAP. TIBI laus, tibi gloria, fons misericordiarum ! ego
^{XVI} fiebam miserior et tu propinquior. aderat iam
iamque dextera tua, raptura me de caeno et ablutura,
et ignorabam. nec me revocabat a profundiore
voluptatum carnalium gurgite, nisi metus mortis et
futuri iudicii tui, qui per varias quidem opiniones,
numquam tamen recessit de pectore meo. et dis-
putabam cum amicis meis Alypio et Nebridio de
finibus bonorum et malorum, Epicurum accepturum
fuisse palmam in animo meo, nisi ego credidisse
post mortem restare animae vitam et tractus meri-
torum, quod Epicurus credere noluit. et quaerebam,
si essemus inmortales et in perpetua corporis volup-
tate sine ullo amissionis terrore viveremus, cur non
essemus beati, aut quid aliud quaereremus : nesciens
id ipsum ad magnam miseriam pertinere, quod ita
demersus et caecus cogitare non possem lumen
honestatis et gratis amplectendae pulchritudinis,
quam non videt oculus carnis, et videtur ex intimo.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

eager burning and anguish it festered ; and still it CHAP.
pained me, though after a more dull, yet after a ^{XV}
more desperate manner.

XVI

Of the Immortality of the Soul

PRAISE be to thee, glory be to thee, O Fountain of CHAP.
Mercies ! I became more miserable, and thou nearer ^{XVI}
unto me. Thy right hand was ready by and by to
pluck me out of the mire, and to wash me throughly,
but I knew not yet of it. Nor did anything call me
back from that deeper gulf of carnal pleasures, but
only the fear of death, and of thy judgment to come :
which, although divers opinions I conceived of it,
yet never went it utterly out of my breast. I dis-
puted in those days with my friends Alypius and
Nebridius concerning the limits of good and evil :
determining, that Epicurus in my judgment should
have won the garland, had I not verily believed that
there remained a life for the soul after the body was
dead, and the fruits of our deservings, which Epicurus
would not believe. And I put the question, that
suppose we were to be immortal, and were to live in
perpetual enjoyment of bodily pleasures, and that
without fear of losing, why should we not then be
fully happy, and wherefore should we seek for any
other thing ? Little knowing that even this very
thing was a part of my great misery, that being thus
drowned and blinded, I could not discern that light
of honesty and of beauty, (to be embraced for its own
sake), which the eye of the flesh cannot ken, it being
only by the inner man to be discerned. Nor did I

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VI

CAP^r nec considerabam miser, ex qua vena mihi manaret,
XVI quod ista ipsa, foeda, tamen cum amicis dulciter
conferebam, nec esse sine amicis poteram beatus
etiam secundum sensum, quem tunc habebam, quanta-
libet affluentia carnalium voluptatum. quos utique
amicos gratis diligebam, vicissimque ab eis me diligi-
gratis sentiebam. o tortuosas vias ! vae animae
meae audaci, quae speravit, si a te recessisset, se
aliquid melius habituram ! versa et reversa in ter-
gum et in latera et in ventrem, et dura sunt
omnia, et tu solus requies. et ecce ades et
liberas a miserabilibus erroribus et
constitues nos in via tua, et con-
solaris et dicens : “ currite,
ego feram et ego per-
ducam et ibi ego
feram.”

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VI

consider, wretch that I was, out of what vein it flowed, CHAP.
that even these conceits, (filthy ones as they were) XVI

I with such pleasure conferred of with my friends,
nor could I be happy without friends, even accord-
ing to the opinion I then was of, how great abundance
soever of carnal pleasures beside I enjoyed. Which
friends verily I loved for their own sakes, and I found
myself to be in like manner beloved of them again.
Out upon these intricate ways! Woe unto that
audacious soul of mine, which hoped, that had it
forsaken thee, it should have had some better thing!
Turned it hath, and turned again, upon back, sides,
and belly, yet found all places to be hard; and that
thou art her rest only. And behold, thou art near at
hand; and from our wretched errors thou de-
liverest us, and settlest us in thine own
way, and dost comfort, and say thus
unto us: Run on, I will carry
you: yea, I will bring you
to your journey's end,
and there also will
I carry you.

BOOK VII

LIBER SEPTIMVS

I

CAP. IAM mortua erat adulescentia mea mala et nefanda,
et ibam in iuventutem, quanto aetate maior, tanto
vanitate turpior, qui cogitare aliquid substantiae nisi
tale non poteram, quale per hos oculos videri solet.
non te cogitabam, deus, in figura corporis humani : ex
quo audire aliquid de sapientia coepi, semper hoc
fugi, et gaudebam me hoc reperire in fide spiritalis
matris nostrae, Catholicae tuae ; sed quid te aliud
cogitarem non occurrebat. et conabar cogitare te
homo, et talis homo, summum et solum et verum
deum, et te incorruptibilem et inviolabilem et in-
commutabilem totis medullis credebam, quia nes-
ciens, unde et quomodo, plane tamen videbam et
certus eram, id quod corrumpi potest, deterius esse
quam id quod non potest, et quod violari non
potest, incunctanter praeponebam violabili, et quod
nullam patitur mutationem, melius esse quam id
quod mutari potest. clamabat violenter cor meum
adversus omnia phantasmata mea, et hoc uno ictu
conabar abigere circumvolantem turbam inmunditiae

THE SEVENTH BOOK

I

*How rejecting corporeal Images, he began to know
God to be incorporeal*

By this time was that wicked and abominable time CHAP.
of my youth dead, and I went on into a more solid I
age : by how much the elder in years, so much the
fouler in vanity ; who could not imagine any other
kind of substance than what I saw with these eyes.
Yet thought I not thee, O God, to be comprehended
under the figure of an human body ; since the time
I began to hear anything of wisdom, I always avoided
that : and I rejoiced to have found thus much in the
faith of our spiritual Mother thy Catholic Church.
But what else I should think thee to be, I knew not.
And I being but a man, (and so mean a man too)
yet set I myself to believe thee to be the sovereign
and only true God : and that thou wert incorruptible,
and inviolable, and unchangeable, with all the powers
of my soul did I believe : because not knowing how
nor which way, yet clearly did I behold, and very
sure I was, that that which may be corrupted, must
needs be worse than that which cannot be corrupted ;
and that which cannot be violated, did I without any
sticking at prefer before that which was subject to
be violated : and that which suffers no change, I
judged to be much better than that which may suffer
change. My heart passionately cried out upon all
my phantasms ; and with one blow I laid about me to
beat away all that fluttering troop of unclean fancies,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. ab acie mentis meae : et vix dimota in ictu oculi, ecce
^I conglobata rursus aderat, et inruebat in aspectum
meum et obnubilabat eum, ut quamvis non forma
humani corporis, corporeum tamen aliquid cogitare
cogerer per spatia locorum, sive infusum mundo sive
etiam extra mundum per infinita diffusum, etiam
ipsum incorruptibile et inviolabile et incommutabile,
quod corruptibili et violabili et commutabili prae-
ponebam : quoniam quidquid privabam spatiis talibus,
nihil mihi esse videbatur, sed prorsus nihil, ne inane
quidem, tamquam si corpus auferatur loco et maneat
locus omni corpore vacuatus, et terreno et humido et
aerio et caelesti, sed tamen sit locus inanis, tamquam
spatiosum nihil.

Ego itaque incrassatus corde, nec mihi met ipsi vel
ipse conspicuus, quidquid non per aliquanta spatia
tenderetur, vel diffunderetur vel conglobaretur vel
tumeret, vel tale aliquid caperet aut capere posset,
nihil prorsus esse arbitrabar. per quales enim formas
ire solent oculi mei, per tales imagines ibat cor-
meum, nec videbam hanc eandem intentionem, qua
illas ipsas imagines formabam, non esse tale aliquid :
quae tamen ipsas non formaret, nisi esset magnum
aliquid. ita etiam te, vita vitae meae, grandem per
infinita spatia undique cogitabam penetrare totam
mundi molem, et extra eam quaquaversum per
inmensa sine termino, ut haberet te terra, haberet

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

from the eye of my mind. And lo, being yet scarce CHAP.
put off by the space of the twinkling of an eye, they
came in multitudes again about me, they pressed
upon my sight, and so beclouded it, that though I
thought thee not to be of the shape of a human
body, yet was I constrained to imagine thee to be
some corporeal substance, taking up vast spaces of
place: and that, either infused into this world, or
else diffused indefinitely without it: yea, even of
that incorruptible, and invisible, and unchangeable,
which I preferred before corruptible, and violable,
and changeable, did I imagine thus. Because that
whatsoever I deprived of these spaces, seemed to be
nothing unto me; yea, altogether nothing, not so
much as an emptiness verily; just as if a body
were taken out of its place, and the place should
remain empty of any body at all, either earthly, or
watery, or airy, or heavenly; but should remain a
void space, as it were a spacious nothing.

I therefore being thus gross hearted (for I was not
even able to discern my very self); whatsoever was
not stretched out over certain spaces, nor diffused
abroad, nor amassed up into bulk, nor swelled into
breadth, or which did not or could not receive some
form of these dimensions, I thought to be a just
nothing. For such forms as my eyes are wont to range
over, even such like images did my heart now rove
after: nor did I yet observe that this very attention
of mine, by which I formed these images, was not any
such corporeal substance; which yet could not have
formed them, had not itself been some great thing.
In like manner did I conceive thee, O thou Life of
my life, to be some huge corporeal substance, on
every side piercing through the whole globe of this
world; yea, and diffused every way without it, and

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. caelum, haberent omnia et illa finirentur in te, tu
^I autem nusquam. sicut autem luci solis non obsisteret aeris corpus, aeris huius, qui supra terram est, quominus per eum traiceretur, penetrans eum non dirrumpendo aut concidendo, sed implendo eum totum: sic tibi putabam non solum caeli et aeris et maris, sed etiam terrae corpus, pervium et ex omnibus maximis minimisque partibus penetrabile ad capiendam praesentiam tuam, occulta inspiratione intrinsecus et extrinsecus administrante omnia, quae creasti. ita suspicabar, quia cogitare aliud non poteram; nam falsum erat. illo enim modo maior pars terrae maiorem tui partem haberet, et minorem minor, atque ita te plena essent omnia, ut amplius tui caperet elephanti corpus quam passeris, quo esset isto grandius grandioremque occuparet locum, atque ita frustatim partibus mundi magnis magnas, brevibus breves partes tuas praesentes faceres. non est autem ita. sed nondum inluminaveras tenebras meas.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

that by infinite spaces, though unbounded : so that CHAP.
the earth should have thee, the heaven should have
thee, all things should have thee, and that they
should be bounded in thee, but thou nowhere. For
as the body of the air which is above the earth,
hindereth not the light of the sun from passing
through it, which pierceth it, not by bursting or
cutting, but by filling of it: so thought I, that not
only the body of the heaven, the air and sea only,
but of the earth too, to be at pleasure passable unto
thee, yea easy to be pierced by thee in all its
greatest and smallest parts, that all might receive
thy presence, while a secret inspiration both in-
wardly and outwardly governeth all things which
thou hast created. Thus I suspected, because any
other thing I could not think of: and yet was this
false too. For by this means should a greater part
of the earth have contained a larger portion of thee,
and the less, a lesser: and then should all things in
such sort have been full of thee, as that the body of
an elephant should contain so much more of thee
than the body of a sparrow, by how much that
should be bigger than this, and take up more room;
by which conceit shouldst thou make thy parts
present unto the several parts of the world by bits,
as it were, great gobbets to great parts, little bits
to little parts of the world. But thus thou art not
present. But thou hadst not as yet enlightened my
darkness.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

II

CAP. SAT erat mihi, domine, adversus illos deceptos de-
ceptores et loquaces mutos, quoniam non ex eis
sonabat verbum tuum, sat erat ergo illud, quod iam
diu ab usque Carthagine a Nebridio proponi solebat,
et omnes, qui audiebamus, concussi sumus: quid erat
tibi factura nescio qua gens tenebrarum, quam ex
adversa mole solent proponere, si tu cum ea pugnare
noluisses? si enim responderetur, aliquid fuisse noc-
turam, violabilis tu et corruptibilis fores. si autem
nihil ea nocere potuisse diceretur, nulla afferretur
causa pugnandi, et ita pugnandi, ut quaedam portio
tua et membrum tuum vel proles de ipsa substantia
tua misceretur adversis potestatibus et non a te crea-
tis naturis, atque in tantum ab eis corrumperetur et
commutaretur in deterius, ut a beatitudine in miseriam
verteretur, et egeret auxilio, quo erui purgarique pos-
set; et hanc esse animam, cui tuus sermo, servienti
liber, et contaminatae purus, et corruptae integer,
subveniret, sed et ipse corruptibilis, quia ex una
eademque substantia. itaque si te, quidquid es, id est

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

II

Nebridius confutes the Manichees

I HAD answer enough, Lord, to oppose against those CHAP.
deceived deceivers, those dumb praters (therefore ^{II}
dumb because they sounded not forth thy word): I
had answer enough, I say, in that which long ago,
whiles we were at Carthage, Nebridius used to pro-
ound; at which all we that heard it were much
staggered; namely: What that imaginary nation of
darkness, which the Manichees were wont to set in
opposition against thee, would have done unto thee,
hadst thou refused to fight with it? For, had they
answered, it would have done thee some hurt; then
shouldst thou have been subject to violence and cor-
ruption: but if they answered, it could do thee no
hurt, then would there have been no reason brought
for thy fighting with it: especially for such a fight-
ing, in which some certain portion or member of
thine, or some offspring of thy substance should have
been mingled with those contrary powers, those
natures not created by thee; by whom it should so
far have been corrupted and changed to the worse,
that it should have been turned from happiness into
misery, and should have stood in need of some assist-
ance, by which it must both be delivered and purged:
and that this offspring of thy substance was our soul;
which, being enthralled, thy Word that was free;
which being defiled, thy Word that was pure; which
being maimed, thy Word that was entire, might every
way relieve: and yet that Word itself also be cor-
ruptible, because it was the offspring of one and the
same substance. Therefore should they affirm thee,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. substantiam tuam, qua es, incorruptibilem dicerent,

^{II} falsa esse illa omnia et exsecrabilia ; si autem corruptibilem, id ipsum iam falsum et prima voce abominandum. sat erat ergo istuc, adversus eos omni modo evomendos a pressura pectoris, quia non habebant, qua exirent, sine horribili sacrilegio cordis et linguae, sentiendo de te ista et loquendo.

III

CAP. SED et ego adhuc, quamvis incontaminabilem et
^{III} inconvertisciblem et nulla ex parte mutabilem dicerem firmeque sentirem dominum nostrum, deum verum, qui fecisti non solum animas nostras sed etiam corpora, nec tantum nostras animas et corpora, sed omnes et omnia; non tenebam explicitam et enodatam causam mali. quaecumque tamen esset, sic eam quaerendam videbam, ut non per illam constringerer deum incommutabilem mutabilem credere, ne ipse fierem quod quaerebam. itaque securus eam quaerebam, et certus non esse verum quod illi dicerent, quos toto animo fugiebam; quia videbam quaerendo, unde malum, repletos malitia, qua opinarentur tuam potius substantiam male pati quam suam male facere.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

whatsoever thou art, that is, thy substance, to be CHAP.
incorruptible; then were all these fancies of theirs II
most false and execrable. But if they should affirm
thee to be corruptible; even that were most false,
and to be abhorred at the first hearing. This argu-
ment therefore of Nebridius verily had been enough
against those, who deserved wholly to be spewed out
of my over-charged stomach; for that they had no
evasion to betake themselves unto, without most hor-
rible blasphemy both of heart and tongue, thinking
and speaking of thee in this fashion.

III

Free Will is the cause of Sin

BUT I as yet, although I both said and thought most CHAP.
confidently, that thou our Lord the true God, (who III
madest not only our souls but our bodies; and not only
both souls and bodies, but us all, and all things else
besides) wert neither to be corrupted nor altered one
way or other; yet understood I not clearly and without
difficulty the cause of evil. And yet whatever it were,
I perceived I ought in that sense to enquire after it,
that I might not be constrained to believe that the
incommutable God could be altered by it: lest my-
self should be made the thing that I was seeking. That is, a
After this therefore I sought it without anxiety; cause of
being very certain that the Manichees' tenet (whom III
I dissented from with my whole heart) was no way
true: for that I discovered them, whilst they enquired
the cause of evil, to be most full of maliciousness;
they thinking that thy substance did rather suffer ill
than their own commit evil.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

CAP. **Et intendebam, ut cernerem quod audiebam, libe-**
rum voluntatis arbitrium causam esse, ut male facere-
mus, et rectum iudicium tuum ut pateremur, et eam
liquidam cernere non valebam. itaque aciem mentis
de profundo educere conatus, mergebar iterum, et
saepe conatus mergebar iterum atque iterum. sub-
levabat enim me in lucem tuam, quod tam sciebam
me habere voluntatem quam me vivere. itaque cum
aliquid vellem aut nolle, non alium quam me velle
ac nolle certissimus eram, et ibi esse causam peccati
mei iam iamque advertebam. quod autem invitus
facerem, pati me potius quam facere videbam, et id
non culpam, sed poenam esse iudicabam, qua me non
iniuste plecti te iustum cogitans cito fatebar. sed
rursus dicebam : "quis fecit me ? nonne deus meus,
non tantum bonus, sed ipsum bonum ? unde igitur
mihi male velle et bene nolle ? ut esset, cur iuste
poenas luerem ? quis in me hoc posuit et insevit
mihi plantarium amaritudinis, cum totus fierem a
dulcissimo deo meo ? si diabolus auctor, unde ipse
diabolus ? quod si et ipse perversa voluntate ex bono
angelo diabolus factus est, unde et in ipso voluntas
mala, qua diabolus fieret, quando totus angelus a
conditore optimo factus esset ?" his cogitationibus de-
primebar iterum et suffocabar, sed non usque ad illum
infernum subducebar erroris, ubi nemo tibi confitetur,
dum tu potius malam pati quam homo facere putatur.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

Whereupon I applied my industry to understand the CHAP.
truth of what I had heard, how that Free Will should III
be the cause of our evil doing : and thy just judg-
ment, that we suffer evil. But I was not able clearly
to discern it. Endeavouring therefore to draw the
eye of my soul out of that pit, I was again plunged
into it ; and endeavouring often, I was plunged as
often. For this raised me a little up towards thy
light, that I now knew as well that I had a will, as
that I had a life : and when therefore I did either
will or nill anything, I was most sure of it, that I
and no other did will and nill : and there was the
cause of my sin, as I perceived presently. But what
I did against my will, that I seemed to suffer rather
than to do : that judged I not to be my fault, but
my punishment ; whereby, I holding thee most just,
quickly confessed myself to be not unjustly punished.
But I objected to myself again : Who made me ?
Did not my God, who is not only good, but Goodness
itself ? Whence then came it that I can both will
evil and nill good ? that there might be cause found
why I should be justly punished for it ? Who was
it that set this in me, that ingrafted into my stem
this scion of bitterness, seeing I was wholly made
up by my most sweet God ? If the Devil were the
author, whence is that same Devil ? And if he him-
self by his own perverse will, of a good angel became
a devil, whence then proceeded that perverse will in
him, to make him a devil, seeing that he had been
made all angel by that most good Creator ? And
by such thoughts as these was I again cast down and
overwhelmed : yet not so far brought down was I as
the hell of that error, where no man confesseth unto
thee, when thou art rather thought to suffer evil,
than man to do evil.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

IV

CAP. Sic enim nitebar invenire cetera, ut iam inveneram
IV melius esse incorruptibile quam corruptibile, et ideo
te, quidquid essem, esse incorruptibilem confitebar.
neque enim ulla anima umquam potuit poteritve cogi-
tare aliquid, quod sit te melius, qui summum et
optimum bonum es. cum autem verissime atque cer-
tissime incorruptibile corruptibili p[re]ponatur, sicut
ego iam p[re]ponebam, poteram iam cogitatione aliquid
adtingere, quod essem melius deo meo, nisi tu essem
incorruptibilis. ubi igitur videbam incorruptibile cor-
ruptibili esse p[re]ferendum, ibi te quaerere debebam,
atque inde advertere, ubi sit malum, id est unde sit
ipsa corruptio, qua violari substantia tua nullo modo
potest. nullo enim prorsus violat corruptio deum
nostrum, nulla voluntate, nulla necessitate, nullo in-
proviso casu, quoniam ipse est deus, et quod sibi vult,
bonum est, et ipse est idem bonum; corrupti autem
non est bonum. nec cogeris invitus ad aliquid, quia
voluntas tua non est maior quam potentia tua. essem
autem maior, si te ipso tu ipse maior essem: voluntas
enim et potentia dei deus ipse est. quid improvisum
tibi, qui nosti omnia? et nulla natura est, nisi quia
nosti eam. et ut quid multa dicimus, cur non sit cor-
ruptibilis substantia, quae deus est, quando, si hoc
essem, non essem deus?

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

IV

God cannot be compelled

IN this sort did I endeavour now to find out the rest, CHAP.
as I had already found, that what was incorruptible IV
must needs be better than that which was corruptible :
and thee, therefore, whatsoever thou wert, did I ac-
knowledge to be incorruptible. For never yet soul
was, nor ever shall be able to think upon anything
which may be better than thou, who art the sovereign
and the best good. But whereas most truly and cer-
tainly, that which is incorruptible is to be preferred
before what is corruptible, (like as I did then prefer it),
I might very well have reached in my thoughts to
something that should be better than my God, hadst
thou not been incorruptible. Seeing therefore that
incorruptible ought to be preferred before corruptible,
at that point ought I to have sought out thee, and
thence set out to observe where evil is ; that is, even
whence corruption comes ; by which thy substance
can by no means be infected. For corruption does no
ways infect our God ; by no will, by no necessity, by
no unlooked for chance : because he is God, and what
he wills, is good ; and he himself is that Good ; but to
be corrupted is not good. Nor art thou, O God, against
thy will constrained to anything, for that thy will is not
greater than thy power. But greater should it be, were
thyself greater than thyself. For the will and power of
God, is God himself. And what chance can surprize
thee unlooked for, who knowest all things ? Nor is
there any nature of things, but because thou knowest
it. And why should we use more arguments to prove,
why that substance which God is should not be cor-
ruptible, seeing if it were so, it should not be God ?

V

CAP. ET quaerebam, unde malum, et male quaerebam et
 V in ipsa inquisitione mea non videbam malum. et consti-
 tuebam in conspectu spiritus mei universam crea-
 turam, quidquid in ea cernere possumus (sicuti est
 terra et mare et aer et sidera et arbores et animalia
 mortalia), et quidquid in ea non videmus (sicut firma-
 mentum caeli insuper et omnes angelos et cuncta
 spiritalia eius, sed etiam ipsa, quasi corpora essent,
 locis et locis ordinata, ut imaginatio mea); et feci
 unam massam grandem, distinctam generibus corpo-
 rum, creaturam tuam, sive re vera quae corpora erant,
 sive quae ipse pro spiritibus finxeram; et eam feci
 grandem, non quantum erat, quod scire non poteram,
 sed quantum libuit, undiqueversum sane finitam:
 te autem, domine, ex omni parte ambientem et
 penetrantem eam, sed usquequaque infinitum; tam-
 quam si mare esset, ubique et undique per inmensa
 infinitum solum mare, et haberet intra se spongiam
 quamlibet magnam, sed finitam tamen, plena esset
 utique spongia illa ex omni sua parte ex inmenso
 mari: sic creaturam tuam finitam te infinito plenam
 putabam, et dicebam: "ecce deus, et ecce quae creavit
 deus, et bonus deus atque his validissime longissime-

346

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

V

He pursues his enquiries after the root of sin

AND I sought whence evil should be, and I sought CHAP.
ill: nor did I see that evil which was in this very V
enquiry of mine. I set now before the eyes of my spirit the whole creation, and whatsoever I could discern in it; as the sea, the earth, the air, the stars, the trees, the mortal creatures; yea, and whatever else in it we do not see, as the firmament of the heaven; all the angels moreover, and all the spiritual inhabitants thereof, but yet as if all these had been bodies, disposed in such and such places, as my fancy took me. And I made one great mass of all thy creatures, distinguished by their several kinds of bodies; those that were bodies indeed, or those that I had myself feigned instead of spirits. And this mass I made huge enough, not yet so great as in itself it was, (which I could not come to the knowledge of) but as big as I thought convenient, yet every way finite. But thee, O Lord, I imagined on every part environing and penetrating it, though every way infinite. As if there were supposed to be a sea, which everywhere and on every side, by a most unmeasurable infiniteness should be only a sea; and that sea should contain in it some huge sponge, but yet finite; which sponge must needs be everywhere and on every side filled with that unmeasurable sea. So thought I thy whole creation to be in itself finite, filled by thee who art infinite; and I said, Behold God, and behold what God hath created; and God is good, yea, most mightily and incomparably better than all these: and God,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

CAP. que praestantior ; sed tamen bonus bona creavit : et
^V ecce quomodo ambit atque implet ea ? ubi ergo
malum et unde et qua huc inrepsit ? quae radix eius
et quod semen eius ? an omnino non est ? cur ergo
timemus et cavemus quod non est ? aut si inaniter
timemus, timor ipse malum est, quo incassum stimu-
latur et excruciat cor ; et tanto gravius malum,
quanto non est, quod timeamus, et timemus. idcirco
aut est malum, quod timemus, aut hoc malum est,
quia timemus. unde est igitur, quia deus fecit haec
omnia, bonus bona ? maius quidem et summum bonum
minora fecit bona, sed tamen et creans et creata bona
sunt omnia. unde est malum ? an unde fecit ea, ma-
teries aliqua mala erat, et formavit atque ordinavit
eam, sed reliquit aliquid in illa, quod in bonum non
converteret ? cur et hoc ? an inpotens erat totam
vertere et conmutare, ut nihil mali remaneret, cum
sit omnipotens ? postremo cur inde aliquid facere
voluit, ac non potius eadem omnipotentia fecit, ut
nulla esset omnino ? aut vero exsistere poterat
contra eius voluntatem ? aut si aeterna erat, cur tam
diu per infinita retro spatia temporum sic eam sivit
esse, ac tanto post placuit aliquid ex ea facere ? aut
iam, si aliquid subito voluit agere, hoc potius ageret
omnipotens, ut illa non esset, atque ipse solus esset
totum verum et summum et infinitum bonum ? aut

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

being himself good, created all them good ; and see CHAP.
how he environeth and fulfils them all. Where is
evil then, and from whence, and how crept it in
hither ? What is the root, and what the seed of it ?
Or hath it at all no being ? Why then do we fear and
beware of that which hath no being ? Or if we fear
it in vain, then surely is that very fear an evil, which
in vain so gores and torments the soul. Yea, and so
much a greater evil, by how much there wants of
being anything, which we should stand in fear of,
and yet we do fear. Therefore is there some evil
thing which we fear, or else the very act of fearing
is evil. Whence is evil therefore, seeing God who is
good, hath created all these things good ; that is, the
greater and chiefest Good hath created these lesser
goods ; yet both he creating, and they created,
are all good ? Whence now is evil ? Was there
some evil matter, of which God made it, and as God
formed and ordered it, did he leave anything in
it which he did not convert into good ? But why did
he so ? Was he not able so to turn and change the
whole lump, that no evil should have remained in it,
seeing he is able to do anything ? Lastly, why would
he make anything at all of that, and did not by the
same omnipotency rather cause that there should be
no such thing at all ? Or, indeed, was it able to be
of itself against his will ? Or if that evil matter had
been from eternity, why suffered he it so long to con-
tinued through infinite spaces of times past, and was
pleased so long while after to make something out of
it ? Or if he were suddenly pleased now to go about
some work, this rather should the Omnipotent have
done, have caused (namely) that this evil matter
should not at all have been, and that he himself
should have been alone, that sovereign and infinite

v

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

CAP. si non erat bene, ut non aliquid boni etiam fabricaretur
^V et conderet qui bonus erat, illa sublata et ad nihilum redacta materie, quae mala erat, bonam ipse institueret, unde omnia crearet? non enim esset omnipotens, si condere non posset aliquid boni, nisi ea quam non ipse condiderat adiuvaretur materia." talia volvebam pectore misero, ingravidato curis mordacissimis de timore mortis et non inventa veritate; stabiliter tamen haerebat in corde meo in Catholica ecclesia fides Christi tui, domini et salvatoris nostri, in multis quidem adhuc informis et praeter doctrinæ normam fluitans; sed tamen non eam relinquebat animus, immo in dies magis magisque inbibebat.

VI

CAP. IAM etiam mathematicorum fallaces divinationes et
^{VI} inopia deliramenta reieceram. confiteantur etiam hinc tibi de intimis visceribus animae meae miserationes tuae, deus meus! tu enim, tu omnino—nam quis aliis a morte omnis erroris revocat nos, nisi vita, quae mori nescit, et sapientia mentes indigentes illuminans, nullo indigens lumine, qua mundus administratur usque ad arborum volatrica folia?—tu procurasti pervicaciae meae, qua obluctatus sum Vindiciano
350

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

Good. Or if it had not been good that he who was CHAP.
good should not frame and create something also ^V
that were good; then, that evil matter being first
taken away, and brought into nothing, should he
immediately have taken order for some good matter,
whereof he might create all things. For he should
not be omnipotent, if he were not able to create
something that were good of itself, unless he were
assisted by that matter which himself had not created.
These thoughts tossed I up and down in my miser-
able heart, overcharged with biting cares, through
the fear of death, and not finding out the truth; yet
did the faith of thy Christ our Lord and Saviour,
professed in the Catholic Church, firmly continue
in my heart, though in divers particulars verily not
yet perfected, and swerving from the right rule of
doctrine; yet did not my mind utterly leave it off,
but every day took in more and more of it.

VI

Divinations made by the Mathematicians are vain

By this time also had I rejected those deceitful CHAP.
divinations, and impious dotages of the astrologers. ^{VI}
Let thine own mercies, out of the most inward bowels
of my soul, confess unto thee for this, O my God.
For thou, thou altogether (for who else is it that
calls us back from the death of all errors, but even
that life which knows not how to die; and that wis-
dom which enlightens those minds that need it,
itself needing no light: by which the whole world
is governed, even to the fluttering leaves of the
trees?) thou tookest order for that stiff opinion of
mine, by which I struggled with Vindicianus, that

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

CAP. acuto seni, et Nebridio adulescenti mirabilis animae,
^{VI}

illi vehementer adfirmanti, huic cum dubitatione quidem aliqua, sed tamen crebro dicenti, non esse illam artem futura praevidendi, coniecturas autem hominum habere saepe vim sortis, et multa dicendo dici pleraque ventura, nescientibus eis, qui dicerent, sed in ea non tacendo incurrentibus : procurasti tu ergo hominem amicum, non quidem segnem consultorem mathematicorum, nec eas litteras bene callentem, sed, ut dixi, consultorem curiosum, et tamen scientem aliquid, quod a patre suo se audisse dicebat : quod quantum valeret ad illius artis opinionem evertendam, ignorabat. is ergo vir nomine Firminus, liberaliter institutus et excultus eloquio, cum me tamquam carissimum de quibusdam suis rebus, in quas saecularis spes eius intumuerat, consuleret, quid mihi secundum suas quas constellationes appellant videretur, ego autem, qui iam de hac re in Nebridii sententiam flecti cooperam, non quidem abnuerem conicere, ac dicere quod nuntiati occurrebat ; sed tamen subicerem, prope iam esse mihi persuasum ridicula illa esse et inania : tum ille mihi narravit, patrem suum fuisse librorum talium curiosissimum et habuisse amicum aequem illa simulque sectantem. qui pari studio et conlatione flagrabant in eas nugas igne cordis sui, ita ut mutorum quoque animalium, si quae domi parerent, observarent momenta nascentium atque ad ea caeli positionem

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

sharsighted old man, and with Nebridius that admirable spirited young man : the first vehemently affirming, the latter often (though with some doubtfulness) saying, that there was no art whereby things to come might be foreseen : but that men's conjectures had oftentimes the help of fortune ; and that by talking many things, something to come was oft-times perchance foreshown of ; the parties that spake little knowing of it, but stumbling now and then upon the right, by their not saying nothing. Thou, therefore, providedst a friendly man for me, and he no negligent consulter with the astrologers : yet not throughly skilled in those arts, but, as I said, a curious consulter with them ; and one that knew something, which he had heard of his father, as he said : which how far it might prevail to overthrow the opinion of that art, he knew not. This man therefore, Firminus by name, having been finely bred, and well taught ; asking my advice, as a dear friend of his, concerning divers affairs of his own, which his worldly hopes were big swollen withal ; and what I conjectured of him by his constellations, as they call them : I, who now began to incline in this particular towards Nebridius' opinion, did not, to say troth, refuse to make conjecture upon it, and to tell him as much as came in my unresolved mind : but told him withal, that I was even almost persuaded in my heart that these were but vain and ridiculous follies. He thereupon up and told me, how his father had been very curious after such books, and how he had a friend as earnest as himself at them. These with joint study and conference were hot upon these toys, by the fire of their hearty affection, insomuch that they would observe even the very minutes of the bringing forth of young, of those dumb creatures which they kept

CHAP.
VI

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

CAP. VI notarent, unde illius quasi artis experimenta colligent. itaque dicebat audisse se a patre suo, quod, cum eundem Firminum praegnans mater esset, etiam illius paterni amici famula quaedam pariter utero grandescebat. quod latere non potuit dominum, qui etiam canum suarum partus examinatissima diligentia nosse curabat; atque ita factum esse, ut cum iste coniugis, ille autem ancillae dies et horas minutioresque horarum articulos cautissima observatione numerarent, enixa essent ambae simul; ita ut easdem constellations usque ad easdem minutias utriusque nascenti facere cogerentur, iste filio, ille servulo. nam cum mulieres parturire coepissent, indicaverunt sibi ambo, quid sua cuiusque domo ageretur, et paraverunt quos ad se invicem mitterent, simul ut natum quod parturiebatur esset cuique nuntiatum: quod tamen ut continuo nuntiaretur, tamquam in regno suo facile effecerant. atque ita qui ab alterutro missi sunt, tam ex paribus domorum intervallis sibi obviam factos esse dicebat, ut aliam positionem siderum aliasque particulas momentorum neuter eorum notare sineretur. et tamen Firminus amplio apud suos loco natus, dealbatores vias saeculi cursitabat, augebatur divitiis, sublimabatur honoribus: servus autem ille, conditionis iugo nullatenus relaxato, dominis serviebat: ipso indicante, qui noverat eum.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

about their houses, and made observations withal of CHAP.
the position of the heavens at those minutes, to the
intent to gather experiments of this art, as it were.
VI
So he said how he had heard of his father, that
what time as his mother was big with him, the said
Firminus, a certain maid servant of that friend
of his father's was big with child also; which her
master could not be ignorant of, who took care with
most diligent examination to get knowledge even of
his very bitches. And how it so fell out, that when
one for his wife, and the other for his servant, with
the carefullest observation reckoned the days, yea,
the hours, nay, the very least particles of the hours,
that both of them were brought to bed at the same
instant: insomuch that both of them were con-
strained to allow the very same horoscope, even to
the very smallest points, he for his son's birth, and
the other for his little servant. For so soon as the
women began to fall in labour, they both gave notice
to one another of what was fallen out in either of
their houses, and had messengers ready to send to
one another, so soon as each had notice of the child's
being born, which they could easily procure to have
instant notice of, as being in their own kingdom. And
he said that the messengers sent from one another, met
by the way, in such equal distance from either house,
that neither of the calculators could observe any other
position of the stars, or seconds of minutes, than the
other had done. And yet Firminus born to a fair for-
tune in his parents' house, ran his course through
brighter ways of the world, thrave well in riches,
raised himself to honour: whereas that little servant,
not able any way to free himself of the yoke of slavery
he was born unto, continued to serve his masters; as
himself told the story, who well enough knew him.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. VI His itaque auditis et creditis—talis quippe narraverat—omnis illa reluctatio mea soluta concidit : et primo Firminum ipsum conatus sum ab illa curiositate revocare, cum dicerem, constellationibus eius inspectis ut vera pronuntiarem, debuisse me utique videre ibi parentes inter suos esse primarios, nobilem familiam propriae civitatis, natales ingenuos, honestam educationem liberalesque doctrinas ; at si me ille servus ex eisdem constellationibus—quia et illius ipsae essent—consuluisset, ut eidem quoque vera proférrem, debuisse me rursus ibi videre abiectissimam familiam, conditionem servilem, et cetera longe a prioribus aliena longeque distantia. unde autem fieret, ut eadem inspiciens diversa dicerem, si vera dicerem—si autem eadem dicerem, falsa dicerem—inde certissime colligi, ea quae vera consideratis constellationibus dicerentur, non arte dici, sed sorte, quae autem falsa, non artis inperitia, sed sortis mendacio.

Hinc autem accepto aditu ipse mecum talia ruminando, ne quis eorundem delirorum, qui talem quaestum sequerentur, quos iam iamque invadere atque inrisos refellere cupiebam, mihi ita resisteret, quasi aut Firminus mihi aut illi pater falsa narraverit, intendi considerationem in eos qui gemini nascuntur,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

Upon the hearing and believing of these things, CHAP.
for that such a man of credit had told them ; all that former resolute reluctance of mine fell quite to the ground. And first of all I endeavoured to reclaim Firminus from that curiosity, by telling him, that for me, upon the inspection of his constellation, to foretell what should truly happen to him, I ought verily first to have seen in them, how his parents had been eminent persons among their neighbours, and that he had been descended of a noble family in his own city, that he was free born, educated like a gentleman, and very well studied. But if that servant, upon the same constellations, which were common to him too, had asked me to tell him his true fortune ; I ought on the other side to have seen in them the baseness of his lineage, the slavishness of his condition, and those other particulars so much different, and so far distant from the other Gentleman's. Since then it came to pass, that looking upon the same constellations, I should read divers fortunes, if I should speak the truth ; and if I should pronounce the same fortunes, I should lie falsely : therefore did I also collect most certainly, that whatever upon consideration of these constellations was foretold truly, was not spoken out of art, but chance : and whatever was delivered falsely, was not out of the unskilfulness of the art, but out of the falsehood of the chance.

Being thus entered into the business, and thinking with myself more seriously upon suchlike arguments ; that no one of those dotards (who lived by such shifts, whom I had an itch even out of hand to cope withal, and with derision to confute) might hereafter confront me so, as if either Firminus had informed me falsely, or his father him : I bent my

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. quorum plerique ita post invicem funduntur ex utero,
^{VI} ut parvum ipsum temporis intervallum, quantamlibet
vim in rerum natura habere contendant, colligi tamen
humana observatione non possit litterisque signari
omnino non valeat, quas mathematicus inspecturus
est, ut vera pronuntiet. et non erunt vera, quia
easdem litteras inspiciens eadem debuit dicere de
Esau et Iacob ; sed non eadem utriusque acciderunt.
falsa ergo diceret aut, si vera diceret, non eadem
diceret : at eadem inspiceret. non ergo arte, sed
sorte vera diceret. tu enim, domine, iustissime mode-
rator universitatis, consulentibus consultisque nescien-
tibus occulto instinctu agis, ut, dum quisque consulit,
hoc audiat, quod eum oportet audire occultis meritis
animatorum ex abyso iusti iudicii tui. cui non dicat
homo : “quid est hoc ?” “ut quid hoc ?” non dicat,
non dicat ; homo est enim.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

consideration upon those that are born twins, who CHAP.
for the most part come out of the womb so near one VI
to another, as that small distance of time between
them (how much force soever in reality these fellows
avow it to have) yet cannot be estimated by any
observation of man, nor can it be set down in the
tables which the astrologer is to look into, to pro-
nounce the truth. Nor shall they ever tell truth :
for then, he that had looked upon the same figures,
must have told the same fortunes both of Esau and
of Jacob; whereas the same things no ways happened
to them both. Needs therefore must he have said
falsely : or if he had said truly, he must not have said
the same things, whereas he looked upon the same
figures. Had he therefore pronounced truly, it
should have been by chance, and not by art. For
thou, O Lord most Just, the Ruler of the universe,
(even while they that ask the advice, and those that
give it too, know not what they do) workest by so
hidden an instinct for both, that he who consults
hears what he ought to hear, out of the unsearch-
able bottom of thy just judgment, in respect of the
hidden deservings of the souls. To whom, let not
man say, what is this, or what is that? Let him
not say so, never let him say so : seeing he is but a
man.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

VII

CAP. IAM itaque me, adiutor meus, illis vinculis solveras,
^{VII} et quaerebam, unde malum, et non erat exitus. sed
me non sinebas ullis fluctibus cogitationis auferri ab
ea fide, qua credebam et esse te, et esse incommu-
tabilem substantiam tuam, et esse de hominibus
curam et iudicium tuum; et in Christo, filio tuo,
domino nostro, atque scripturis sanctis, quas ecclesiae
tuae Catholicae commendaret auctoritas, viam te
posuisse salutis humanae ad eam vitam, quae post
hanc mortem futura est. his itaque salvis atque
inconcusse roboratis in animo meo, quaerebam
aestuans, unde sit malum. quae illa tormenta par-
ticipantis cordis mei, qui gemitus, deus meus! et ibi
erant aures tuae nesciente me. et cum in silentio
fortiter quaererem, magnae voces erant ad miseri-
cordiam tuam, tacitae contritiones animi mei. tu
sciebas, quid patiebar, et nullus hominum. quantum
enim erat, quod inde digerebatur per linguam meam
in aures familiarissimorum meorum! numquid tu-
multus animae meae, cui nec tempora nec os meum
sufficiebat, sonabat eis? totum tamen ibat in audi-
tum tuum, quod rugiebam a gemitu cordis mei, et
ante te erat desiderium meum et lumen oculorum

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

VII

*He is miserably tortured in his Enquiry after the
Root of Evil*

AND now, O my Helper, hadst thou discharged me CHAP.
from those fetters : and presently enquired I whence
evil should be, but found no way out of my question.
But thou sufferedst me not to be carried away from
the faith by any waves of those thoughts ; by which
faith I believed both that thou wert, and that thy
substance was unchangeable, and that thou hadst a
care of, and passedst thy judgment upon men : and
that in Christ thy Son, our Lord, and thy holy
Scriptures which the authority of thy Church should
acknowledge, thou hast laid out a way of man's
salvation, to pass to that life which is to come after
death. These grounds remaining safe and irremovable
settled in my mind, I with much anxiety sought,
from what root the nature of evil should proceed.
What torments did my teeming heart then endure,
and what groans, O my God ! Yet even to them
were thine ears open, and I knew it not : and when
in silence I so vehemently enquired after it, those
silent contritions of my soul were strong cries for thy
mercy. Thou, and no man, knewest how much I
suffered. For, how little was that which my tongue
sent forth into the ears of my most familiar friends !
Did I disclose to them the whole tumult of my soul,
for which neither my time nor tongue had been
sufficient ? Yet did all of it ascend into thy hearing,
which I roared out from the groans of my heart ; yea,
my whole desires were laid up before thee, nor was Ps. xxxviii.

9

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

CAP. meorum non erat mecum. intus enim erat, ego
^{VII} autem foris, nec in loco illud. at ego intendebam in
ea, quae locis continentur, et non ibi inveniebam
locum ad requiescendum, nec recipiebant me ista,
ut dicerem : "sat est et bene est," nec dimittebant
redire, ubi mihi satis esset bene. superior enim eram
istis, te vero inferior, et tu gaudium verum mihi
subdito tibi, et tu mihi subieceras quae *infra* me
creasti. et hoc erat rectum temperamentum et
media regio salutis meae, ut manerem ad imaginem
tuam et tibi serviens dominarer corpori. sed cum
superbe contra te surgerem et currerem adversus
dominum in cervice crassa scuti mei, etiam ista
infima supra me facta sunt et premebant, et nusquam
erat laxamentum et respiramentum. ipsa occurre-
bant undique acervatim et conglobatim cernenti,
cogitanti autem imagines corporum ipsae oppone-
bantur redeunti, quasi diceretur : "quo is, indigne et
sordide?" et haec de vulnere meo creverant, quia
humiliasti tamquam vulneratum superbum, et tumore
meo separabar abs te, et nimis inflata facies cludebat
oculos meos.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

I master of so much as of the light of mine own eyes : CHAP.
for that was all turned inward, but I outward ; nor
was that in its place : but I bent myself to those
things that are contained in places, and there I
found no place to rest in ; nor did those places so
entertain me, that I could say, It is enough, and 'Tis
well : nor did they yet suffer me to turn back, where
I might find well being enough. For to these things
was I superior, but inferior to thee : and thou art the
true Joy of me thy subject : and thou hast subjected
under me those things which thou createdst below
me. And this was the happy mean, and the middle
region of my safety, where I might remain conform-
able to thine image, and by serving thee, get the
dominion over mine own body. But whenas I rose
up proudly against thee, and when I ran upon my Job xv. 26
Lord with the thick neck of my buckler ; then were
these inferior things made my overmatches, and kept
me under, nor could I get either releasement or space
of breathing. They ran on all sides by heaps and
troops upon me, broad-looking on them ; but when I
thought, these corporeal images waylaid me as I
turned back, as if they should say unto me ; Whither
goest thou, O thou unworthy and base creature ?
And all these had grown out of my wound ; for thou
hast humbled the proud like as him that is wounded,
and through my own swelling was I set further off Ps.
from thee ; yea, my cheeks, too big swollen, even
blinded up mine eyes.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

VIII

CAP. Tu vero, domine, in aeternum manes, et non in
^{VIII} aeternum irasceris nobis, quoniam miseratus es
terram et cinerem, et placuit in conspectu tuo
reformare deformia mea. et stimulis internis agita-
bas me, ut inpatiens essem, donec mihi per inte-
riorem aspectum certus essem. et residebat tumor
meus ex occulta manu medicinae tuae, aciesque con-
turbata et contenebrata mentis meae acri collyrio
salubrium dolorum de die in diem sanabatur.

IX

CAP. Et primo volens ostendere mihi, quam resistas super-
^{IX} bis, humilibus autem des gratiam, et quanta miseri-
cordia tua demonstrata sit hominibus via humilitatis,
quod verbum caro factum est et habitavit inter
homines : procurasti mihi per quendam hominem, in-
manissimo typho turgidum, quosdam Platonicorum
libros ex graeca lingua in latinum versos ; et ibi legi
non quidem his verbis, sed hoc idem omnino multis
et multiplicibus suaderi rationibus, quod in principio
erat verbum et verbum erat apud deum et deus erat

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

VIII

How the Mercy of God at length relieved him

THOU, Lord, art the same for ever: nor art thou CHAP.
angry with us for ever, because thou hast pity upon VIII
dust and ashes: and it was pleasing in thy sight to
reform my deformities; and by inward gallings didst
thou startle me, that I should become unquiet, till
such time as it might be assured unto my inward
sight, that it was thou thyself. Thus, by the secret
hand of thy medicining was my swelling abated;
and that troubled and bedimmed eyesight of my
soul, by the smart eye-salve of mine own wholesome
dolours, daily began more and more to be cleared.

IX

What he found in some Books of the Platonists, agreeable to the Christian Doctrine

AND thou being desirous first of all to shew unto me CHAP.
how thou resistest the proud, but givest grace unto IX
the humble; and with what great mercy of thine the James iv. 6
way of humility is traced out unto men, in that thy
Word was made flesh, and dwelt among men: thou
procuredst for me, by means of a certain man, puffed
up with a most unreasonable pride, to see certain
books of the Platonists, translated out of Greek into
Latin. And therein I read, not indeed in the self-
same words, but to the very same purpose, persuaded
by many reasons, and of several kinds, that In the
beginning was the Word, and the Word was with John i.
God, and that Word was God; the same was in the 1-12

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

CAP. verbum : hoc erat in principio apud deum ; omnia
^{IX} per ipsum facta sunt, et sine ipso factum est nihil ;
quod factum est, in eo vita est, et vita erat lux homi-
num ; et lux in tenebris lucet, et tenebrae eam non
comprehenderunt ; et quia hominis anima, quamvis
testimonium perhibeat de lumine, non est tamen
ipsa lumen, sed verbum, deus ipse, est lumen verum,
quod inluminat omnem hominem venientem in hunc
mundum ; et quia in hoc mundo erat, et mundus per
eum factus est, et mundus eum non cognovit. quia
vero in sua propria venit et sui eum non receperunt,
quotquot autem receperunt eum, dedit eis potes-
tatem filios dei fieri, credentibus in nomine eius, non
ibi legi.

Item legi ibi, quia verbum, deus, non ex carne,
non ex sanguine, neque ex voluntate viri, neque ex
voluntate carnis, sed ex deo natus est ; sed quia ver-
bum caro factus est et habitavit in nobis, non ibi legi.
indagavi quippe in illis litteris varie dictum et in
multis modis, quod sit filius in forma patris non rapi-
nam arbitratus esse aequalis deo, quia naturaliter id
ipsum est : sed quia semet ipsum exinanivit formam
servi accipiens, in similitudinem hominum factus et
habitu inventus ut homo, humiliavit se faetus oboe-
diens usque ad mortem, mortem autem crucis ; propter
quod deus eum exaltavit a mortuis, et donavit ei
nomen, quod est super omne nomen, ut in nomine
Iesu omne genu flectatur caelestium, terrestrialium et
inferorum et omnis lingua confiteatur, quia dominus
Iesus in gloria est dei patris, non habent illi libri.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

beginning with God. All things were made by him, CHAP.
and without him was nothing made. In that which IX
was made, was life, and the life was the light of men.
And the light shined in the darkness, and the dark-
ness comprehended it not. And for that the soul of
man, though it gives testimony of the light, yet itself
is not that light, but the Word, God himself, is John i. 9
that true light that lighteth every man that cometh
into the world ; and that he was in the world, and John i. 10
the world was made by him, and the world knew
him not. But that he came unto his own, and his John i. 11
own received him not, but as many as received him,
to them gave he power to become the sons of God, John i. 12
as many as believed in his name : all this did I not
read there.

There also did I read that God the Word was not
born of flesh nor of blood, nor of the will of man, nor
of the will of the flesh, but of God. But that the
Word was made flesh and dwelt amongst us, did I not
read there. I found out in those books, though it was
otherwise and divers ways said, that the Son being in Phil. ii. 6
the form of the Father, thought it no robbery to be
equal with God, for that in nature he was the same
with him. But that he made himself of no reputation, Phil. ii. 7
taking upon him the form of a servant, and was
made in the likeness of men, and was found in fashion Phil. ii. 8
as a man, and humbled himself, and became obedient
unto death, even the death of the Cross : wherefore Phil. ii. 9
God hath highly exalted him (from the dead) and
given him a name over every name, that at the name Phil. ii. 10
of Jesus every knee shall bow, of things in heaven,
and things in earth, and things under the earth ; and
that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ Phil. ii. 11
is Lord, to the glory of God the Father : those
books have not. Again, that thy only begotten Son,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. quod autem ante omnia tempora et supra omnia tempora ^{IX} inconmutabiliter manet unigenitus filius tuus, coaeternus tibi, et quia de plenitudine eius accipiunt animae, ut beatae sint, et quia participatione manentis in se sapientiae renovantur, ut sapientes sint, est ibi; quod autem secundum tempus pro impiis mortuus est, et filio unico tuo non pepercisti, sed pro nobis omnibus tradidisti eum, non est ibi. abscondisti enim haec a sapientibus et revelasti ea parvulis, ut venirent ad eum laborantes et onerati et reficeret eos, quoniam mitis est et humilis corde, et dirigit mites in iudicio, et docet mansuetos vias suas, videns humilitatem nostram et laborem nostrum et dimittens omnia peccata nostra. qui autem cothurno tamquam doctrinæ sublimioris elati non audiunt dicentem: Discite a me, quoniam mitis sum et humilis corde, et invenietis requiem animabus vestris, et si cognoscunt déum, non sicut deum glorificant, aut gratias agunt, sed evanescunt in cogitationibus suis, et obscuratur insipiens cor eorum; dicentes se esse sapientes stulti fiunt.

Et ideo legebam ibi etiam inmutatam gloriam incorruptionis tuae in idola et varia simulacra, in similitudinem imaginis corruptibilis hominis et volucrum et quadrupedum et serpentium, videlicet Aegyptium cibum, quo Esau perdidit primogenita sua, quoniam caput quadrupedis pro te honoravit populus primogenitus, conversus corde in Aegyptum et curvans imaginem tuam, animam suam, ante imaginem vituli manducantis faenum. inveni haec ibi et non manducavi. placuit enim tibi, domine,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

co-eternal with thee, was before all times, and beyond CHAP.
all times remains unchangeable, and that of his ful- IX
ness all souls receive what makes them blessed ; and that by participation of that wisdom which remains in them, they are renewed, that they may be made wise, is there. But that he in due time died for the wicked ; and that thou sparedst not thine only Son, Rom. viii.
but deliveredst him for us all, is not there. For thou hast hid these things from the wise, and hast revealed them unto babes ; that they that labour and are Matt. xi. 28 heavy laden, might come unto him, and he might refresh them, because he is meek and lowly in heart : and the meek he directeth in judgment, and such as be mild he teacheth his ways, beholding our humility and labour, and forgiving us all our sins. But such as tower high in the buskin of a sublimer learning, hear not him saying unto them, Learn of me, for I am meek and lowly in heart, and you shall Matt. xi. 29 find rest to your souls ; and, If they know God, yet Rom. i. 21 they glorify him not as God, nor give thanks unto him, but wax vain in their imaginations ; and their foolish heart is darkened ; and professing that they Rom. i. 22 are wise, they become fools.

And there also did I read, that they had changed Rom. i. 23 the glory of thy incorruptible nature into idols, and divers shapes, into the likeness of the image of corruptible man, and birds, and beasts, and serpents ; yea verily, into that Egyptian food, for which Esau Gen. xxv. sold his birthright ; for that that people, which was thy firstborn, worshipped the head of a four-footed beast instead of thee, turning in their heart back towards Egypt ; and bowing thy image (their own soul) before the image of a calf that eateth hay. Ps. cxi. 20 These things found I there ; but I fed not on them. For it pleased thee, O Lord, to take away the reproach

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. auferre opprobrium diminutionis ab Iacob, ut maior
^{IX} serviret minori, et vocasti gentes in hereditatem tuam. et ego ad te veneram ex gentibus; et intendi in aurum, quod ab Aegypto voluisti ut auferret populus tuus, quoniam tuum erat, ubicumque erat. et dixisti Atheniensibus per apostolum tuum, quod in te vivimus et movemur et sumus, sicut et quidam secundum eos dixerunt, et utique inde erant illi libri. et non adtendi in idola Aegyptiorum, quibus de auro tuo ministrabant, qui transmutaverunt veritatem dei in mendacium, et coluerunt et servierunt creaturae potius quam creatori.

X

CAP. Et inde admonitus redire ad memet ipsum, intravi
^X in intima mea, duce te, et potui, quoniam factus es adiutor meus. intravi et vidi qualicumque oculo animae meae supra eundem oculum animae meae, supra mentem meam, lucem incommutabilem: non hanc vulgarem et conspicuam omni carni, nec quasi ex eodem genere grandior erat, tamquam si ista multo multoque clarius claresceret totumque occuparet magnitudine. non hoc illa erat, sed aliud,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

of humbling from Jacob, that the elder brother CHAP.
should serve the younger: and thou hast called the IX
Gentiles into thine inheritance. And I myself had
come unto thee from among the Gentiles; and I set
my mind earnestly upon that gold which thou willest Exodus. iii.
thy people to take from the Egyptians, seeing thine 22
it was, wheresoever it were. And to the Athenians
thou saidst by thy Apostle, That in thee we live, and Acts xvii.
move, and have our being, as certain of their own
poets had said. And surely it was from Athens these
books came. But I set not my mind towards the
idols of Egypt, which they made of thy gold; even
they who changed the truth of God into a lie, and Rom. i. 25
worshipped and served the creature more than the
Creator.

X

Divine things are more clearly discovered unto him

AND being hence admonished to return to myself, CHAP.
I entered even into mine own inwards, thou being X
my Leader: and able I was to do it, for thou wert
now become my Helper. Into myself I went, and
with the eyes of my soul (such as it was) I discovered
over the same eye of my soul, over my mind, the
unchangeable light of the Lord: not this vulgar
light, which all flesh may look upon, nor yet another
greater of the same kind; as if this should shine
much and much more clearly, and with its greatness
take up all the room. This light was none of that,

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. aliud valde ab istis omnibus. nec ita erat supra
^X mentem meam, sicut oleum super aquam, nec sicut
caelum super terram; sed superior, quia ipsa fecit
me, et ego inferior, quia factus ab ea. qui novit
veritatem, novit eam, et qui novit eam, novit
aeternitatem. caritas novit eam. o aeterna veritas
et vera caritas et cara aeternitas! tu es deus meus,
tibi suspiro die ac nocte. et cum te primum cognovi,
tu assumsisti me, ut viderem esse, quod viderem, et
nondum me esse, qui viderem. et reverberasti infir-
mitatem aspectus mei, radians in me vehementer, et
contremui amore et horrore: et inveni longe me esse
a te in regione dissimilitudinis, tamquam audirem
vocem tuam de excelso: "cibus sum grandium:
cresce et manducabis me. nec tu me in te mutabis
sicut cibum carnis tuae, sed tu mutaberis in me."
et cognovi, quoniam pro iniuitate erudisti hominem,
et tabescere fecisti sicut araneam animam meam, et
dixi: "numquid nihil est veritas, quoniam neque
per finita neque per infinita locorum spatia diffusa
est?" et clamasti de longinquuo: ego sum qui sum.
et audivi, sicut auditur in corde, et non erat prorsus
unde dubitarem, faciliusque dubitarem vivere me,
quam non esse veritatem, quae per ea, quae facta
sunt, intellecta conspicitur.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

but another, yea clean another from all these. Nor CHAP.
was it in that manner above my mind, as oil is upon X
water, nor yet as the heaven is above the earth : but
superior to my soul, because it made me ; and I was
inferior to it, because I was made by it. He that
knows what truth is, knows what that light is ; and
he that knows it, knows eternity. Charity knows
it. O eternal Truth ! and true Charity ! and dear
Eternity ! Thou art my God, to thee do I sigh day
and night. Thee when first I saw, thou liftedst me
up, that I might see there was something which I
might see ; and that as yet I was not the man to see it.
And thou didst beat back the infirmity of my own
sight, darting thy beams of light upon me most
strongly, and I trembled both with love and horror :
and I perceived myself to be far off from thee in the
region of utter unlikeness, as if I heard this voice of
thine from on high : I am the food of strong men,
grow apace, and thou shalt feed on me ; nor shalt
thou convert me like common food into thy substance,
but thou shalt be changed into me. And I learned
thereupon, that thou with rebukes hast corrected man
for iniquity, thou madest my soul to consume away Ps. xxxix.
like a moth. And I said : Is truth therefore nothing
at all, seeing it is neither diffused by infinite spaces,
nor by finite ? But thou criedst to me from afar off:
Yea, verily, I Am that I Am. This voice I heard, Exod. iii.
(as things are heard in the heart) nor was there any
suspicion at all, why I should doubt of it : yea, I
should sooner doubt that I did not live, than that
Truth is not, which is clearly to be seen by those Rom. i. 20
things which are made.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

XI

CAP. Et inspexi cetera infra te, et vidi nec omnino esse
^{XI} nec omnino non esse: esse quidem, quoniam abs te sunt, non esse autem, quoniam id quod es non sunt. id enim vere est, quod incommutabiliter manet. mihi autem inhaerere deo bonum est, quia, si non manebo in illo, nec in me potero. ille autem in se manens innovat omnia; et dominus meus es, quoniam bonorum meorum non eges.

XII

CAP. Et manifestatum est mihi, quoniam bona sunt, quae
^{XII} corrumpuntur, quae neque si summa bona essent, corrumpi possent, neque nisi bona essent, corrumpi possent: quia, si summa bona essent, incorruptibilia essent, si autem nulla bona essent, quid in eis conrumperetur, non esset. nocet enim corruptio, et nisi bonum minueret, non noceret. aut igitur nihil nocet corruptio, quod fieri non potest, aut, quod certissimum est, omnia, quae corrumpuntur, privantur

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

XI

How Creatures are, and yet are not

AND I cast mine eyes upon those other creatures CHAP.
beneath thee, and I perceived, that they neither XI
have any absolute being, nor yet could they be said
to have no being. A being they have, because they
are from thee; and yet no being, because what thou
art, they are not. For that truly hath a being,
which remains unchangeably. It is good then for Ps. lxxiii.
me to hold fast unto God : for if I remain not in him,
²⁸ I shall never be able to do it in myself : whereas he
remaining in himself, reneweth all things. And thou
art my Lord, since thou dost not stand in need of my Ps. xvi. 2
goods.

XII

All that is, is Good

AND manifested unto me it was, that even those CHAP.
things be good, which yet are corrupted ; which, XII
were they sovereignly good, could never be cor-
rupted, nor could they be corrupted, unless they were
good : because if sovereignly good they were, they
must needs be incorruptible ; and if they held no
goodness in them at all, neither should they have
anything in them to be corrupted. For corruption
hurts everything, but unless there were goodness to
diminish, it could not hurt. Either therefore corrup-
tion does at all no hurt, (which cannot be), or, which
is most certain, all which is corrupted, is deprived

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. bono. si autem omni bono privabuntur, omnino non
XII erunt. si enim erunt et corrumpi iam non poterunt,
meliora erunt, quia incorruptibiliter permanebunt.
et quid monstruosius quam ea dicere omni bono amisso
facta meliora? ergo si omni bono privabuntur,
omnino nulla erunt: ergo quamdiu sunt, bona sunt.
ergo quaecumque sunt, bona sunt, malumque illud,
quod quaerebam unde esset, non est substantia, quia,
si substantia esset, bonum esset. aut enim esset
incorruptibilis substantia, magnum utique bonum,
aut substantia corruptibilis esset, quae nisi bona
esset, corruptibilis non esset. itaque vidi et mani-
festatum est mihi, quia omnia bona tu fecisti, et
prorsus nullae substantiae sunt, quas tu non fecisti.
et quoniam non aequalia omnia fecisti, ideo sunt
omnia, quia singula bona sunt, et simul omnia valde
bona, quoniam fecit deus noster omnia bona valde.

XIII

CAP. Et tibi omnino non est malum, non solum tibi sed
XIII nec universae creaturae tuae, quia extra non est
aliquid, quod inrumpat et corrumpat ordinem, quem
inposuisti ei. in partibus autem eius quaedam qui-
busdam quia non convenient, mala putantur; et

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

of goodness. If things then shall be deprived of all their goodness, they shall have at all no being. For if they shall still be, and shall not be at all corrupted, they shall thereby become better, because they remain ever incorruptibly. What more absurd now than to affirm those things that have lost all their goodness, to be made the better by it? Therefore, whenever they shall be deprived of all their goodness, they shall also lose all their being. So long therefore as they are, they are good: therefore, whatsoever are, are good, and that evil which I sought, whence it should be, is not any substance: for were it a substance, it should be good. For either it should be an incorruptible substance, that is to say, of the chief sorts of good; or else should it be some corruptible substance; which unless it were some way or other good, it could not be corrupted. I perceived therefore, and it was made plain unto me, that all things are good which thou hast made, nor is there any substance at all, which thou hast not made. And because all which thou hast made are not equal, therefore are all things; for each is good, and at the same time all together very good, because thou our God hast made all things very good.

Therefore
are all
things,"
and not
one only :
goodness is
the essence
of things,
diversity
of goodness
their differ-
ence
Gen. i. 31

XIII

All created Things praise God

AND to thee is there nothing at all evil: yea, not only to thee, but also not to thy creatures in general; because there is not anything which is without, which can break in, or discompose that order which thou hast settled. But in some particulars of thy creation, for that some things there be which so well

CHAP.
XIII

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

CAP. eadem ipsa conveniunt aliis et bona sunt, et in semet
XIII ipsis bona sunt. et omnia haec, quae sibimet in-
vicem non conveniunt, conveniunt inferiori parti
rerum, quam terram dicimus, habentem caelum suum
nubilosum atque ventosum congruum sibi. et absit,
ut dicerem iam : "non essent ista," quia etsi sola
ista cernerem, desiderarem quidem meliora, sed iam
etiam de solis istis laudare te deberem : quoniam
laudandum te ostendunt de terra dracones et omnes
abyssi, ignis, grando, nix, glacies, spiritus tempe-
tatis, quae faciunt verbum tuum, montes et omnes
colles, ligna fructifera et omnes cedri, bestiae et
omnia pecora, reptilia et volatilia pinnata ; reges
terrae et omnes populi, principes et omnes iudices
terrae, iuvenes et virgines, seniores cum iunioribus
laudent nomen tuum. cum vero etiam de caelis te
laudent, laudent te, deus noster, in excelsis omnes
angeli tui, omnes virtutes tuae, sol et luna, omnes
stellae et lumen, caeli caelorum et aquae, quae super
caelos sunt, laudent nomen tuum : non iam deside-
rabam meliora, quia omnia cogitabam, et meliora
quidem superiora quam inferiora, sed meliora omnia
quam sola superiora iudicio saniore pendebam.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

agree not with some other things, they are conceived CHAP.
to be evil: whereas those very things suit well enough XIII
with some other things, and are good; yea, and in
themselves are good. And all these things which do
not mutually agree one with another, do yet suit well
enough with this inferior part, which we call earth;
which hath such a cloudy and windy region of air
hanging over it, as is in nature agreeable to it. God
forbid now, that I should ever say, These things
ought not to be; for should I see nothing but these,
verily I should want the better, yet even only for
these ought I to praise thee; for that thou art to
be praised, these things of the earth do shew:
dragons, and all deeps, fire, hail, snow, ice, and
stormy wind, which fulfil thy word; mountains, and
all hills, fruitful trees, and all cedars; beasts and
all cattle; creeping things and flying fowls; kings
of the earth and all people; princes and all judges
of the land; young men and maidens; old men and
children, let them praise thy name. Seeing also
these in heaven praise thee, praise thee, O our God, ^{Ps. cxlviii.}
in the heights, thine angels and all thy hosts, sun
and moon, all the stars and light, the heaven of
heavens, and the waters that be above the heavens,
seeing that these praise thy name, I did not now
desire better, because I had now thought upon them
all: and that those superior things were better than
these inferior things, but yet all things together
better than those superior by themselves, I resolved
upon in my bettered judgment.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

XIV

CAP. **NON** est sanitas eis, quibus displicet aliquid creaturae
XIV tuae, sicut mihi non erat, cum displicerent multa,
quae fecisti. et quia non audebat anima mea, ut ei
displiceret deus meus, nolebat esse tuum quidquid ei
displicebat. et inde ierat in opinionem duarum sub-
stantiarum, et non requiescebat et aliena loquebatur.
et inde rediens fecerat sibi deum per infinita spatia
locorum omnium, et eum putaverat esse te, et eum
collocaverat in corde suo, et facta erat rursus tem-
plum idoli sui abominandum tibi. sed posteaquam
fovisti caput nescientis, et clausisti oculos meos, ne
viderent vanitatem, cessavi de me paululum, et con-
sopita est insania mea; et evigilavi in te et vidi te
infinitum aliter, et visus iste non a carne trahebatur.

XV

CAP. **ET** respexi alia, et vidi tibi debere quia sunt, et in te
XV cuncta finita, sed aliter, non quasi in loco, sed quia
tu es omnitenens manu veritate, et omnia vera sunt,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

XIV

To a sober Mind, none of God's Creatures are displeasing

THEY are not well in their wits, to whom anything which thou hast created is displeasing, nor more than I myself was, whenas many things which thou hadst made, did not like me. And because my soul durst not take distaste at my God, it would not suffer that aught should be accounted thine, which displeased it. Hence fell it upon the opinion of two substances, and no rest did it take, but talked idly. And turning from thence, it fancied a God to itself, which took up infinite measures of all places; and him did it think to be thee; and him it placed in its heart: so that it became once again the temple of its own idol, which was to thee so abominable. But after thou hadst refreshed my head, (I not knowing of it) and hadst shut up mine eyes that they should not behold vanity; I began to be quieted a little from myself, and my mad fit was gone asleep: out of which I awaked in thee, and then discerned thee to be infinite another manner of way. But this sight was not derived from any powers of my flesh.

XV

How there is truth and falsehood in the Creatures

AND I looked upon other things; and I saw how they owed their being to thee; and that all finite things are in thee, but in a different manner; not as in space, but because thou containest all things in

CHAP.
XV

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

CAP. in quantum sunt, nec quicquam est falsitas, nisi cum
XV putatur esse quod non est. et vidi, quia non solum
locis sua quaeque suis convenient sed etiam temporibus;
et quia tu, qui solus aeternus es, non post innumerabilia
spatia temporum coepisti operari, quia
omnia spatia temporum, quae praeterierunt et quae
praeteribunt, nec abirent nec venirent nisi te operante
et manente.

XVI

CAP. Er sensi expertus non esse mirum, quod palato non
XVI sano poena est et panis, qui sano suavis est, et oculis
aegris odiosa lux, quae puris amabilis. et iustitia tua
displacet iniquis, nedum vipera et vermiculus, quae
bona creasti, apta inferioribus creaturae tuae partibus,
quibus et ipsi iniqui apti sunt, quanto dissimiliores
sunt tibi, apti autem superioribus, quanto similiores
funt tibi. et quaesivi, quid esset iniquitas, et non
inveni substantiam, sed a summa substantia, te deo,
detortae in infima voluntatis perversitatem procientis
intima sua et tumescentis foras.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

thine hand in thy truth. All things are true so far CHAP.
forth as they have a being ; nor is falsehood anything,
unless while a thing is thought to be, which is not.
And I marked how that all things did agree respec-
tively, not to their places only, but to their seasons
also. And that thou, who only art eternal, didst not
begin to work after innumerable spaces of time spent ;
for that all spaces of times, both those which are
passed already, and those which are to pass hereafter,
should neither go nor come, but by thee, who art still
working and still remaining.

XV

XVI

All Things are good, though to some Things not fit

AND I both found and tried it to be no wonder that CHAP.
the same bread is loathsome to a distempered palate,
which is pleasant to a sound one : and that to sore
eyes, that light is offensive, which to the clear is
delightful. And thy justice gives disgust unto the
wicked : so do much more the viper and smallest
vermin, which thou hast created good, and fit enough
to these inferior portions of thy creation, to which
these very wicked are also fit ; and that so much the
more fit, by how much they be unlike thee, but so
much fitter for the superior parts, by how much they
become liker thee. And I enquired what iniquity
should be : but I found it not to be a substance, but
a swerving merely of the will, crooked quite away
from thee, O God, (who art the supreme substance)
towards these lower things ; casting away its inward
parts, and puffed up outwardly.

XVI

Ecclesiasticus x. 10,
which A.
interprets
allegori-
cally

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VII

XVII

CAP. **Et** mirabar, quod iam te amabam, non pro te phantasma : et non stabam frui deo meo, sed rapiebar ad te decore tuo, moxque diripiebar abs te pondere meo, et ruebam in ista cum gemitu ; et pondus hoc consuetudo carnalis. sed mecum erat memoria tui, neque ullo modo dubitabam esse, cui cohaererem, sed nondum me esse, qui cohaererem : quoniam corpus, quod corruptitur, adgravat animam, et deprimit terrena inhabitatio sensum multa cogitantem. eramque certissimus, quod invisibilia tua a constitutione mundi per ea quae facta sunt intellecta conspiciuntur, semper interna quoque virtus et divinitas tua. quaerens enim, unde adprobarem pulchritudinem corporum sive caelestium sive terrestrium, et quid mihi praesto esset integre de mutabilibus, iudicanti et dicenti, “hoc ita esse debet, illud non ita” : hoc ergo quaerens, unde iudicarem, cum ita iudicarem, inveneram incommutabilem et veram veritatis aeternitatem supra mentem meam commutabilem. atque ita gradatim a corporibus ad sentientem per corpus animam, atque inde ad eius interiorem vim, cui sensus corporis

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

XVII

What things hinder us of God's Knowledge

AND I wondered not a little that I was now come to CHAP.
love thee, and no phantasm instead of thee : nor did XVII
I delay to enjoy my God, but was ravished to thee
by thine own beauty ; and yet by and by I violently
fell off again, even by mine own weight ; rushing
with sorrow enough upon these inferior things. This
weight I spake of was my own fleshly custom. Yet
had I still a remembrance of thee ; nor did I any way
doubt, that there was one to whom I ought to cleave ;
but I thought I was not yet able to cleave unto thee : Wisdom ix.
for that the body which is corrupted, presseth down 15
the soul, and the earthly tabernacle weigheth down
the mind that museth upon many things. And most
certain was I that thy invisible works are clearly seen Rom. i. 20
from the constitution of the world, being understood by
the things that are made ; and also thine eternal power
and Godhead. For studying now, by what reasons
to make good the beauty of corporeal things, either
celestial or terrestrial, and what proof I had at hand
solidly to pass sentence upon these mutable things,
in pronouncing, This ought to be thus, and This must
be so ; plodding, I say, on this, upon what ground
namely I ought to judge, seeing I did thus judge :
I had by this time found the unchangeable and true
eternity of truth, residing above this changeable mind
of mine. And thus by degrees passing from bodies
to the soul, which makes use of the senses of the
body to perceive by ; and from thence to its inner
faculties, unto which the senses of the body are to
represent their outward objects ; and so forward, as

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. exteriora nuntiaret, et quousque possunt bestiae, at-
XVII que inde rursus ad ratiocinantem potentiam, ad quam
refertur iudicandum, quod sumitur a sensibus cor-
poris. quae se quoque in me comperiens mutabilem,
erexit se ad intelligentiam suam, et abduxit cogita-
tionem a consuetudine, subtrahens se contradicent-
ibus turbis phantasmatum, ut inveniret, quo lumine
aspargeretur; cum sine ulla dubitatione clamaret
incommutabile praferendum esse mutabili, unde
nosset ipsum incommutabile—quod nisi aliquo modo
nosset, nullo modo illud mutabili certa praeponeret
—et pervenit ad id, quod est, in ictu trepidantis
aspectus. tunc vero invisibilia tua per ea quae facta
sunt intellecta conspexi, sed aciem figere non evalui,
et repercussa infirmitate redditus solitis, non mecum
ferebam nisi amantem memoriam et quasi olefacta
desiderantem, quae comedere nondum possem. *

XVIII

CAP. Er quaerebam viam comparandi roboris, quod esset
XVIII idoneum ad fruendum te, nec inveniebam, donec
amplecterer mediatorem dei et hominum, hominem
386

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

far as the irrational creatures are able to go : thence again I passed on to the reasoning faculties, unto which whatever is received from the senses of the body is referred to be judged. This also finding itself to be variable in me, betook itself towards its own understanding, drawing away my thoughts from custom, and withdrawing itself from these confused multitudes of phantasies, which contradict one another ; that so it might find out that light, which now bedewed it, when without all further doubting, it cried out, that what was unchangeable was to be preferred before what was changeable, by which it had come to know that unchangeable (which unless by some means or other it had known, it could never have had sure ground for the preferring of it before the changeable) : thus by a flash of the twinkling eyesight it came so far as that which is. And now came I to have a sight of those invisible things of thee, which are understood by those things which are made. But I was not able to fix mine eye long upon them : but my infirmity being beaten back again, I was turned to my wonted fancies ; carrying along with me no more but a liking of those new thoughts in my memory, and an appetite, as it were, to the meat I had smelt ; which as yet I was not able to eat of.

XVIII

Only Christ is the Way to Salvation

THEN set I myself to seek a means of gaining so much strength, as should be sufficient to enjoy thee ; but I could not find it, until I embraced that

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. Christum Iesum, qui est super omnia deus benedictus
XVIII in saecula, vocantem et dicentem : ego sum via veritatis et vita, et cibum, cui capiendo invalidus eram, miscentem carni : quoniam verbum caro factum est, ut infantiae nostrae lactesceret sapientia tua, per quam creasti omnia. non enim tenebam deum meum Iesum humilis humilem, nec cuius rei magistra esset eius infirmitas noveram. verbum enim tuum, aeterna veritas, superioribus creaturae tuae partibus supereminens, subditos erigit ad se ipsam, in inferioribus autem aedificavit sibi humilem domum de limo nostro, per quam subdendos deprimeret a se ipsis et ad se traiceret, sanans tumorem et nutriendis amorem, ne fiducia sui progrederentur longius, sed potius infirmarentur, videntes ante pedes suos infirmam divinitatem ex participatione tunicae pelliciae nostrae, et lassi prosternerentur in eam, illa autem surgens levaret eos.

XIX

CAP. Ego vero aliud putabam : tantumque sentiebam de
XIX domino Christo meo, quantum de excellentis sapientiae viro, cui nullus posset aequari, praesertim quia

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

Mediator betwixt God and man, the Man Jesus CHAP.
Christ; who is over all, God blessed for evermore,
then calling unto me, and saying: I am the Way,
the Truth, and the Life: who mingled that Food
which I was unable to take (his own flesh) unto our
flesh. For the Word was made flesh, that by thy XVIII
wisdom, by which thou createdst all things, he might
suckle our infancy. For I, not yet humble enough, did
not apprehend my Lord Jesus Christ, who had made
himself humble; nor did I yet know what lesson
that infirmity of his would teach us. For thy Word,
the eternal Truth, being so highly exalted above
the highest of thy creatures, reaches up those that
were cast down, unto itself: having here below
built for itself a lowly cottage of our clay, by which
he intended to abate from the height of their own 2 Cor. x. 5
imaginings, those that were to be cast down; that
so he might bring them about unto himself; allaying
the swelling of their pride, and cherishing of their
love: to the end they might go on no further in the
confidence of themselves, but might find their own
weakness rather; seeing the divinity itself enfeebled
at our feet, by taking our coats of skin upon him: Gen. iii. 21
that so being weary at length, they might cast down
themselves upon it, and that rising, might raise up
them together with it.

XIX

What he thought of Christ's Incarnation

BUT I had before far other thoughts: conceiving CHAP.
only of my Lord Christ as of a man of excellent XIX
wisdom, whom no man could be equalled unto; and
in this regard especially, for that being so wonderfully

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSONVM LIBER VII

CAP. mirabiliter natus ex virgine (ad exemplum contem-
XIX nendorum temporalium p^ra^e adipiscenda immor-
talitate) divina pro nobis cura tantam auctoritatem
magisterii meruisse videbatur. quid autem sacra-
menti haberet verbum caro factum, ne suspicari
quidem poteram. tantum cognoveram ex his, quae
de illo scripta traderentur, quia manducavit et bⁱbⁱvit,
dormivit, ambulavit, exhilaratus est, contristatus est,
sermocinatus est, non haesisse carnem illam verbo
tuo nisi cum anima et mente humana. novit hoc
omnis, qui novit incommutabilitatem verbi tui, quam
ego iam noveram, quantum poteram, nec omnino
quicquam inde dubitabam. etenim nunc movere
membra corporis per voluntatem, nunc non movere ;
nunc aliquo affectu affici, nunc non affici; nunc proferre
per signa sapientes sententias, nunc esse in silentio :
propria sunt mutabilitatis animae et mentis. quae si
falsa de illo scripta essent, etiam omnia periclitarentur
mendacio, neque in illis litteris ulla fidei salus generi
humano remaneret. quia itaque vera scripta sunt,
totum hominem in Christo agnoscebam : non corpus
tantum hominis aut cum corpore sine mente animum,
sed ipsum hominem, non persona veritatis, sed magna
quadam naturae humanae excellentia et perfectiore
participatione sapientiae p^raeferri ceteris arbitrabar.

Alypius autem deum carne indutum ita putabat credi
a Catholicis, ut praeter deum et carnem non esset in

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

born of a Virgin, (giving us an example how to contemn the worldly things for the obtaining of immortality;) by that divine care of his he seemed to have deserved so much authority, as to be the master over us. But what mystery this might carry with it, The Word was made flesh, I could not so much as imagine. Thus much I collected out of what is come to us, being written of him (how that he did eat, and drink, and sleep, and walk, and rejoiced in spirit, and was heavy, and preached): that the flesh did not cleave unto thy Word, without a human soul and mind. Everybody knows thus much, that knoweth the unchangeableness of thy Word: which I myself now knew, as well as I could, nor did I at all make any doubt of it. For, for him to move the limbs of his body by his will, and otherwhiles not to move them; now to be stirred by some affection, and at another time not to be affected; now to deliver wise sentences, and another while to keep silence: all these be properties of a soul and mind that are mutable. And should these things be falsely written of him, all the rest verily would be in suspicion of being a lie, nor should there be left at all in those Books any safeness of faith for mankind. Because therefore truths are there written, I there acknowledged a perfect man to be in Christ. Not the body of a man only, or a sensitive soul without a rational, but a very man, whom, not for his being the form of truth, but for a certain extraordinary excellency of human nature that was in him, I judged worthy to be preferred before all other men.

As for Alypius, he imagined the Catholics to have believed God to be so clothed with flesh, that besides God and the flesh, there was no soul at all in Christ, and that they had preached there was no

CHAP.
XIX

The
Manichees
thought
that he was
a form of
truth

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. Christo anima, mentemque hominis non existimabat
XIX in eo praedicari. et quoniam bene persuasum tenebat
ea, quae de illo memoriae mandata sunt, sine vitali et
rationali creatura non fieri, ad ipsam Christianam fidem
pigrus movebatur. sed postea haereticorum Apolli-
naristarum hunc errorem esse cognoscens, Catholicae
fidei conlaetatus et contemperatus est. ego autem
aliquanto posterius didicisse me fateor, in eo, quod
verbum caro factum est, quomodo Catholica veritas a
Photini falsitate dirimatur. improbatio quippe haer-
eticorum facit eminere, quid ecclesia tua sentiat et
quid habeat sana doctrina. oportuit enim et haer-
eses esse, ut probati manifesti fierent inter infirmos.

XX

CAP. SED tunc, lectis Platonicorum illis libris, posteaquam
XX inde admonitus quaerere incorpoream veritatem, in-
visibilia tua per ea quae facta sunt intellecta conspexi;
et repulsus sensi, quid per tenebras animae meae
contemplari non sinerer, certus esse te et infinitum
esse, nec tamen per locos finitos infinitosve diffundi,
et vere te esse, qui semper idem ipse esses, ex nulla
parte nulloque motu alter aut aliter, cetera vero ex
te esse omnia, hoc solo firmissimo documento, quia
sunt: certus quidem in istis eram, nimis tamen infirmus
392

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

soul of man in him. And because he was verily CHAP.
persuaded, that those actions which were recorded XIX
of him could not be performed but by a vital and a
rational creature, he was the slower therefore in
moving towards the Christian faith. But under-
standing afterwards, that this was the error of the
Apollinarian heretics, he was better pleased with
the Catholic faith, and better complied with it. But
something later it was, I confess, ere I learned how
in this sentence, The Word was made flesh, the
Catholic truth could be cleared of the heresy of
Photinus. For, the confuting of the heretics makes
the opinions of the Church more eminent, and the
tenet which the sound doctrine maintaineth. For
there must be also heresies, that they which are 1 Cor. xi. 19
approved may be made manifest among the weak.

XX

Of divers Books of the Platonists

BUT having read as then these books of the Platonists, CHAP.
having once gotten the hint from them, and falling XX
upon the search of incorporeal truth; I came to get
a sight of these invisible things of thine, which are
understood by those things which are made: and
being put back again, I perceived how that the
darkness of mine own mind was it which so hindered
my contemplation: I became certain, that thou wert
both infinite, and yet not diffused over finite and
infinite places: and that thou art truly the same that
thou art ever, nor in any part, nor by any motion,
different or otherwise: and that all other things are
from thee, taught so by this one most firm demonstra-
tion, that they are. Of these things I was certain

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM 'LIBER VII

CAP ad fruendum te. garriebam plane quasi peritus et, nisi
XX in Christo, salvatore nostro, viam tuam quaererem,
non peritus, sed periturus essem. iam enim cooperam
velle videri sapiens, plenus poena mea et non flebam,
insuper autem inflabar scientia. ubi enim erat illa
aedificans caritas a fundamento humilitatis, quod
est Christus Iesus? aut quando illi libri me docerent
eam? in quos me propterea, priusquam scripturas
tuas considerarem, credo voluisti incurrere, ut inpri-
meretur memoriae meae, quomodo ex eis affectus
essem, et cum postea in libris tuis mansuefactus
essem, et curantibus digitis tuis contrectarentur
vulnera mea, discernerem atque distinguerem, quid
interesset inter praesumptionem et confessionem,
inter videntes, quo eundum sit, nec videntes, qua, et
viam ducentem ad beatificam patriam, non tantum
cernendam sed et habitandam. nam si primo sanctis
tuis litteris informatus essem, et in earum familiaritate
obdulcuisses mihi, et post in illa volumina incidissem,
fortasse aut abripuissent me a solidamento pietatis,
aut si in affectu, quem salubrem inbiberam, perstitis-
sem, putarem etiam ex illis libris eum posse concipi,
si eos solos quisque didicisset.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

enough, yet too weak to comprehend thee. I prated CHAP.
altogether as I were a skilful fellow; but had I not ^{XX}
sought thy way in Christ our Saviour, I had been like
to prove not skilled but killed. For now, forsooth, I
began to be desirous to seem wise: full of mine own
punishment, yet could not weep for it, but became
more and more puffed up with my knowledge. For
where was that charity that should build me up from
that foundation of humility which is in Christ Jesus? Or
when would these books have taught me that? Yet upon these, I believe it was thy pleasure that I
should first fall, before I took thy Scriptures into my
consideration; that I might print in memory, how far
those books wrought upon my affections: and that
when afterwards I should come to be made tractable
by thy Books, thine own fingers undertaking the cure
of me, and my wounds dressed, I might discern at
last and distinguish how main a difference there was
betwixt presumption and confession; betwixt those
that saw whither they were to go, but knew nothing
of the way: and that path which leads unto that
blessed country, not only to be looked upon, but
dwelt in. For had I first been brought up in thy holy
Scriptures, and in the familiar use of them thyself
had grown sweet unto me, and had I fallen upon these
philosophical volumes afterwards; they might either
have withdrawn me from the solid ground of piety,
or if I had stood firm in that wholesome disposition
which I had there tasted, I might perchance have
thought, that a man, even out of these Platonic books
might have gotten the same, had he studied them
only.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

XXI

CAP. ITAQUE avidissime arripui venerabilem stilum spiritus
XXI tui, et p[re]ce ceteris apostolum Paulum. et perierunt illae quaestiones, in quibus mihi aliquando visus est adversari sibi, et non congruere testimonii legis et prophetarum textus sermonis eius : et apparuit mihi una facies eloquiorum castorum, et exultare cum tremore didici. et coepi et inveni, quidquid illac verum legeram, hac cum commendatione gratiae tuae dici : ut qui videt non sic glorietur, quasi non acceperit non solum quod videt, sed etiam ut videat—quid enim habet quod non accepit ?—et ut te, qui es semper idem, non solum admoneatur ut videat, sed etiam sanetur ut teneat ; et qui de longinquo videre non potest, viam tamen ambulet, quaveniat et videat et teneat : quia, etsi condelectetur homo legi dei secundum interiorem hominem, quid faciet de alia lege in membris suis, repugnante legi mentis suae, et se captivum ducente in lege peccati; quae est in membris eius ? quoniam iustus es, domine ; nos autem peccavimus, inique fecimus, in pie gessimus, et gravata est super nos manus tua, et iuste traditi sumus antiquo peccatori, praeposito mortis, quia persuasit voluntati nostrae similitudinem

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

XXI

What he found in the Holy Scriptures, which was not in the Platonists

Most greedily therefore laid I hold upon that CHAP.
venerable writing of thy Spirit: and upon the Apostle XXI
Paul above all the rest. Whereupon those difficulties
quite vanished away, in which he sometimes seemed
to me to contradict himself; and wherein the text of
his discourse seemed not to agree with the testi-
monies of the Law and the Prophets. And there
appeared unto me but one face in that chaste
eloquence; and I learned to rejoice with trembling. Ps. ii. 11
So I began; and found whatsoever truth I had there
read, to be said here with the praise of thy grace.
So he that sees should not so glory as if he had not 1 Cor. iv. 7
received, not only that which he doth see, but also
the power to see. For what hath he, which he hath
not received? So he is put in mind not only to see
thee, who art ever the same, but that he may be
made strong to hold thee: and that he who from afar
off is not able to see his way, may yet walk on that
way, whereby he may at last arrive, and see, and
comprehend. For though a man be delighted with the Rom. vii. 22
law of God after the inner man, yet how shall he do
with that other law in his members, which wars
against the law of his mind, and bringeth him into
captivity to the law of sin which is in his members? Rom. vii. 23
For, thou art righteous, O Lord, but we have sinned Dan. ix. 5
and committed iniquity, and done wickedly, and thy
hand is grown heavy upon us, and we are justly
delivered over unto that old sinner the president
of death: for he hath wrought our will to become
like his will, whereby he departed from thy truth.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VII

CAP. voluntatis suaे, qua in veritate tua non stetit. quid
XXI faciet miser homo? quis eum liberabit de corpore
mortis huius, nisi gratia tua per Iesum Christum
dominum nostrum, quem genuisti coaeternum et
creasti in principio viarum tuarum; in quo princeps
huius mundi non invenit quicquam morte dignum,
et occidit eum; et evacuatum est chirographum, quod
erat contrarium nobis? hoc illae litterae non habent.
non habent illae paginae vultum pietatis illius, lacri-
mas confessionis, sacrificium tuum, spiritum contribu-
latum, cor contritum et humiliatum, populi salutem,
sponsam civitatem, arram spiritus sancti, poculum
pretii nostri. nemo ibi cantat: Nonne deo subdita
erit anima mea? ab ipso enim salutare meum:
etenim ipse deus meus et salutaris meus, susceptor
meus: non movebor amplius. nemo ibi audit vocan-
tem: Venite ad me, qui laboratis. dedianuntur ab eo
discere, quoniam mitis est et humilis corde. abscon-
disti enim haec a sapientibus et prudentibus et
revelasti ea parvulis. et aliud est de silvestri ca-
cumine videre patriam pacis, et iter ad eam non in-
venire, et frustra conari per invia, circum obsidentibus
et insidianibus fugitivis desertoribus, cum principe
suo leone et dracone: et aliud tenere viam illuc du-
centem, cura caelestis imperatoris munitam, ubi non
latrocinantur qui caelestem militiam deseruerunt;
vitant enim eam sicut supplicium. haec mihi
inviscerabantur miris modis, cum minimum
apostolorum tuorum legerem, et con-
sideraveram opera tua et expaveram.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VII

What shall wretched man do? Who shall deliver him from the body of this death, but only thy grace, through Jesus Christ our Lord, whom thou hast begotten co-eternal to thyself, and possessedst in the beginning of thy ways: in whom the prince of this world found nothing worthy of death, yet killed he him; whereby the handwriting was blotted out, which was contrary to me? None of all this do these Platonic writings contain. Those leaves can show nothing of this face of pity, those tears of confession, that sacrifice of thine, a troubled spirit, a broken and a contrite heart, the salvation of thy people, the Spouse, the city, the earnest of the Holy Ghost, the Cup of our Redemption. No man sings there, Shall not my soul wait upon God, seeing from him cometh my salvation? For he is my God, and my Salvation, my Defence; I shall be no more moved. No man in those books hears him calling: Come unto me all ye that labour; Yea, they scorn to learn of him because he is meek and lowly in heart. For these things hast thou hid from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes. For it is one thing from the woody top of a mountain to see the land of peace, and not to find the way thither; and in vain to travel through ways unpassable, round about beset with these fugitive spirits, forsakers of their God lying in ambush with that ring-leader of theirs, the Lion and the Dragon: and another to keep on the way that leads thither, which is guarded by the care of our heavenly General: where there are none that forsook the heavenly army to exercise robberies; which they abhor as much as their very torment. These things did by wonderful means sink into my very bowels, whenas I read that least of thy Apostles, and had considered upon thy works and trembled.

BOOK VIII

I

2 c

LIBER OCTAVVS

I

CAP. DEUS meus, recorder in gratiarum actione tibi, et
I confitear misericordias tuas super me. perfundantur
ossa mea dilectione tua, et dicant : Domine, quis
similis tibi ? dirrupisti vincula mea : sacrificem tibi
sacrificium laudis. quomodo dirrupisti ea, narrabo,
et dicent omnes, qui adorant te, cum audient haec :
Benedictus dominus in caelo et in terra ; magnum
et mirabile nomen eius. inhaeserant praecordiis
meis verba tua, et undique circumvallabar abs te.
de vita tua aeterna certus eram, quamvis eam
in aenigmate et quasi per speculum videram ; dubi-
tatio tamen omnis de incorruptibili substantia, quod
ab illa esset omnis substantia, ablata mihi erat, nec
certior de te, sed stabilior in te esse cupiebam. de
mea vero temporali vita nutabant omnia, et mun-
dandum erat cor a fermento veteri ; et placebat via,
ipse salvator, et ire per eius angustias adhuc pigebat.
et inmisisti in mentem meam, visumque est bonum
in conspectu meo, pergere ad Simplicianum, qui mihi
bonus apparebat servus tuus, et lucebat in eo gratia

THE EIGHTH BOOK

I

*How being inflamed with the Love of Heavenly
Things, he goeth to Simplicianus*

GIVE me leave, O my God, with thanksgiving to CHAP.
remember, and to confess unto thee thine own I
mercies bestowed upon me. Let my bones be filled
with thy love, and let them say unto thee, Who is Ps. lxxxvi.
like unto thee, O Lord? Thou hast broken my 8
bonds in sunder, I will offer unto thee the sacrifice Ps. cxvi.
of thanksgiving. And how thou hast broken them 16, 17
will I now declare; and all men who worship thee,
when they hear of it shall say: Blessed be the Lord,
both in heaven and in earth, great and wonderful is
his name. Thy words had stuck fast even to the
very roots of my heart, and I was hedged round about Job i. 10
by thee. Of the eternity of thy life I was now
become certain, though I had no more than seen in 1 Cor. xiii.
a glass as it were darkly. All my former doubtings, 12
concerning an incorruptible substance, and that all
other substance should come from that, was now
quite taken away from me; nor did I desire as now
to be made more certain of thee, but to stand firmer
in thee. As for mine own temporal life, all things
were as yet unresolved; my heart was to be purged. 1 Cor. v. 7
from the old leaven. The Way (our Saviour him- John xiv. 6
self) I very well liked of: but it still irked me to
follow him through its straitness. Thou didst put
into my mind, and it seemed good in mine own eyes,
to go unto Simplicianus, who seemed to me a faithful

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VIII

CAP. tua. audieram etiam, quod a iuventute sua devotissime tibi viveret; iam vero tunc senuerat; et longa aetate in tam bono studio sectandae viae tuae multa expertus, multa edoctus mihi videbatur: et vere sic erat. unde mihi ut proferret volebam conferenti secum aestus meos, quis esset aptus modus sic affecto, ut ego eram, ad ambulandum in via tua.

Videbam enim plenam ecclesiam, et aliis sic ibat, aliis autem sic. mihi autem dispicebat, quod agebam in saeculo, et oneri mihi erat valde, non iam inflammatibus cupiditatibus, ut solebant, spe honoris et pecuniae ad tolerandam illam servitutem tam gravem. iam enim me illa non delectabant, prae dulcedine tua et decore domus tuae, quam dilexi; sed adhuc tenaciter alligabar ex femina, nec me prohibebat apostolus coniugari, quamvis exhortaretur ad melius, maxime volens omnes homines sic esse, ut ipse erat. sed ego infirmior eligebam molliorem locum; et propter hoc unum volvebar in ceteris, languidus et tabescens curis marcidis, quod et in aliis rebus, quas nolebam pati, congruere cogebar vitae coniugali, cui deditus obstringebar. audieram ex ore veritatis esse spadones, qui se ipsos absciderunt propter regnum caelorum; sed, qui potest, inquit, capere, capiat. vani sunt

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

servant of thine, and that thy grace shined in him : CHAP.
of whom I had further heard, that from his very
youth he had lived most devoutly towards thee.
I
He was now grown into years; and by reason of so
great an age, spent in so good a purpose as follow-
ing thy ways, he seemed to me to have gained ex-
perience of many things, and to have been taught
many things: and verily so he had Out of which
skill of his, I desired him to afford me some direc-
tions, (making him acquainted with my troubles)
which should be the readiest way for a man in my
case to walk in thy paths.

For, the Church I saw to be full, and one went
this way, and another that way. But very unpleasant
to me it was, that I led the life of a worldling: yea,
a very grievous burden it was, those desires after the
hopes of honour and profit inflaming me now no longer
as they were wont to do, nor helping me to bear so
heavy a bondage. For in respect of the sweetness
and the beauty of thy house which I loved, those
thoughts delighted me no longer. But very strongly
yet was I enthralled with the love of a woman: nor
had thine Apostle forbidden me to marry, though he ^{1 Cor. vii. 8}
advised me to do better, earnestly wishing that all
men were as himself then was. But I being weak,
made choice of the softer place: and because of this
alone, was languishing I tumbled up and down in
the rest; yea, I pined away with withering cares,
because in other matters which I was unwilling to
undergo, I was constrained to accommodate myself
to a married life, unto which I stood enthralled.
I had understood from the mouth of Truth itself,
that there were some eunuchs which have made ^{Matt. xix.}
themselves so for the kingdom of heaven's sake:
but, quoth he, let him receive this saying that is able.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VIII

CAP. certe omnes homines, quibus non inest dei scientia,
^I nec de his, quae videntur bona, potuerunt invenire
eum, qui est. at ego iam non eram in illa vanitate ;
transcenderam eam, et contestante universa creatura,
inveneram te creatorem nostrum, et verbum tuum
apud te deum, tecumque unum deum, per quod
creasti omnia. et est aliud genus inpiorum, qui
cognoscentes deum non sicut deum glorificaverunt
aut gratias egerunt. in hoc quoque incideram, et
dextera tua suscepit me et inde ablatum posuisti, ubi
convalescerem, quia dixisti homini : Ecce pietas est
sapientia, et : Noli velle videri sapiens, quoniam
dicentes se esse sapientes stulti facti sunt. et in-
veneram iam bonam margaritam, et venditis omni-
bus, quae haberem, emenda erat, et dubitabam.

II

CAP. PERREXI ergo ad Simplicianum, patrem in accipienda
^{II} gratia tunc episcopi Ambrosii, et quem vere ut patrem
diligebat. narravi ei circuitus erroris mei. ubi autem
commemoravi legisse me quosdam libros Platonicorum,
quos Victorinus, quondam rhetor urbis Romae, quem
Christianum defunctum esse audieram, in Latinam
linguam transtulisset, gratulatus est mihi, quod non
406

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

All those men verily are vain, in whom the know- CHAP.
ledge of God is not; and who could not out of I
these things which seem good, find out him that is ² Wisdom
good indeed. But I was no longer in that vanity; xiii. 1
I was now gotten beyond it; and by the testimony
of all thy creatures, had I found thee our Creator,
and thy Word God together with thee, and together
one God with thee, by which Word thou createdst all
things. There is yet another kind of wicked men,
who knowing God, did not glorify him as God, Rom. i. 21
neither were thankful: upon these also was I fallen,
but thy right hand sustained me, and delivering me
out of their company, thou placedst me where I
might grow better. For thou hast said unto man:
Behold, the fear of the Lord is wisdom: and, Be not Job xxviii.
desirous to seem wise in thine own eyes, because 28
they who affirmed themselves to be wise, became Prov. iii. 7
fools. But I had now found that Pearl of price, Rom. i. 22
which I ought to have bought, though I sold all that Matt. xiii.
I had. But I was yet in a quandary what to do. 46

II

How Victorinus, the famous Orator, was converted

UNTO Simplicianus therefore I went, the father at CHAP.
that time of Bishop Ambrose in his receiving of thy II
grace; whom verily Ambrose loved as his own father.
To him I discovered the winding course of my error.
But when I told him that I had read over certain
books of the Platonists, which Victorinus, sometime
rhetoric professor of Rome, (who died a Christian as
I had heard) had translated into Latin, he much
rejoiced over me, for that I had not fallen upon

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. in aliorum philosophorum scripta incidissem, plena
II fallaciarum et deceptionum, secundum elementa
huius mundi, in istis autem omnibus modis insinuari
deum et eius verbum. deinde, ut me exhortaretur
ad humilitatem Christi, sapientibus absconditam et
revelatam parvulis, Victorinum ipsum recordatus est,
quem, Romae cum esset, familiarissime noverat,
deque illo mihi narravit quod non silebo. habet enim
magnam laudem gratiae tuae confitendam tibi, quem-
admodum ille doctissimus senex, et omnium liberalium
doctrinarum peritissimus, quique philosophorum tam
multa legerat et dijudicaverat, doctor tot nobilium
senatorum, qui etiam ob insigne praeclari magisterii,
quod cives huius mundi eximium putant, statuam
Romano foro meruerat et acceperat, usque ad illam
aetatem venerator idolorum, sacrorumque sacrilegorum
particeps, quibus tunc tota fere Romana nobilitas
inflata, spirabat prodigia iam et omnigenum deum
monstra et Anubem latratorem, quae aliquando
contra Neptunum et Venerem contraque Minervam
tela tenuerant, et a se victis iam Roma supplicabat,
quae iste senex Victorinus tot annos ore terricrepo
defensitaverat, non erubuerit esse puer Christi tui, et
infans fontis tui, subiecto collo ad humilitatis iugum,
et edomita fronte ad crucis opprobrium.

O domine, domine, qui inclinati caelos et de-
scendisti, tetigisti montes et fumigaverunt, quibus

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

any other philosophers' writings, which use to be CHAP.
full of fallacies and vain deceits, after the rudiments of this world : whereas in the Platonists, God and his word are everywhere implied. And the better to exhort me to Christ's humility, (hidden from the wise, and revealed to little ones) he mentioned Victorinus himself, whom whilst he was at Rome he had familiarly known : and of him he told this story, which I will not here conceal. For it affords matter of much praise of thy grace, which ought to be confessed unto thee, to hear how this most learned old man, most skilful in all the liberal sciences ; one who had read, and weighed so many of the philosophers ; one that had been master to so many noble Senators, who also as a mark of high office nobly filled, had (which worldlings esteem such an honour) both deserved and obtained a statue in the Roman Forum ; he remaining even till his old age a worshipper of idols, and a copartner of such sacrilegious solemnities, with which almost all the nobility and people of Rome were inspired, and had portents on their lips of that monstrous rabble of the gallimaufry of gods, and of Anubis the Barker, which had sometime maintained the bucklers against Neptune, Venus, and Minerva, whom Rome having once conquered, now worshipped, all which this old Victorinus with his thundering eloquence, had so many years been the champion of : how, I say, he blushed not to become the child of thy Christ, and an infant at thy font, submitting his neck to the yoke of humility, and subduing his forehead to the ignominy of the Cross.

O Lord, O Lord, which hast bowed the heavens Ps. cxliv. 5
and come down, touched the mountains and they did smoke : by what means didst thou convey

II
Col. ii. 8

Matt. xi. 25

Verg. Aen.
viii. 698

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VIII

CAP. modis te insinuasti illi pectori? legebat, sicut ait
II Simplicianus, sanctam scripturam, omnesque Christianas litteras investigabat studiosissime et perscrutabatur, et dicebat Simpliciano non palam, sed secretius et familiarius: "Noveris iam me esse Christianum." et respondebat ille: "Non credam nec deputabo te inter Christianos, nisi in ecclesia Christi videro." ille autem inridebat dicens: "Ergo parietes faciunt Christianos?" et hoc saepe dicebat, iam se esse Christianum, et Simplicianus illud saepe respondebat, et saepe ab illo parietum inrisio repetebatur. amicos enim suos reverebatur offendere, superbos daemonicos, quorum ex culmine Babylonicae dignitatis quasi ex cedris Libani, quas nondum contriverat dominus, graviter ruituras in se inimicitias arbitrabatur. sed posteaquam legendo et inhiando hausit firmitatem, timuitque negari a Christo coram angelis sanctis, si eum timeret coram hominibus confiteri, reusque sibi magni criminis adparuit, erubescendo de sacramentis humilitatis verbi tui, et non erubescendo de sacris sacrilegis superborum daemoniorum, quae imitator superbus acceperat, depuduit vanitati et erubuit veritati, subitoque et inopinatus ait Simpliciano, ut ipse narrabat: "Eamus in ecclesiam: Christianus volo fieri." at ille non se capiens laetitia, perrexit cum eo. ubi autem imbutus est primis instructionis sacramentis, non multo post

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

thyself into that man's breast? He read, as Sim- CHAP.
plicianus said, the Holy Scriptures, most studiously II
sought after and searched through all the writings
of the Christians, and said unto Simplicianus, (not
openly, but after a private and familiar manner)
You shall now understand that I am a Christian.
Simplicianus answered him: I will never believe,
nor will I rank you among the Christians, unless I see
you in the Church of Christ. Whereunto, he smiling
upon him, replied: Is it the walls then that make
Christians? And this he often reiterated, that he
was now a Christian: and Simplicianus making the
same answer, the conceit of the walls was as often
returned. For he feared to offend his friends, which
were proud devil-worshippers, from the height of
whose Babylonian dignity, as from the top of the
cedars of Libanus, which the Lord had not yet
brought down, he supposed a storm of ill will would
shower upon him. But when by reading and
earnestness he had gathered strength, and that he
feared to be denied by Christ before his angels, Luke ix. 26
should he now be afraid to confess him before men;
and that he appeared guilty to himself of a mighty
crime, in being ashamed of the Sacraments of the
humility of thy Word, whereas he had not been
ashamed of the sacrilegious sacrifices of those proud
devils (of which he himself had proudly partaken);
he became bold-faced against vanity, and shame-
faced towards the truth: yea, all on the sudden,
when Simplicianus thought nothing of it, he says
unto him, (as himself told me) Come, let us go to
the church, I resolve to be made a Christian. But
he, not able to contain himself for joy, went along
with him: where, so soon as he was instructed in the
first mysteries of religion, he not long after gave in

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. nomen dedit, ut per baptismum regeneraretur, mirante
II Roma, gaudente ecclesia. superbi videbant et iras-
cebantur, dentibus suis stridebant et tabescebant:
servo autem tuo dominus deus erat spes eius, et non
respiciebat in vanitates et insanias mendaces.

Denique ut ventum est ad horam profitendae fidei,
quae verbis certis conceptis retentisque memoriter, de
loco eminentiore, in conspectu populi fidelis, Romae
reddi solet ab eis, qui accessuri sunt ad gratiam tuam,
oblatum esse dicebat Victorino a presbyteris, ut
secretius redderet, sicut nonnullis, qui verecundia
trepidaturi videbantur, offerri mos erat; illum autem
maluisse salutem suam in conspectu sanctae multi-
tudinis profiteri. non enim erat salus, quam docebat,
in rhetorica, et tamen eam publice professus erat.
quanto minus ergo vereri debuit mansuetum gregem
tuum, pronuntians verbum tuum, qui non verebatur
in verbis suis turbas insanorum? itaque ubi ascendit,
ut redderet, omnes sibimet invicem, quisque ut eum
noverat, instrepuerunt nomen strepitu gratulationis.
quis autem ibi non eum noverat? et sonuit presso
sonitu per ora cunctorum conlaetantium: “ Vic-
torinus, Victorinus.” cito sonuerunt exultatione,
quia videbant eum, et cito siluerunt intentione, ut

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

his name, that he might be regenerated by Baptism : CHAP.
the city of Rome wondering, and the Church re-^{II}joicing. The proud beheld it, and were enraged,
gnashing upon him with their teeth, and even pining
away with envy at it. But the Lord God was the
hope of his servant, who took no regard to vanities Ps. xxxix.
and lying madness. ⁵

To conclude, when the hour was come wherein
he was to make a profession of his faith, (which in
Rome it was the custom of those that were shortly
to come unto thy grace to do, in a set form of
words gotten by heart, and standing aloft upon a
more eminent place, where they might well be
seen of all the faithful people;) there was an offer
made, as he said, by the priests unto Victorinus,
that he might make his profession more privately,
as the custom was to offer that courtesy to some
others, who were likely to be bashful and fearful
at the matter: but he chose rather to profess his
salvation in the presence of the holy assembly.
For whereas that was no salvation which he had
taught in rhetoric, and yet had he made public
profession of that: how much less therefore ought
he to dread that meek flock of thine, in the pro-
nouncing of thy word, who in the delivering of his
own words, had not feared the fullest audience of
mad men? So soon therefore as he was mounted
up aloft to make his profession; every one that knew
him whispered his name one to another with the voice
of congratulation. And who was there that did not
know him? And there ran a soft whisper through
all the mouths of the rejoicing multitude, Victorinus,
Victorinus. Quickly spake they of him with triumphing,
for that they saw him; and as quickly were they
whistled again, that they might now hear him. He

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. audirent eum. pronuntiavit ille fidem veracem prae-
^{II} clara fiducia, et volebant eum omnes rapere intro in
cor suum. et rapiebant amando et gaudendo : hae
rapientium manus erant.

III

CAP. DEUS bone, quid agitur in homine, ut plus gaudeat
^{III} de salute desperatae animae et de maiore periculo
liberatae, quam si spes ei semper affuisset aut peri-
culum minus fuisset? etenim tu quoque, misericors
pater, plus gaudes de uno paenitente, quam de nona-
ginta novem iustis, quibus non opus est paenitentia.
et nos cum magna iucunditate audimus, cum audimus
quam exsultantibus pastoris umeris reportetur ovis,
quae erraverat, et drachma referatur in thesauros tuos
conlaetantibus vicinis mulieri, quae invenit: et lacri-
mas excutit gaudium sollemnitatis domus tuae, cum
legitur in domo tua de minore filio tuo, quoniam
mortuus fuerat et revixit, perierat et inventus est.
gaudes quippe in nobis, et in angelis tuis sancta cari-
tate sanctis. nam tu semper idem, quia ea quae non
semper nec eodem modo sunt eodem modo semper
nosti omnia.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

pronounced aloud the true faith with an excellent CHAP.
boldness, and every man would gladly have plucked ^{II}
him to them into their very heart : yea, greedily did
they snatch him in, by loving of him, and rejoicing
for him. These were the hands by which they
snatched him.

III

*That God and his Angels do rejoice the more, at the
conversion of a greater Sinner*

Good God ! what is that which is wrought in man, CHAP.
that he should more rejoice at the salvation of such ^{III}

a soul as was in a desperate condition, and which hath
been delivered out of the greater danger, than if
there had always been conceived good hopes of him, or
whose danger had been lesser ? Yea, even thou also,

O most merciful Father, dost more rejoice over one Luke xv. 7
sinner repenting, than over ninety and nine just per-
sons that need no repentance. And with much joyful-
ness do we hearken so often as we hear it, how the lost

sheep is brought home again upon the Shepherd's Luke xv. 5
shoulder rejoicing : and that the lost groat is put again

into thy treasury, her friends and neighbours rejoicing
with the woman that had found it. Yea, and the joy

conceived at the solemn service of thy house makes
the tears come out of our eyes, whenas the parable of

thy younger son is read in it, how he was dead, but
made alive again ; he was lost, but found again. For

thou rejoicest both over us, as also over thy Angels,
who continue holy, in holy charity. For thou art ever

the same, because thou knowest after the selfsame
manner, all those things which of themselves neither
continue the same ever, nor after the same manner.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VIII

CAP.
III Quid ergo agitur in anima, cum amplius delectatur
inventis aut redditis rebus, quas diligit, quam si eas
semper habuisset? contestantur enim et cetera, et
plena sunt omnia testimoniis clamantibus: "ita est."
triumphat victor imperator; et non viciisset, nisi pug-
navisset: et quanto maius periculum fuit in proelio,
tanto est gaudium maius in triumpho. iactat tem-
pestas navigantes minaturque naufragium; omnes
futura morte pallescunt: tranquillatur caelum et mare,
et exultant nimis, quoniam timuerunt nimis. aeger est
carus, et vena eius malum renuntiat; omnes, qui eum
salvum cupiunt, aegrotant simul animo: fit ei recte,
et nondum ambulat pristinis viribus, et fit iam tale
gaudium, quale non fuit, cum antea salvus et fortis
ambularet. easque ipsas voluptates humanae vitae
etiam non inopinatis et praeter voluntatem inruenti-
bus, sed institutis et voluntariis molestiis homines
adquirunt. edendi et bibendi voluptas nulla est, nisi
praecedat esuriendi et sitiendi molestia. et ebriosi
quaedam salsiuscula comedunt, quo fiat molestus
ardor, quem dum extinguit potatio, fit delectatio.
et institutum est, ut iam pactae sponsae non tra-
dantur statim, ne vile habeat maritus datam, quam
non suspiraverit sponsus dilatam.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

What is that therefore which is wrought in the CHAP.
soul whenas it is more delighted to have either found III
or regained those things which it loved, than if it had
always possessed them? Yea, and other creatures
bear witness hereunto; and all things are full of testi-
monies still crying out, that so it is. The general
triumpheth when he is a conqueror; yet had he never
overcome, had he not fought: and how much the
more danger was in the battle, so much the more
rejoicing is there in the triumph. The storm tosses
the passengers, and threatens shipwreck, and every-
body waxes pale at his death approaching: but the
sky clears up, and the sea grows calm again, and they
are as much rejoiced as they were over scared. A
dear friend of ours is sick, and his blood-letting shows
the malignity of his disease: all that wish his good
health are thereupon sick in mind with him. He
proves well again, though not able to walk up and
down so strongly as he was wont to do; yet there is
so great an expression of joy made, as never had been,
whenas before his sickness he was able to walk per-
fectedly, sound, and lustily. Yea, the very pleasures of
our human life do we procure by preceding difficulties:
nor these only which fall upon us unlooked for, and
against our wills, but even purposed by us and desired.
There is no pleasure at all in eating and drinking,
unless the pinching of hunger and thirst go before it.
Drunkards eat certain saltish meats, with purpose to
procure a thirsty hotness in the mouth, which whilst
the drink quenches, the pleasure is procured. The
order also it is, that the spouse already affianced uses
not instantly to be given to her sweetheart: for fear
lest when he is an husband he should less esteem of her
for being so soon obtained, whom whilst he was a wooer
he sighed not after, thinking her too long delayed.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. Hoc in turpi et execranda laetitia, hoc in ea, quae
III concessa et licita est, hoc in ipsa sincerissima honestate amicitiae, hoc in eo, qui mortuus erat et revixit, perierat et inventus est: ubique maius gaudium molestia maiore praeceditur. quid est hoc, domine deus meus, cum tu aeternum tibi, tu ipse sis gaudium, et quaedam de te circa te semper gaudeant? quid est, quod haec rerum pars alternat defectu et profectu, offensionibus et conciliationibus? an is est modus earum, et tantum dedisti eis, cum a summis caelorum usque ad ima terrarum, ab initio usque in finem saeculorum, ab angelo usque ad vermiculum, a motu primo usque ad extremum, omnia genera bonorum et omnia iusta opera tua suis quaeque sedibus locares, et suis quaeque temporibus ageres? ei mihi, quam excelsus es in excelsis, et quam profundus in profundis! et nusquam recedis, et vix redimus ad te.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

This is observable in such joy as is dishonest, and CHAP.
to be abhorred; seen also in that joy which is con- III
sented unto, and lawful; seen likewise in the most
sincere honesty of friendship; seen lastly, in him
who was dead, and afterwards revived; who was lost
and is found. The greatest joy is everywhere ushered
in by the greatest painfulness. What means this, O
Lord my God, whereas thou art an everlasting joy
unto thee, even thine own self, and some things
around thee are ever rejoicing in thee? What means
this, that this division of things thus alters up and
down, with going backwards and forwards, with fall-
ings out, and making friends again? Is this the
fashion of them, and is this that proportion thou then
assignedst to them; whenas even from the highest
heavens down to the lowest of the earth, from the
beginning of the world to the last end of it; from the
angel to the worm; from the first thing that moveth
even unto the last; thou didst settle all kinds of
good things, and all thine own just works in their
proper places, and accomplishedst all in their due
seasons? Alas for me! how high art thou in the
highest things, and how profound in the lowest!
And thou dost nowhere depart from us, and we hardly
return unto thee.

The angels.
Compare
xii. 11,
xiii. 10

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VIII

IV

CAP. AG^E, domine, fac excita et revoca nos, accende et
IV rape, fragra, dulcesce: amemus, curramus. nonne
multi, ex profundiore tartaro caecitatis quam Victorinus,
redeunt ad te et accedunt, et inluminantur re-
cipientes lumen, quod si qui recipiunt, accipiunt a te
potestatem, ut filii tui fiant? sed si minus noti sunt
populis, minus de illis gaudent etiam qui neverunt
eos. quando enim cum multis gaudetur, et in singulis
uberius est gaudium; quia ferrefaciunt se et inflam-
mantur ex alterutro. deinde, quod multis noti,
multis sunt auctoritati ad salutem, et multis praeeunt
secuturis: ideoque multum de illis et qui eos pree-
cesserunt laetantur, quia non de solis laetantur.
absit enim, ut in tabernaculo tuo pree pauperibus
accipientur personae divitum, aut pree ignobilibus
nobiles; quando potius infirma mundi elegisti, ut
confunderes fortia, et ignobilia huius mundi elegisti
et contemptibilia, et ea quae non sunt, tamquam sint,
ut ea quae sunt evacuares. et tamen idem ipse
minimus apostolorum tuorum, per cuius linguam tua
ista verba sonuisti, cum Paulus pro consule, per eius
militiam debellata superbia, sub lene iugum Christi
tui missus esset, regis magni provincialis effectus, ipse

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

IV

Why we are more to rejoice in the Conversion of a great Sinner

Go on, O Lord, and make an end of it, stir us up, and call us back ; kindle us and pluck us to thee, be fragrant, and grow sweet unto us : let us love, let us run. Do not many a man out of a deeper dungeon of blindness than Victorinus was in, return unto thee, and are enlightened with the beams they receive from thee ; which they that once receive, receive power also from thee to become thy sons ? who yet if they be less known among people, even those that do know them are less joyful for them : seeing that when a many rejoice together, the joy of every single man is fuller ; even for that they warm themselves, and are inflamed by one another. Again, because those that are generally known, are authors of salvation to many, and give many example to follow them : and even therefore those also which have gone before rejoice much for them, because they rejoice not for them alone. Far be it from our thoughts, that in thy Tabernacle the persons of the rich should be accepted of before the poor, or the noble before the common people : seeing thou hast chosen the weak things of the world, to confound the mighty ; and base things of the world, and things that are despised hast thou chosen ; and things which are not, to bring to nought things that are. And yet even that least of thy Apostles, by whose tongue thou soundedst out these words, wheras Paulus the Deputy had his pride beaten down by the spiritual warfare of that Apostle, and was set to draw in the easy yoke of Christ, now made a

CHAP. IV
John i. 12
1 Cor. i. 27

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. quoque ex priore Saulo Paulus vocari amavit ob tam
^{IV} magna insigne victoriae. plus enim hostis vincitur
in eo, quem plus tenet et de quo plures tenet. plus
autem superbos tenet nomine nobilitatis, et de his
plures nomine auctoritatis. quanto igitur gratius
cogitabatur Victorini pectus, quod tam inexpugnabile
receptaculum diabolus obtinuerat, Victorini lingua,
quo telo grandi et acuto multos peremerat, abun-
dantius exultare oportuit filios tuos, quia rex noster
alligavit fortem, et videbant vasa eius èrepta mundari,
et aptari in honorem tuum, et fieri utilia domino ad
omne opus bonum.

V

CAP. SED ubi mihi homo tuus Simplicianus de Victorino
^V ista narravit, exarsi ad imitandum: ad hoc enim et
ille narraverat. posteaquam vero et illud addidit,
quod imperatoris Iuliani temporibus, lege data pro-
hibiti sunt Christiani docere litteraturam et oratorium
—quam legem ille amplexus, loquacem scholam de-
serere maluit quam verbum tuum, quo linguas in-
fantium facis disertas—non mihi fortior quam felicior

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

humble subject of the Great King : he also instead CHAP.
of Saul, which was his name before, desired to be IV
called Paul afterwards, in testimony of so great a
victory. For the enemy is more overcome by wring-
ing a man from him, of whom he had more hold,
and by whom he hath hold of many others. And
such as be proud he hath the surer hold of, by reason
of their title of nobility, and of many more through
them, by reason of their authority. How much more
welcome therefore the heart of Victorinus was es-
teemed, which the Devil had made himself master of,
as of an invincible place of retreat ; and the tongue
of Victorinus, with which as with a mighty and most
keen weapon he had slain many : so much the more
abundantly became it thy sons to rejoice, for that
our King hath bound the strong man, and that they Matt. xii. 29
saw his vessels taken from him and cleansed, and to 2 Tim. ii. 21
be made serviceable for the Lord, unto every good
work.

V

What hindered his Conversion

BUT so soon as thy man Simplicianus had made an CHAP.
end of his story of Victorinus, I was all on fire to V
be imitating of him : yea, this was the end he told
it for. After which when he had subjoined this
relation of himself : how that in the days of the
Emperor Julian, when there was a law made, whereby
the Christians were forbidden to teach the liberal
sciences or oratory, and how he obeying this law,
chose rather to give over his wordy schools than thy
word, by which thou makest eloquent the tongues of

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. visus est, quia invenit occasionem vacandi tibi. cui
^V rei ego suspirabam, ligatus non ferro alieno, sed mea
ferrea voluntate. velle meum tenebat inimicus; et
inde mihi catenam fecerat et constrinxerat me.
quippe voluntate perversa facta est libido, et dum
servitur libidini, facta est consuetudo, et dum con-
suetudini non resistitur, facta est necessitas. quibus
quasi ansulis sibimet innexis—unde catenam appell-
lavi—tenebat me obstrictum dura servitus. voluntas
autem nova, quae mihi esse cooperat, ut te gratis
colere fruique te vellem, deus, sola certa iucunditas,
nondum erat idonea ad superandam priorem vetustate
roboratam. ita duae voluntates meae, una vetus,
alia nova, illa carnalis, illa spiritalis, configabant
inter se, atque discordando dissipabant animam
meam.

Sic intellegebam me ipso experimento id quod
legeram, quomodo caro concupisceret adversus spi-
ritum et spiritus adversus carnem: ego quidem in
utroque, sed magis ego in eo, quod in me appro-
babam, quam in eo, quod in me improbabam. ibi
enim magis iam non ego, quia ex magna parte id
patiebar invitus quam faciebam volens. sed tamen
consuetudo adversus me pugnacior ex me facta erat,
quoniam volens quo nollem perveneram. et quis
iure contradiceret, cum peccantem iusta poena se-
queretur? et non erat iam illa excusatio, qua videri

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

infants : he seemed unto me not to have been more CHAP.
valiant, than happy in it ; for that by this means he V
found the opportunity to attend upon thee only.

Which opportunity myself also sighed for, thus bound as I was, not with another man's irons, but with mine own iron will. My willingness was the enemy master of ; by which he made a chain for me, and had therewith bound me. Because that of a froward will, was a lust made ; and a lust ever obeyed, became a custom ; and a custom not resisted, brought on a necessity. By which links as it were hanging one upon another, for which I have called it a chain, did a very hard bondage hold me enthralled. As for that new will which I now began to have towards the free worshipping and enjoying of thee, O God, the only assured Sweetness ; it was not able as yet to overcome my former wilfulness, now hardened in me by so long continuance. Thus did my two wills, one new and tother old, that carnal, and this spiritual, try masteries within me, and by their disagreeing wasted out my soul.

Thus came I to understand (myself affording me the experiment) what I had sometimes read : how the flesh lusteth against the spirit, and the spirit Gal. v. 17 against the flesh. I myself was in both ; yet of the two, in that rather which I approved of in myself, than in that which I disallowed. For in this, I was now no more ; because much of it I suffered rather against my will, than did it with my will. And yet was custom now by mine own assistance become more sturdy against me, even because I was come willingly, whither I would not have come. And who then can with any equity speak against it, if just punishment follows upon the sinner ? Nor had I now that fair excuse, upon pretence of which I heretofore seemed

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. mihi solebam propterea me nondum contempto sae-
^V culo servire tibi, quia incerta mihi esset perceptio veri-
tatis : iam enim et ipsa certa erat. ego autem adhuc
terra obligatus, militare tibi recusabam; et impedimen-
tis omnibus sic timebam expediri, quemadmodum
inpediri timendum est.

Ita sarcina saeculi, velut somno assolet, dulciter
premebar; et cogitationes, quibus meditabar in te,
similes erant conatibus expurgisci volentium, qui
tamen superati soporis altitudine remerguntur. et
sicut nemo est, qui dormire semper velit, omniumque
sano iudicio vigilare praestat, differt tamen plerumque
homo somnum excutere, cum gravis torpor in mem-
bris est, eumque iam displicentem carpit libentius,
quamvis surgendi tempus advenerit: ita certum
habebam, esse melius, tuae caritati me dedere, quam
meae cupiditati cedere; sed illud placebat et vince-
bat, hoc libebat et vinciebat. non enim erat quod
tibi responderem dicenti mihi: Surge qui dormis, et
exsurge a mortuis, et inluminabit te Christus; et
undique ostendenti vera te dicere, non erat omnino,
quid responderem veritate convictus, nisi tantum
verba lenta et somnolenta: "modo," "ecce modo,"
"sine paululum." sed "modo et modo" non habebat
modum et "sine paululum" in longum ibat. frustra

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

to myself, not as yet able to forsake the world and CHAP.
to attend to thy service, for that the knowledge of ^V
the truth was hitherto uncertain unto me: seeing
now I stood assured of it. But I being enlisted by
the earth, refused to fight under thy banner. Yea,
as much afraid I was to be freed of what did hinder
my march towards thee, as I ought to have been
afraid of what might hinder it.

Thus with the baggage of this present world was I as sweetly overladen, as a man uses to be in a dream: and those thoughts with which I meditated upon thee, were like the struggles of such as would get up; who being yet overcome with a deep sleep, fall again into it. And like as there is no man who desires to sleep always, (for that in any sober man's judgment it is much better to keep waking;) yet does a man oftentimes defer to shake off his drowsiness, when he finds a heavy sluggishness all his body over, and angry at himself for it, yet he willingly takes another nap, notwithstanding it be high time for him to be stirring: in like manner assured I was, that much better it were for me to give up myself to thy charity, than to give over myself to mine own sensuality. But notwithstanding that former course pleased, and convinced my mind, yet this latter seized my will and held me confined. Nor had I anything now to answer thee calling to me: Arise, thou that sleepest, and stand up from Eph. v. 14 the dead, and Christ shall give thee light: and whereas thou on all sides showedst me, that what thou saidst was true; I had nothing at all to answer for myself, being convinced by that truth; but certain lither and drowsy words only: Anon, see, I come by and by: let me sleep a little while. But my now and anon had no measure with them, and my little

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. condelectabatur legi tuae secundum interiorem hominem,
cum alia lex in membris meis repugnaret legi
mentis meae, et captivum me duceret in lege peccati,
quae in membris meis erat. lex enim peccati est
violentia consuetudinis, qua trahitur et tenetur etiam
invitus animus, eo merito, quo in eam volens inlabi-
tur. miserum ergo me quis liberaret de corpore
mortis huius, nisi gratia tua per Iesum Christum,
dominum nostrum ?

VI

CAP. ET de vinculo quidem desiderii concubitus, quo artis-
simo tenebar, et saecularium negotiorum servitute
quemadmodum exemeris, narrabo et confitebor nomini
tuo, domine, adiutor meus et redemptor meus. age-
bam solita crescente anxitudine, et cotidie suspirabam
tibi ; frequentabam ecclesiam tuam, quantum vacabat
ab eis negotiis, sub quorum pondere gemebam.
mecum erat Alypius, otiosus ab opere iuris peritorum
post assessmentem tertiam, expectans, quibus iterum
consilia venderet; sicut ego vendebam dicendi facul-
tatem, si qua docendo praestari potest. Nebridius
autem amicitiae nostrae cesserat, ut omnium nostrum
familiarissimo Verecundo, Mediolanensi et civi et
grammatico, subdoceret, vehementer desideranti et

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

while drove out into a mighty length. I in vain CHAP.
delighted in thy law according to the inner man, ^V
when another law in my members rebelled against Rom. vii. 22
the law of my mind, leading me captive in the law
of sin which was in my members. That law of sin Rom. vii. 23
now is the violence of custom, by which the mind
of man is drawn and holden even against its will ;
deserving to be so holden, for that it so willingly
slides into that custom. Wretched I therefore, who
could deliver me from the body of this death ; but
thy grace only, through Jesus Christ our Lord ?

VI

Ponticianus relates the Life of St. Anthony

AND the manner how thou deliveredst me out of the CHAP.
bonds of desire, which I had unto carnal concupi-
scence, (wherewith I was most straitly fettered) and
from the drudgery of worldly business ; will I now
declare and confess unto thy name, O Lord my
Helper and my Redeemer. My wonted unsettled-
ness of mind grew more and more upon me ; and I
daily sent up sighs unto thee. Thy church I re-
sorted frequently unto, as my business (under the
burden of which I groaned) would give me leave.
Alypius was now in company with me ; at leisure
now from his law business, after the third time as
Assessor, expecting other clients whom he might sell
his counsels unto ; as I used to sell the skill of plead-
ing ; if any such can be taught. Nebridius had now
so far condescended to our friendly requests, as to
lecture under Verecundus (a very familiar friend to
all of us) a citizen and a grammarian of Milan ; who

VI

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. familiaritatis iure flagitanti de numero nostro fidele
^{VI} adiutorium, quo indigebat nimis. non itaque Nebridium cupiditas conmodorum eo traxit—maiora enim posset, si vellet, de litteris agere—sed officio benevolentiae petitionem nostram contempnere noluit, amicus dulcissimus et mitissimus. agebat autem illud prudentissime, cavens innotescere personis secundum hoc saeculum maioribus, devitans in eis omnem quietudinem animi, quem volebat habere liberum, et quam multis posset horis feriatum, ad quaerendum aliquid vel legendum vel audiendum de sapientia.

Quodam igitur die—non recolo causam, qua erat absens Nebridius—cum ecce ad nos domum venit ad me et Alypium Ponticianus quidam, civis noster, in quantum Afer, praeclare in palatio militans: nescio quid a nobis volebat, et consedimus, ut conloquemur. et forte supra mensam lusoriam, quae ante nos erat, adtendit codicem: tulit, aperuit, invenit apostolum Paulum, inopinate sane; putaverat enim aliquid de libris, quorum professio me conterebat. tum vero arridens, meque intuens, gratulatorie miratus est, quod eas et solas p[re]ae oculis meis litteras repente conperisset. Christianus quippe et fidelis erat, et saepe tibi, deo nostro, prosternebatur in ecclesia crebris et diuturnis orationibus. cui ego cum indicassem illis

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

vehemently requested, and by the right of friend- CHAP.
ship did even challenge such a friendly aid from VI
our company, as he very much stood in need of.
Nebridius therefore was not drawn to that pains by
any desire of profit (for he might have done better
with literature if he had pleased) but being a most
sweet and tractable companion, out of his respects of
courtesy, would not slight the request we made to
him. But he carried it very discreetly, still wary of
being known to those personages whom the world
esteemed great ; declining thereby all breaking off
the quiet of his own mind, which he resolved to
reserve free to himself, and at leisure as many hours
as might be, for the seeking, or reading, or hearing
something concerning wisdom.

Upon a certain day therefore (I do not now re-
member why Nebridius was absent) behold, there
came home unto me and Alypius, one Ponticianus
a countryman of ours, an African, who had an office
of good in the Emperor's Court. He wanted some-
thing or other from us : and down together we sat,
so that into discourse we fell. It so happened that
upon the table before us, which we used to play
upon, he espied a book lying ; up he took, and
opened it ; and quite besides his expectation, found
it to be St. Paul's Epistles, whereas he rather thought
it had been some of those books which I ware out
myself in teaching of. At which he smiling to him-
self, and looking upon me, in a congratulating manner
as it were, wondered not a little, that he had so un-
expectedly found such a kind of book, and only such
a one lying before me. For he was both a Christian
and faithful too ; and one that often used to pro-
strate himself before thee our God in the Church, in
frequent and long prayers. Whom therefore when

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. me scripturis curam maximam impendere, ortus est
VI sermo ipso narrante de Antonio Aegyptio monacho,
cuius nomen excellenter clarebat apud servos tuos,
nos autem usque in illam horam latebat. quod ille
ubi comperit, immoratus est in eo sermone, insinuans
tantum virum ignorantibus, et admirans eandem nos-
tram ignorantiam. stupebamus autem, audientes tam
recenti memoria et prope nostris temporibus testatis-
sima mirabilia tua, in fide recta et Catholica ecclesia.
omnes mirabamur, et nos, quia tam magna erant, et
ille, quia inaudita nobis erant.

Inde sermo eius devolutus est ad monasteriorum
greges, et mores suaveolentiae tuae, et ubera deserta
heremi, quorum nos nihil sciebamus. et erat monas-
terium Mediolanii, plenum bonis fratribus, extra urbis
moenia, sub Ambrosio nutritore, et non neveramus.
pertendebat ille et loquebatur adhuc, et nos intenti
tacebamus. unde incidit, ut diceret, nescio quando
se et tres alias contubernales suos, nimirum apud
Treveros, cum imperator pomeridiano circensium
spectaculo teneretur, exisse deambulatum in hortos
muris contiguos ; atque illic, ut forte combinati spatia-
bantur, unum secum seorsum et alias duos itidem
seorsum pariterque digressos ; sed illos vagabundos

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

I had once told, how that I bestowed much pains CHAP.
upon those writings; there began a speech, (himself VI
being the relater) of Anthony the monk of Egypt:
whose name was in most high reputation among thy
servants, though for our part we had not so much
as once heard of him to that hour. Which when
he had discovered, he insisted the more upon that
discourse, hinting the knowledge of so famous a
man unto us, and admiring at that our ignorance of
him. But we stood amazed, on the other side, hear-
ing such wonderful works of thine; so generally
testified, so fresh in memory, and almost in our
own times, to be done in the true faith and Church
Catholic. We all wondered; we to hear such great
things reported; and he, that we had never heard
them.

From this story of Anthony, took he occasion to
discourse of the companies of monasteries, and the
fashions of thine own sweet-smelling savour and the
fruitful desert of the wilderness: of all which we
knew nothing. And there was at that same time a
monastery at Milan, full of good brethren, without
the walls of the city, under Ambrose the nourisher
of it, and yet we knew nothing of it. He went on
with his tale, and we listened to him with great
silence. Hereupon took he occasion to tell, how
himself (I know not at what time) and three other
of his comrades (and it was at Trier, whenas the
Emperor was taken up with seeing of the Circensian
chariot races) one afternoon went out to walk into
the gardens next the city walls; where as it fell out,
they sorted themselves into two companies, one of
the three keeping with him, and the other two
walking at large also by themselves. But as these
two were ranging up and down, they stumbled by

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. inruisse in quandam casam, ubi habitabant quidam
VI

servi tui spiritu pauperes, qualium est regnum caelorum, et invenisse ibi codicem, in quo scripta erat vita Antonii. quam legere coepit unus eorum, et mirari et accendi, et inter legendum meditari arripere talem vitam et relictam militia saeculari servire tibi: erant autem ex eis, quos dicunt Agentes in Rebus. tum subito repletus amore sancto, et sobrio pudore iratus sibi, coniecit oculos in amicum et ait illi: “dic, quaeso te, omnibus istis laboribus nostris quo ambi- mus pervenire? quid quaerimus? cuius rei causa militamus? maiorne esse poterit spes nostra in palatio, quam ut amici imperatoris simus? et ibi quid non fragile plenumque periculis? et per quot pericula pervenitur ad grandius periculum? et quando istuc erit? amicus autem dei, si voluero, ecce nunc fio.” dixit hoc, et turbidus parturitione novae vitae reddidit oculos paginis: et legebat et mutabatur intus, ubi tu videbas, et exuebatur mundo mens eius, ut mox apparuit. namque dum legit et volvit fluctus cordis sui, infremuit aliquando et discrevit decrevitque meliora: iamque tuus ait amico suo: “ego iam abrupi me ab illa spe nostra, et

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

chance upon a certain little house, inhabited by CHAP.
divers of thy servants, poor in spirit, of whom is the ^{VI} Kingdom of God : where they found a little book, ^{Matt. v. 3} wherein the life of Anthony was described. One of them began to read, wonder at it, and to be inflamed with it ; and even in the very reading to devise with himself upon the taking such a life upon him, and by giving over his secular employments, to betake himself into thy service. And these men were of those whom they style Agents for the Public Affairs. Then suddenly being filled with an holy love, and a sober shamefastness, even angry at himself again, he cast his eyes upon his friend, saying : Tell me, I entreat thee, what preferment is that unto which all these labours of ours aspire ? What aim we at ? What is it we serve the State for ? Can our hopes in Court rise higher than to be the Emperor's friends ? In which place what is there not brittle and full of perils ? And by how many dangers arrive we at last unto one danger greater than all the rest ? And how long shall we be in getting thus high ? Whereas if I be desirous to become the friend of God, lo, I am even now made it. Thus he said : and all in pain in the travail of newness of life, he turned his eyes again upon the book : and he read on, and was inwardly changed where thou didst discern him, and his mind was quite dispossessed of worldly cares, as presently after it appeared. For as he read forward, and rolled up and down those waves of his heart, he made expression of some indignation at himself, felt an inward conflict, and resolved finally of much better courses. And thus now become wholly thine, he saith unto his friend : Even now have I broke loose from those ambitious hopes of ours, and am fully resolved to

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. deo servire statui ; et hoc ex hac hora, in hoc loco
^{VI} aggredior. te si piget imitari, noli adversari." respondit ille, adhaerere se socium tantae mercedis tantaeque militiae. et ambo, iam tui, aedificabant turrem sumptu idoneo, relinquendi omnia sua et sequendi te. tum Pontianus et qui cum eo per alias horti partes deambulabant, quaerentes eos devenerunt in eundem locum, et invenientes admonuerunt, ut redirent, quod iam declinasset dies. at illi narrato placito et proposito suo, quoque modo in eis talis voluntas orta est atque firmata, petiverunt, ne sibi molesti essent, si adiungi recusarent. isti autem nihil mutati a pristinis, fleverunt se tamen, ut dicebat, atque illis pie congratulati sunt et commendaverunt se orationibus eorum, et trahentes cor in terra abierunt in palatium ; illi autem affigentes cor caelo manserunt in casa ; et habebant ambo sponsas : quae posteaquam hoc audierunt, dicaverunt etiam ipsae virginitatem tibi.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

serve God only ; and this, from this hour forward, in CHAP.
this very place, will I enter upon : as for thee, if it ^{VI} irks thee to imitate me, yet do not offer to dissuade
me. Whereunto the other answered, that he also
would closely stick unto him, as his partner in so
ample a reward, and his fellow in so honourable a
service. Thus both of them now become thine,
reared up a spiritual tower, with that treasure as is
only able to do it, of forsaking all and following thee.
Pontianus then, and the other that was with him,
that had walked over other parts of the garden in
search of them, came in the very nick into the same
place, where they were ; and having there found them,
put them in mind of going homewards, for that it
began to grow something late. But they discovering
their resolution and purpose unto them, and by what
means that will began, and came to be settled in
them ; humbly desired they would not be trouble-
some to them, if so be they refused to join them-
selves unto them. But Pontianus and his friend
no whit altered from their old wont, did yet bewail
themselves with tears, as he affirmed, piously con-
gratulating with them, and recommended themselves
to their prayers ; and turning their hearts towards
earthly things, returned into the Court. But the
other two setting their affections upon heavenly,
remained in that cottage. And both of them were
contracted to sweethearts ; who having once heard
of this business, dedicated also their own virginity
unto God.

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

VII

CAP. NARRABAT haec Pontianus. tu autem, domine,
^{VII} inter verba eius retorquebas me ad me ipsum,
auferens me a dorso meo, ubi me posueram, dum
nollem me attendere; et constituebas me ante faciem
meam, ut viderem, quam turpis essem, quam dis-
tortus et sordidus, maculosus et ulcerosus. et vide-
bam et horrebam, et quo a me fugerem non erat. et
si conabar a me avertire aspectum, narrabat ille
quod narrabat; et tu me rursus opponebas mihi, et
inpingebas me in oculos meos, ut invenirem iniui-
tatem et odissem. neveram eam, sed dissimulabam
et cohiebam et obliuiscebar.

Tunc vero quanto ardentius amabam illos, de
quibus audiebam salubres affectus, quod se totos tibi
sanandos dederant, tanto exsecrabilius me compara-
tum eis oderam: quoniam multi mei anni mecum
effluxerant—forte duodecim anni—ex quo, ab unde-
vicensimo anno aetatis meae, lecto Ciceronis Hor-
tensio, excitatus eram studio sapientiae, et differebam
contempta felicitate terrena ad eam investigandam
vacare, cuius non inventio, sed vel sola inquisitio, iam
praeponenda erat etiam inventis thesauris regnis-
que gentium, et ad nutum circumfluentibus corporis

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

VII

He was out of Love with himself upon this Story

THIS was Pontianus his story. But thou, O Lord, CHAP.
all the while that he was speaking, didst turn me VII
back to reflect upon myself; taking me from behind my back, where I had heretofore placed myself, whenas I had no list to observe mine own self: and thou now settedst me before mine own face, that I might discern how filthy, and how crooked, and sordid, and bespotted, and ulcerous I was. And I beheld and abhorred myself, nor could I find any place whither to flee from myself. And if I went about to turn mine eyes from off myself, he went on telling his tale; and thou thereupon opposedst myself unto myself, and thrustedst me ever and anon into mine own eyes, to make me find at last mine own iniquity, and to loathe it. I had heretofore taken notice of it; but I had again dissembled it, winked at it, and forgotten it.

But at this time, how much the more ardently I loved those two whose wholesome purposes I heard tell of, even for that they had resigned up themselves unto thee to be cured: so much the more detestably did I hate myself in comparison of them. Because I had already lost so many years, (twelve or thereabouts) since that nineteenth of mine age, when upon the reading of Cicero's Hortensius, I was first stirred up to the study of wisdom: and still I was deferring to despise all earthly felicity, and to search out that, whose not finding alone, but the bare seeking, ought to have been preferred before all the treasures and kingdoms of this world already found, and before

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. voluptatibus. at ego adulescens miser valde, miseror
VII in exordio ipsius adulescentiae, etiam petieram a te
castitatem et dixeram : “da mihi castitatem et con-
tinentiam, sed noli modo.” timebam enim, ne me
cito exaudires et cito sanares a morbo concipi-
scentiae, quem malebam expleri quam extingui.
et ieram per vias pravas superstitione sacrilega ; non
quidem certus in ea, sed quasi praeponens eam
ceteris, quae non pie quaerebam, sed inimice oppug-
nabam.

Et putaveram me propterea differre de die in diem
contempta spe saeculi te solum sequi, quia non mihi
apparebat certum aliquid, quo dirigerem cursum
meum. et venerat dies, quo nudarer mihi et incre-
paret in me conscientia mea : “ubi est lingua mea ?
nempe tu dicebas, propter incertum verum nolle te
abdicere sarcinam vanitatis. ecce iam certum est, et
illa te adhuc premit ; umerisque liberioribus pinnas
recipiunt, qui neque ita in quaerendo adtriti sunt nec
decennio et amplius ista meditati.” ita rodebar intus
et confundebar pudore horribili vehementer, cum
Ponticianus talia loqueretur. terminato autem ser-
mone et causa, qua venerat, abiit ille, et ego ad me
quae non in me dixi ? quibus sententiarum verberibus

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

all the pleasures of the body, though to be com- CHAP.
manded for a nod. But I, wretched young fellow VII
that I was, more wretched even in the very entrance
into my youth, had even then begged chastity at thy
hands, and said : Give me chastity and continency,
but do not give it yet. For I was afraid that thou
wouldst hear me too soon, and too soon deliver me
from my disease of incontinency ; which my desire
was, rather to have satisfied than extinguished.
Yea, I had wandered with a sacrilegious superstition
through most wicked ways of Manicheism : not yet
sure that it was right, but preferring that, as it were,
before those others which I did not so much seek after
religiously, as oppose maliciously.

And this was the reason, as I think, why I deferred
from day to day to contemn all hopes in this world,
and to follow thee only, for that there did not appear
any certain end, which I was to direct my course
unto. But now was the day come wherein I was to
be set naked before myself, and when mine own
conscience was to rebuke me : Where is thy tongue ?
Surely thou wert wont to say, how that for an un-
certain truth thou wouldst not yet cast off the baggage
of vanity. See, certainty hath appeared now, and
yet does that burden still overload thee : whereas
behold, others have gotten wings to free their
shoulders by flying from under it ; others, I say, who
neither have so much worn out themselves with
seeking after that certainty, nor yet spent ten whole
years and more, in thinking how to do it. Thus felt
I a corrosive within, yea most vehemently confounded
I was with a horrible shame, whenas Ponticianus was
a telling that story. And he having done both his
tale and the business he came for, went his way,
and I into myself. What said I not within myself !

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VIII

CAP. non flagellavi animam meam, ut sequeretur me
^{VII} conantem post te ire? et renitebatur, recusabat et
non se execusabat. consumpta erant et convicta
argumenta omnia: remanserat muta trepidatio, et
quasi mortem formidabat restringi a fluxu consuetu-
dinis, quo tabescebat in mortem.

VIII

CAP. Tum in illa grandi rixa interioris domus meae, quam
^{VIII} fortiter excitaveram cum anima mea in cubiculo
nostro, corde meo, tam vultu quam mente turbatus
invado Alypium, exclamo: "quid patimur? quid est
hoc, quod audisti? surgunt indocti et caelum ra-
piunt, et nos cum doctrinis nostris ecce ubi voluta-
mur in carne et sanguine! an quia praecesserunt,
pudet sequi, et non pudet nec saltem sequi?" dixi
nescio qua talia, et abripuit me ab illo aestus meus,
cum taceret attonitus me intuens. neque enim solita
sonabam. plus loquebantur animum meum frons,
genae, oculi, color, modus vocis, quam verba, quae

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

With what scourges of condemning sentences lashed CHAP.
I not mine own soul, to make it follow me, endeavouring VII
now to go after thee! And it drew back: it refused, but gave no reason to excuse its refusal by. All its arguments were already spent and confuted, there remained a silent trembling; and it feared, like the death, to be restrained from the sore of custom, which made it pine away even to the very death.

VIII

What he did in the Garden

IN the midst then of all this vast tempest of my inner CHAP.
house, which I had so stoutly raised up against mine VIII
own soul, in our chamber, my heart; all over troubled both in mind and countenance, upon Alypius I set, crying out: What ails us? What is this, that thou heardest? The unlearned start up and take heaven by violence, and we with all our learning, see how we wallow us in flesh and blood! Because others are gone before, is it a shame for us to come after? Is it not a shame not even to go after them? Some such words as these I then uttered: and in that heat away I flung from him, while with silence and astonishment he looked upon me. For my speeches sounded not now in the key they were wont to do: yea, my forehead, my cheeks, my eyes, my colour, and the accent of my voice, spake out my mind more emphatically than the words did which I

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. promebam. hortulus quidam erat hospitii nostri, quo
VIII nos utebamur sicut tota domo: nam hospes ibi non
habitabat, dominus domus. illuc me abstulerat
tumultus pectoris, ubi nemo impediret ardentem
litem, quam mecum aggressus eram, donec exiret,
qua tu sciebas, ego autem non: sed tantum insanie-
bam salubriter et moriebar vitaliter, gnarus, quid
mali essem, et ignarus, quid boni post paululum
futurus essem. abscessi ergo in hortum et Alypius
pedem post pedem. neque enim secretum meum non
erat, ubi ille aderat. et quando me sic affectum
desereret? sedimus quantum potuimus remoti ab
aedibus. ego fremebam spiritu, indignans indigna-
tione turbulentissima, quod non irem in placitum et
pactum tecum, deus meus, in quod eundum esse
omnia ossa mea clamabant et in caelum tollebant
laudibus: et non illuc ibatur navibus aut quadrigis
aut pedibus, quantum saltem de domo in eum locum
ieram, ubi sedebamus. nam non solum ire, verum
etiam pervenire illuc, nihil erat aliud quam velle ire,
sed velle fortiter et integre, non semisauciām hac
atque hac versare et iactare voluntatem, parte adsur-
gente cum alia parte cadente luctantem.

Denique tam multa faciebam corpore in ipsis cunc-
tationis aestibus, quae aliquando volunt homines et
non valent, si aut ipsa membra non habeant aut ea
vel configata vinculis vel resoluta languore vel quo-

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

uttered. A garden there was belonging to our CHAP. lodging, which we had the liberty of, as well as of ^{VIII} any other part of the house ; for the master of the house, our host, lived not there. Thither had the tempest within my breast now hurried me, where no man might come to non-suit that fiery action which I had entered against myself, until it came to a good issue ; but which way, God thou knewst, I did not. Only I was for the time most soberly mad, and dying, to live : sensible enough what piece of misery for the present I now was, but utterly ignorant how good I shortly was to grow. Into that garden went I, and Alypius followed me foot by foot : for I was no less secret when he was near ; and how could he forsake me, in such a state ? Down we sat us, as far from the house as possibly we could. I fretted in the spirit, angry at myself with a most tempestuous indignation, for that I went not into thy will and covenant, my God, which all my bones cried out upon me to do, extolling it to the very skies. That way we go not in ships, or chariots, or upon our own legs, no not so small a part of the way to it, as I had come from the house into that place, where we were now sitting. For, not to go towards only, but to arrive fully at that place, required no more but the will to go to it, but yet to will it resolutely and thoroughly ; not to stagger and tumble down an half wounded will, now on this side, and anon on that side ; setting the part advancing itself to struggle with another part that is falling.

Finally, in these vehement passions of my delay, many of those things performed I with my body, which men sometimes would do, but cannot ; if either they have not the limbs to do them withal ; or if those limbs be bound with cords, weakened

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VÍII

CAP. quo modo impedita sint. si vulsi capillum, si percussi
^{VIII} frontem, si consertis digitis amplexatus sum genu,
quia volui, feci. potui autem velle et non facere, si
mobilitas membrorum non obsequeretur. tam multa
ergo feci, ubi non hoc erat velle quod posse: et non
faciebam, quod et incomparabili affectu amplius mihi
placebat, et mox, ut vellem, possem, quia mox, ut
vellem, utique vellem. ibi enim facultas ea, quae
voluntas, et ipsum velle iam facere erat; et tamen
non fiebat, faciliusque obtemperabat corpus tenuissi-
mae voluntati animae, ut ad nutum membra move-
rentur, quam ipsa sibi anima ad voluntatem suam
magnam in sola voluntate perficiendam.

IX

CAP. VNDE hoc monstrum? et quare istuc? luceat
^{IX} misericordia tua, et interrogem, si forte mihi re-
spondere possint latebrae poenarum hominum et
tenebrosissimae contritiones filiorum Adam. unde
hoc monstrum? et quare istuc? imperat animus
corpori, et paretur statim: imperat animus sibi, et
resistitur. imperat animus, ut moveatur manus, et
446

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

with infirmity, or be any other ways hindered. If I CHAP.
tare myself by the hair, beat my forehead, if locking VIII
my fingers one within another I clasped my knee ;
all this I did because I would. But I might have
willed it, and yet not have done it, if so be the
motion of my limbs had not been pliable enough to
have performed it. So many things therefore I now
did, at such time as the will was not all at one with
the power ; and something on the other side I then
did not, which did incomparably more affect me with
pleasure, which yet so soon as I had the will to do, I
had the power also ; because so soon as ever I willed,
I willed it thoroughly : for at such a time the power
is all one with the will ; and the willing is now the
doing : and yet was not the thing done, and more
easily did my body obey the weakest willing of my
mind in the moving of its limbs at her beck, than my
mind had obeyed itself in carrying out this great will
that could be done in the will alone.

IX

Why the Mind is so slow to Goodness

WHENCE now is this portent, and to what purpose ? CHAP.
Let thy mercy enlighten me that I may put this IX
question : if so be those concealed anguishes which
men feel, and those most undiscoverable pangs of
contrition of the sons of Adam, may perhaps afford
me a right answer. Whence is this portent, and to
what end ? The mind commands the body, and is
presently obeyed : the mind commands itself, and is
resisted. The mind gives the word commanding the

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIONVM LIBER VIII

CAP. tanta est facilitas, ut vix a servitio discernatur
^{IX} impérium : et animus animus est, manus autem
corpus est. imperat animus, ut velit animus, nec
alter est nec facit tamen. unde hoc monstrum ? et
quare istuc ? imperat, inquam, ut velit, qui non
imperaret, nisi vellet, et non facit quod imperat. sed
non ex toto vult : non ergo ex toto imperat. nam in
tantum imperat, in quantum vult, et in tantum non
fit quod imperat, in quantum non vult, quoniam
voluntas imperat, ut sit voluntas, nec alia, sed ipsa.
non itaque plena imperat; ideo non est, quod
imperat. nam si plena esset, nec imperaret, ut esset,
quia iam esset. non igitur monstrum partim velle,
partim nolle, sed aegritudo animi est, quia non totus
assurgit veritate sublevatus, consuetudine praegrava-
tus. et ideo sunt duae voluntates, quia una earum
tota non est, et hoc adest alteri, quod deest alteri.

X

CAP. PEREANT a facie tua, deus, sicuti pereunt, vaniloqui
^X et mentis seductores, qui cum duas voluntates in
deliberando animadverterint, duas naturas duarum
448

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

hand to be moved ; and such readiness there is, that CHAP.
the command is scarcely to be discerned from the IX
execution. Yet the mind is mind, whereas the hand
is body. The mind commands mind to will ; it is the
same, and yet it does not. Whence is this portent,
and to what purpose ? I say it commands that itself
would will a thing ; which never would give the
command, unless it willed it : yet it does not that,
which is commanded. But it willeth not entirely :
therefore doth it neither command entirely. For so
far forth it commandeth, as it willeth : and, so far
forth is not the thing done which is commanded, as
it willeth it not, because the will commandeth that
there be a will ; not another will but the same. But
it doth not command fully, therefore is not the thing
done, which it commanded. For were the willing
full, it would never command it to be, because it
would already be. 'Tis therefore no portent partly
to will, and partly to nill ; only an infirmity of our
soul it is, that it being overloaded with ill custom,
cannot entirely rise up together, though supported
by verity. Hence is it that there be two wills, for
that one of them is not entire : and the one is supplied
with that, wherein the other lacks.

X

The Will of Man is various

LET them perish out of thy sight, O God, (and they CHAP.
do perish, those vain babblers, and seducers of the X
soul) who because they have observed that there
are two wills in the act of deliberating, affirm

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. mentium esse asseverant, unam bonam, alteram
^X malam. ipsi vere mali sunt, cum ista mala sentiunt,
et idem ipsi boni erunt, si vera senserint verisque
consenserint, ut dicat eis apostolus tuus: fuistis
aliquando tenebrae, nunc autem lux in domino. illi
enim dum volunt esse lux non in domino, sed in se
ipsis, putando animae naturam hoc esse, quod deus
est, ita facti sunt densiores tenebrae, quoniam
longius a te recesserunt horrenda arrogantia, a te,
vero lumine inluminante omnem hominem venientem
in hunc mundum. attendite, quid dicatis, et eru-
bescite: et accedite ad eum et inluminamini, et vultus
vestri non erubescant. ego cum deliberabam, ut ser-
virem domino deo meo, sicut diu disposueram, ego
eram, qui volebam, ego, qui nolebam; ego eram. nec
plene volebam nec plene nolebam. ideo mecum
contendebam et dissipabar a me ipso, et ipsa dissipa-
tio me invito quidem fiebat, nec tamen ostendebat
naturam mentis alienae, sed poenam meae. et ideo
non iam ego operabar illam, sed quod habitat in me
peccatum, de supplicio liberioris peccati, quia eram
filius Adam.

Nam si tot sunt contrariae naturae, quot volun-
tates sibi resistunt, non iam duae, sed plures erunt.
si deliberet quisquam, utrum ad conventiculum
eorum perget an ad theatrum, clamant isti: "ecce
duae naturae, una bona hac dicit, altera mala illac

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

thereupon, that there are two kinds of natures, of CHAP.
two kinds of souls, one good and the other bad. ^X
Themselves are truly bad, whenas they believe these
bad opinions: and the same men shall become good,
if they shall come to believe true opinions, and
shall consent unto the true, that thy Apostle may
say unto them, Ye were sometime darkness, but Eph. v. 8
now are ye light in the Lord. But these fellows
would be light indeed, not in the Lord, but in them-
selves; imagining the nature of the soul to be the
same that God is. Thus are they made more gross
darkness; for that they went back farther from thee,
through a horrid arrogance; from thee the true
Light that lighteth every man that cometh into this John i. 9
world. Take heed what you say, and blush for
shame: draw near unto him and be enlightened, Ps. xxxiv. 5
and your faces shall not be ashamed. Myself when
sometime I deliberafed upon serving of the Lord my
God, (as I long had purposed) it was myself who
willed it, and myself who nilled it; it was I myself.
I neither willed entirely, nor yet nilled entirely.
Therefore was I at strife with myself, and distracted
by mine own self. Which distracting befell me
much against my mind, nor yet shewed it forth the
nature of another man's mind, but the punishment
of mine own. I therefore myself was not the causer
of it, but the sin that dwells in me: from the punish-
ment of that more voluntary sin, because I was a son
of Adam.

For if there be so many contrary natures in man,
as there be wills resisting one another; there shall
not now be two natures alone, but many. Suppose
a man should deliberate with himself whether he
should go to their conventicle, or go to see a play;
presently they cry out: Behold, here are two natures;

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. reducit. nam unde ista cunctatio sibimet adversantium voluntatum?" ego autem dico ambas malas, et quae ad illos dicit et quae ad theatrum reducit. sed non credunt nisi bonam esse, qua itur ad eos. quid? si ergo quisquam noster deliberet, et secum altercantibus duabus voluntatibus fluctuet, utrum ad theatrum perget an ad ecclesiam nostram, nonne et isti quid respondeant fluctuabunt? aut enim fatebuntur, quod nolunt, bona voluntate pergi in ecclesiam nostram, sicut in eam pergunto qui sacramentis eius imbuti sunt atque detinentur, aut duas malas naturas et duas malas mentes in uno homine configere putabunt, et non erit verum quod solent dicere, unam bonam, alteram malam; aut convertentur ad verum et non negabunt, cum quisque deliberat, animam unam diversis voluntatibus aestuare.

Iam ergo non dicant, cum duas voluntates in homine uno adversari sibi sentiunt, duas contrarias mentes, de duabus contrariis substantiis, et de duobus contrariis principiis contendere, unam bonam, alteram malam. nam tu, deus verax, improbas eos et redarguis atque convincis eos, sicut in utraque mala voluntate, cum quisque deliberat, utrum hominem veneno interimat an ferro, utrum fundum alienum

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

one good, which draws this way ; and another bad, CHAP.
which draws back that way. Else whence is this
mammering of the wills thus thwarting one another ?
But I answer, that both these wills be bad : that as
ill, which draws to their conventicle, as that which
draws back unto the theatre. But they will not
believe that will to be other than good, which brings
men to them. Suppose then one of us should de-
liberate, and through the dispute of his two wills
should be in a quandary, whether he should go see a
play, or come to our church : will not they be as
much in a quandary what to answer ? For either
must they confess, (which they will never grant)
that the will which leads to our church is good,
as it is in them which go to their church, who
are partakers of her sacraments, and detained in
her obedience ; or else must they suppose that
there be two evil natures, and two evil souls in
one man, which combat one another ; and it will
not be true which they are wont to affirm, that
there is one good, and the other bad ; or must
they be converted to the truth, and no more
deny, that in the acts of one man's deliberation
there is one soul distracted between two contrary
wills.

Let them no more say, therefore, that whenas they
perceive two wills to be contrary one to another in
one man, that there be two contrary souls, made
of two contrary substances, from two contrary prin-
ciples, one good, and the other bad, contending one
with another. For thou, O true God, dost disprove,
check, and convince them ; like as when both wills
being bad, a man deliberates with himself, whether
he should kill a man by poison or by the sword ?
Whether he should take in this piece, or that, of

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. illum an illum invadat, quando utrumque non potest,
^X

utrum emat voluptatem luxuria an pecuniam servet
avaritia, utrum ad circum perget an ad theatrum, si
uno die utrumque exhibeat; addo etiam tertium,
an ad furtum de domo aliena, si subest occasio;
addo et quartum, an ad committendum adulterium, si
et inde simul facultas aperitur, si omnia concurrant
in unum articulum temporis, pariterque cupiuntur
omnia; quae simul agi nequeunt: discerpunt enim
animum sibimet adversantibus quattuor voluntatibus
vel etiam pluribus, in tanta copia rerum, quae appetuntur:
nec tamen tantam multitudinem diversarum
substantiarum solent dicere. ita et in bonis voluntatibus.
nam quaero ab eis, utrum bonum sit
delectari lectione apostoli, et utrum bonum sit delectari psalmo sobrio, et utrum bonum sit evangelium
disserere. respondebunt ad singula: "bonum."
quid? si ergo pariter delectent omnia simulque uno
tempore, nonne diversae voluntates distendunt cor
hominis, dum deliberatur, quid potissimum arripiamus?
et omnes bonae sunt et certant secum, donec
eligatur unum, quo feriatur tota voluntas una, quae
in plures dividebatur. ita etiam, cum ~~h~~eternitas
delectat superius et temporalis boni voluptas retentat
inferius, eadem anima est non tota voluntate illud

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

another man's ground, whenas he cannot do both? CHAP.
Whether he should purchase pleasure with prodi-

X

gality, or keep close his money by covetousness?

Whether he should go to the chariot race, or to the theatre, if they were both to be seen upon one day?

I add also a third instance; whether he should rob another man's house, had he the opportunity: and

a fourth I add, or whether he should commit adultery if the means is opened from that side also at the same time; if all these concurred in the same instant of time,

and if all these acts be equally desired, which cannot possibly be all at one time acted. For verily they

tear in sunder the soul amongst four different wills, clean contrary to one another, perchance among

more than four: in such variety of things which are desirable, yet use they not to affirm that there is any such multitude of divers substances. Thus also

is it in such wills as are good. For I demand of them, whether it be a good thing to be delighted in

reading of the Apostle? And whether it be a good mind to be delighted in a sober Psalm? and, whether

it be a good act to discourse upon the Gospel? They

will answer to each of these, that it is good. What

now if all these equally delight us, and all together at the same time? Do not divers wills then rack

the mind, whenas a man is deliberating which of all these we should chiefly take? Yet are all these

wills good, although they all contend with one another; till such time as one of them be made

choice of, whereby the whole will is set at rest and united, which was before divided into many. Thus

also, when eternity delights the superior parts, and the pleasure of some temporal good holds fast the

inferior; it is but one and the same soul which willeth not this or that with an entire will; and is therefore

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. aut hoc volens; et ideo discerpitur gravi molestia,
^X dum illud veritate paeponit, hoc familiaritate non
ponit.

XI

CAP. Sic aegrotabam et excruciar, accusans memet ipsum
^{XI} solito acerbius nimis, ac volvens et versans me in
vinculo meo, donec abrumperetur totum, quo iam
exiguo tenebar. sed tenebar tamen. et instabas
tamen in occultis meis, domine, sevèra misericordia
flagella ingeminans timoris et pudoris, ne rursus ces-
sarem et non abrumperetur id ipsum exiguum et
tenue, quod remanserat, et revalesceret iterum, et
me robustius alligaret. dicebam enim apud me
intus: "ecce modo fiat, modo fiat," et cum verbo
iam ibam in placitum. iam paene faciebam, et non
faciebam; nec relabebar tamen in pristina, sed de
proximo stabam et respirabam. et item conabar, et
paulo minus ibi eram et paulo minus, iam iamque
adtingebam et tenebam: et non ibi eram nec
adtingebam nec tenebam, haesitans mori morti et
vitae vivere; plusque in me valebat deterius inolitum,
quam melius insolitum; punctumque ipsum temporis,
quo aliud futurus eram, quanto propius admovebatur,

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

torn in sunder with grievous perplexity, because CHAP.
truth makes it put this first, while habit suffers it not ^X
to put that away.

XI

The Combat in him betwixt the Spirit and the Flesh

THUS soul-sick I was, and in this manner tormented ; CHAP.
accusing myself much more eagerly than I was wont, XI
turning and winding myself in my chain, till that
which held me might be utterly broken ; which
though but little, yet held it me fast enough not-
withstanding. And thou, O Lord, pressedst upon
me in my inward parts, by a most severe mercy
redoubling my lashes of fear and shame, lest I should
give way again, and lest that small and tender tie,
which now only was left, should not break off but
recover strength again, and hamper me again the
faster. For I said within myself : Behold, let it be
done now, let it be done now. And no sooner had
I said the word, but that I began to put on the
resolution. Now I even almost did it, yet indeed I
did it not : yet notwithstanding, fell I not quite back
to my old wont, but stood in the degree next to it,
to fetch new breath. Yea, I set upon it again, and
I wanted but very little of getting up to it, and
within a very little, even by and by obtained I to
touch and lay hold of it ; and yet could I not get up
to it, nor come to touch, or lay full hold of it, still
fearing to die unto death, and to live unto life :
and the worse which I had been anciently inured
unto, prevailed more with me than the better, to
which I was unused : yea, the very instant of time
wherein I was to become something else, the nearer it

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. tanto ampliorem incutiebat horrorem; sed non
^{XI} recutiebat retro nec avertebat, sed suspendebat;

Retinebant nugae nugarum et vanitates vanitatum, antiquae amicae meae, et succutiebant vestem meam carneam et submurmurabant: “dimitisne nos?” et “a momento isto non erimus tecum ultra in aeternum” et “a momento isto non tibi licebit hoc et illud ultra in aeternum.” et quae suggerebant in eo, quod dixi “hoc et illud,” quae suggerebant, deus meus? avertat ab anima servi tui misericordia tua! quas sordes suggerebant, quae dedecora! et audiebam eas iam longe minus quam dimidius, non tamquam libere contradicentes eundo in obviam, sed velut a dorso mussitantes et discedentem quasi furtim vellicantes, ut respicerem. retardabant tamen cunctantem me abripere atque excutere ab eis et transilire quo vocabar, cum diceret mihi consuetudo violenta: “putasne sine istis poteris?”

Sed iam tepidissime hoc dicebat. aperiebatur enim ab ea parte, qua intenderam faciem et quo transire trepidabam, casta dignitas continentiae, serena et non dissolute hilaris, honeste blandiens, ut venirem neque dubitarem, et extendens ad me suscipiendum et amplectendum pias manus, plenas gregibus bonorum

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

approached to me, the greater horror did it strike CHAP.
into me. But for all this did it not strike me utterly
back, nor turned me quite off, but kept me in suspense
only.

XI

The very toys of all toys, and vanities of vanities, (those ancient favourites of mine) were they which so fast withheld me : they plucked softly at this fleshy garment, and spake softly in mine ears : Canst thou thus part with us ? And shall we no more accompany thee from this time for ever ? And from this time forth shall it no more be lawful for thee to do this or that for ever ? And what were those things which they suggested to me in that phrase this or that, as I said, what were those which they suggested, O my God ? Such, as let thy mercy utterly turn away from the soul of thy servant. Oh what impurities, oh what most shameful things did they suggest ! And now I much less than half heard them, nor now so freely contradicting me face to face ; but muttering as it were softly behind my back, and giving me a privy pluck as I went from them that I might look once more back : yet for all this as I hesitated they did hold me back from snatching away myself, and shaking them off, and leaping from them to the place I was called unto ; for violent custom thus rownded me in the ear : Thinkest thou to be ever able to live without all that ?

But by this time it spake very faintly. For on that side which I set my face towards, and whither I trembled to go, was that chaste dignity of Contineney discovered ; cheerful was she, but not dissolutely pleasant, honestly coaxing me to come to her, and doubt nothing : yea stretching forth those devout hands of hers, so full of the multitudes of good examples, both to receive and to embrace me. There

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. exemplorum. ibi tot pueri et puellae, ibi iuventus
^{XI} multa, et omnis aetas, et graves viduae et virgines
anus, et in omnibus ipsa continentia, nequaquam
sterilis, sed fecunda mater filiorum, gaudiorum de
marito te, domine. et in ridebat me in risione hortato
ria, quasi diceret: "tu non poteris, quod isti, quod
istae? an vero isti et istae in se ipsis possunt ac non
in domino deo suo? dominus deus eorum me dedit eis.
quid in te stas et non in te stas? proice te in eum,
noli metuere; non se subtrahet, ut cadas: proice te
securus, excipiet et sanabit te." et erubescet
nimis, quia illarum nugarum murmura adhuc audie-
bam, et cunctabundus pendebam. et rursus illa,
quasi diceret: "obsurdesce adversus inmundam illa
membra tua, ut mortificentur. narrant tibi delecta-
tiones, sed non sicut lex domini dei tui." ista con-
troversia in corde meo non nisi de me ipso adversus
me ipsum: at Alypius affixus lateri meo inusitati
motus mei exitum tacitus opperiebatur.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

were in company with her very many both young men CHAP.
and maidens, a multitude of youth and of all ages : XI
both grave widows and ancient virgins, and Continence
herself in every one of them, not barren at all, but
a fruitful mother of children, her joys, by thee her Ps. cxiii. 9
husband, O Lord. And she was pleasant with me
with a kind of exhorting quip, as if she should have
said : Canst not thou perform what these of both
sexes have performed ? Or can any of these perform
thus much of themselves, not rather by the Lord
their God ? The Lord their God gave me unto
them. Why standest thou on thyself, and on thy-
self standest not ? Cast thyself upon him ; fear
not, he will not slip away and make thee fall. Cast
thyself boldly upon him, he will receive thee, and he
will heal thee. I blushed all this while to myself
very much, for that I yet heard the muttering of
those toys, and that I yet hung in suspense. Where-
upon she seemed to say again : Stop thine ears
against those unclean members of thine, that they Col. iii. 5
may be mortified. They tell thee of delights in-
deed, but not such as the law of the Lord thy God
tells thee of. This was the controversy I felt in my
heart, about nothing but myself, against myself. But
Alypius sitting by my side, in silence expected the
issue of my unaccustomed agitation.

S. AVG^VSTINI CONFESSI^NV^M, LIBER VIII

XII

CAP. VBI vero a fundo arcano alta consideratio traxit et
XII congesit totam miseriam meam in conspectu cordis
mei, oborta est procella ingens, ferens ingentem im-
brem lacrimarum. et ut totum effunderem cum vocibus
suis, surrexi ab Alypio—solitudo mihi ad negotium
flendi aptior suggerebatur—et secessi remotius, quam
ut posset mihi onerosa esse etiam eius praesentia. sic
tunc eram, et ille sensit: nescio quid enim, puto,
dixeram, in quo apparebat sonus vocis meae iam fletu
gravidus, et sic surrexeram. mansit ergo ille ubi
sedebamus nimie stupens. ego sub quadam fici
arbore stravi me nescio quomodo, et dimisi habenas
lacrimis, et proruperunt flumina oculorum meorum,
acceptabile sacrificium tuum, et non quidem his ver-
bis, sed in hac sententia multa dixi tibi: “et tu,
domine, usquequo? usquequo, domine, irasceris in
finem? ne memor fueris iniquitatum nostrarum anti-
quarum.” sentiebam enim eis me teneri. iactabam
voces miserabiles: “quamdiu, quamdiu ‘cras et
cras’? quare non modo? quare non hac hora finis
turpitudinis meae?”

Dicebam haec, et flebam, amarissima contritione
cordis mei. et ecce audio vocem de vicina domo cum

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

XII

How he was converted by a voice

So soon therefore as a deep consideration even from CHAP.
the secret bottom of my soul, had drawn together and XII
laid all my misery upon one heap before the eyes of
my heart; there rose up a mighty storm, bringing as
mighty a shower of tears with it; which that I might
pour forth with such expressions as suited best with
them, I rose from Alypius: for I conceived that soli-
tariness was more fit for a business of weeping. So far
off then I went, as that even his presence might not
be troublesome unto me. Thus disposed was I at that
time, and he perceived of it; something I believe I
had said before, which discovered the sound of my
voice to be big with weeping, and in that case I rose
from him. He thereupon stayed alone where we sat
together, most extremely astonished. I flung down
myself I know not how, under a certain fig tree,
giving all liberty to my tears: whereupon the floods
of mine eyes gushed out, an acceptable sacrifice to
thee, O Lord. And though not perchance in these
very words, yet much to this purpose said I unto
thee: And thou, O Lord, how long, how long, Lord, Ps. vi. 3
wilt thou be angry, for ever? Remember not our Ps. lxxix.
former iniquities: (for I found myself to be still en-
thralled by them). Yea, I sent up these miserable
exclamations, How long? how long still "to-mor-
row," and "to-morrow"? Why not now? Wherefore
even this very hour is there not an end put to my
uncleanness?

Thus much I uttered, weeping, in the most bitter
contrition of my heart: wheras behold I heard a

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. cantu dicentis, et crebro repetentis, quasi pueri an
XII puellae, nescio : " tolle lege, tolle lege." statimque
mutato vultu intentissimus cogitare coepi, utrumnam
solerent pueri in aliquo genere ludendi cantitare tale
aliquid, nec occurrebat omnino audisse me uspiam :
repressoque impetu lacrimarum surrexi, nihil aliud
interpretans divinitus mihi iuberi, nisi ut aperirem
codicem et legerem quod primum caput invenissem.
audieram enim de Antonio, quod ex evangelica lectio-
ne, cui forte supervenerat, admonitus fuerit, tam-
quam sibi diceretur quod legebatur: vade, vende
omnia, quae habes, da pauperibus et habebis thesa-
rum in caelis ; et veni, sequere me : et tali oraculo
confestim ad te esse conversum. itaque concitus
redii in eum locum, ubi sedebat Alypius : ibi enim
posueram codicem apostoli, cum inde surrexeram.
arripui, aperui et legi in silentio capitulum, quo pri-
mum coniecti sunt oculi mei : non in comissionibus
et ebrietatibus, non in cubilibus et in pudicitiis, non
in contentione et aemulatione, sed induite dominum
Iesum Christum, et carnis providentiam ne feceritis
in concupiscentiis. nec ultra volui legere, nec opus
erat. statim quippe cum fine huiusc sententiae,
quasi luce securitatis infusa cordi meo, omnes dubita-
tionis tenebrae diffugerunt.

Tum intericto aut digito aut nescio quo alio signo,
codicem clausi, et tranquillo iam vultu indicavi Alypio.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

voice from some neighbour's house, as it had been CHAP.
of a boy or girl, I know not whether, in a singing XII
tune saying, and often repeating: Take up and read,
Take up and read. Instantly changing my counte-
nance thereupon, I began very heedfully to bethink
myself, whether children were wont in any kind of
playing to sing any such words: nor could I remem-
ber myself ever to have heard the like Whereupon
refraining the violent torrent of my tears, up I gat
me; interpreting it no other way, but that I was
from God himself commanded to open the book, and
to read that chapter which I should first light upon.
For I had heard of Anthony, that by hearing of the
Gospel which he once chanced to come in upon, he
took himself to be admonished, as if what was read,
had purposely been spoken unto him: Go, and sell Matt. xix.
that thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt 21
have treasure in heaven, and come and follow me:
and by such a miracle that he was presently converted
unto thee. Hastily therefore went I again to that
place where Alypius was sitting; for there had I laid
the Apostle's book whenas I rose from thence. I
snatched it up, I opened it, and in silence I read that
chapter which I had first cast mine eyes upon: Not
in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and Rom. xiii.
wantonness, not in strife and envying: but put ye on 13
the Lord Jesus Christ; and make not provision for
the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof. No further would
I read; nor needed I. For instantly even with the
end of this sentence, by a light as it were of con-
fidence now darted into my heart, all the darkness
of doubting vanished away.

Shutting up the book thereupon, and putting my
finger between, or I know not what other mark, with
a well-quited countenance I discovered all this upto

S. AVGVSTINI CONFESSIÖNVM LIBER VIII

CAP. at ille quid in se ageretur—quod ego nesciebam—
^{XII} sic indicavit. petit videre quid legisset : ostendi, et
adtendit etiam ultra quam ego legeram, et ignorabam quid sequeretur. sequebatur autem : infirmum
vero in fide recipite. quod ille ad se rettulit mihi-
que aperuit. sed tali admonitione firmatus est,
placitoque ac proposito bono (et congruentissimo suis
moribus, quibus a me in melius iam olim valde
longeque distabat), sine ulla turbulentia cunctatione
coniunctus est. inde ad matrem ingredimur, indica-
mus : gaudet. narramus, quemadmodum gestum sit :
exultat et triumphat, et benedicebat tibi, qui potens
es ultra quam petimus aut intellegimus facere, quia
tanto amplius sibi a te concessum de me videbat,
quam petere solebat miserabilibus flebilibusque gemi-
tibus. convertisti enim me ad te, ut nec uxorem
quaererem nec aliquam spem saeculi huius, stans
in ea regula fidei, in qua me ante tot annos ei
revelaveras : et convertisti luctum eius
in gaudium, multo uberioris, quam
voluerat, et multo carius atque
castius, quam de nepot-
ibus carnis meae
requirebat.

ST. AUGUSTINE'S CONFESSIONS BOOK VIII

Alypius. And he again in this manner revealed unto CHAP.
me what also was wrought in his heart, which I verily XII
knew nothing of. He requested to see what I had
read : I shewed him the place ; and he looked further
than I had read, nor knew I what followed. This
followed : Him that is weak in faith, receive : which Rom. xiv. 1
he applied to himself, and shewed it to me. And by
this admonition was he strengthened, and unto that
good resolution and purpose (which was most agree-
able to his disposition, wherein he did always very
far differ from me, to the better) without all turbulent
delaying did he now apply himself. From thence
went we into the house unto my mother : we discover
ourselves, she rejoices for it ; we declare in order
how everything was done ; she leaps for joy, and
triumpheth, and blessed thee, who art able to do
above that which we ask or think ; for that she per-
ceived thee to have given her so much more con-
cerning me, than she was wont to beg by her pitiful
and most doleful groanings. For so thou convertedst
me unto thyself, as that I sought now no more after
a wife, nor any other hopes in this world : standing
thus upon the same rule of faith, in which thou
hadst shewed me unto her in a vision, so many years
before. Thus didst thou convert her mourn-
ing into rejoicing, and that much more
plentifully than she had desired, and
with a much dearer and a
chaster joy, than she erst re-
quired from any grand-
children of my body.

INDEX

- ACADEMICS, 245
Adeodatus, 325
Aeneas, 39
Agens in Rebus, 434
All is good, 375
Alypius, 291, 297, 301, 305, 391,
 429, 461
Ambition, 289
Ambrose, 255, 257, 267, 273, 407
Anthony, the monk of Egypt, 433
Apollinaristae, 392
Aristotle, 197
Assessor, 305
Astrology, 153
Athenian literature, 371
Augustine :
 childhood, 25
 school, 27
 studies of Greek and Latin
 39, 43
 theft, 57
 youthful sins, 65
 leaves school at sixteen, 71
 robs a pear-tree, 77
 goes to Carthage, 99
 studies law and rhetoric, 107
 reads Cicero, 109
 joins the Manichees, 115
 life from nineteen to twenty-
 eight years of age, 147
 his mistress, 149
 studies astrology, 153
Augustine (*continued*) :
 his friend, 159
 goes to Carthage again, 169
 writes "De Pulchro," 185
 reads Aristotle, 197
 meets Faustus, 211
 teaches rhetoric at Carthage,
 231
 goes to Rome, 235
 his fever, 239
 teaches rhetoric at Rome, 253
 goes to Milan to teach, 255
 his progress towards faith,
 265
 seeks a wife, 321
 his son, 325
 changes his mistress, 325
 reads in the Platonists, 365
 goes to Simplicianus, 403
 crisis in the garden, 443, 457
BEAUTY, 179, 183
Beggar, story of, 287
Bishop's answer about the dream,
 141
CARTHAGE :
 life at, 99, 169, 211, 231
 disorders amongst scholars, 233
Categories, the Ten, 197
Cicero, 109, 227
Comes largitionum Italicarum, 304
 469

INDEX

- Consiliarius, 306
Corporeal and spiritual, 191, 193
"DE PULCHRO ET APTO," 185
Dido, 39
Dream of Augustine's mother, 137
Duality, 191

ECLIPSES foretold, 213, 217
Epicurus, 327
Equinox, 217
Eversores, 108
Evil, source of, 121
 a substance, 247

FATHER of Augustine, 71, 73
Faustus, a Manichean, 211, 219,
 223
Firminus, 353
Food, Manichean view of, 147
 offered at the saints' oratories,
 269
Free will, 341
Friend's death, 159, 165

GAMES, Circensian, 293
Garden, the crisis in a, 443
Gladiators, 297
Greek language, 39, 43
Grief for the dead, 161, 163, 167

"H" DROPT in pronunciation, 55
Hierius, 185
Hippocrates, 155
Homer, 43, 47
Horoscopes, folly of, 355
"Hortensius" of Cicero, 109

IDOLATRY, 369
Infancy, 15, 21
- 470**
- JULIAN**, Emperor, 423
Juno, 51
Jupiter, 47

LAW, study of, 107
Learning by compulsion, 37
Letter and spirit, 277
Love, 183

MADAURA, 71
Manichees, 115, 135, 211, 245, 281,
 259, 339, 341, 451
Marriage, 317
Medea, 119
Milan, 255
Mistress, his, 149, 325
Monastery at Milan, 433
Mother of Augustine, 73
 her dream, 137
 wishes to accompany him to
 Rome, 237
 her kindly country ways, 269
 seeks a wife for her son, 321
Mythology, 47, 49

NEBRIDIUS, 157, 291, 309, 339, 429

OVERTURNERS, the, 109

PAUL and Saul, 421
Paul's Epistles, 431
Pear-tree robbed, 77
 why he did it, 91
Philosophy, 111
Photinus, 393
Platonists, 365, 393
Ponticianus, 431

RHETORIC teacher at Carthage, 231
Romanianus, 323
Rome, 233, 235, 243

INDEX

- S.** **T. CYPRIAN**, chapel of, 237
Saul and Paul, 423
Schooldays, 27
Seneca, 227
Simplicianus, 408, 411
Sinfulness in infancy, 21
Solomon, 121
Solstice, 217
Son, Augustine's, 325
Speak, learning to, 25, 43
Stage-plays, 101
Symmachus, 255

TEARS, the mother's, 143
Terence, 49
Thagaste, 71, 169

Theft in childhood, 57, 77
Thievery detected, 301
Three and seven, 131
Time's cure, 169
Trees' consciousness, 137
Trier, 433

UNITY, 191

VERECUNDUS, 420
Verse-writing, 125
Victorinus, conversion of, 407, 413
Vindicianus, 351
Virgil, 43

WIZARD, 151

PRINTED AT THE BALLANTYNE PRESS LONDON

878.9 .A7cw

C.1

St. Augustine's ConfessAKA5706

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 045 019 879

4-9-40